Honeywell

ControlEdge HC900 Control Designer Software User Guide

Doc. No.: 51-52-25-110

Revision: 29

Revision Date: July 2022

Notices and Trademarks

Copyright 2022 by Honeywell
Revision 29, July 2022

WARRANTY/REMEDY

Honeywell warrants goods of its manufacture as being free of defective materials and faulty workmanship. Contact your local sales office for warranty information. If warranted goods are returned to Honeywell during the period of coverage, Honeywell will repair or replace without charge those items it finds defective. The foregoing is Buyer's sole remedy and is **in lieu of all other warranties, expressed or implied, including those of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose**. Specifications may change without notice. The information we supply is believed to be accurate and reliable as of this printing. However, we assume no responsibility for its use.

While we provide application assistance personally, through our literature and the Honeywell web site, it is up to the customer to determine the suitability of the product in the application.

Honeywell Process Solutions

1250 W Sam Houston Pkwy S
Houston, TX 77042

ControlEdge HC900 is a U.S. trademark of Honeywell

Other brand or product names are trademarks of their respective owners.

License Agreement

Read this agreement before opening the software. Once you have removed the software from its envelope, you have accepted the agreement.

USAGE RIGHTS

Your rights, with respect to the Software, are non-exclusive. The software may only be used by one user, on one computer at a time. The software may be transferred to another computer, as long as it is only used by one user at a time. The Software and its documentation may not be copied or distributed to others. You may not create, modify, alter, adapt, merge, de-compile or reverse-engineer the Software, and you may not remove or obscure Honeywell or other included copyright or trademark notices.

TERM OF LICENSE

This agreement is effective unit terminated. Terminate the Agreement by destroying the Software, documentation and all backup copies.

BACKUP COPIES

You may make backup copies of the Software. The copyright notice(s) must be included on each backup copy.

COPYRIGHTS

The Software accompanying this manual is protected by United States copyright law. The Software documentation is copyrighted. You may only copy the Software and the Software documentation for backup or to load the Software onto your computer as part of program execution.

TITLE TO SOFTWARE AND CONFIDENTIALITY

The Software and all copies thereof are proprietary to Honeywell and title thereto remains in Honeywell. All applicable rights to patents, copyrights, trademarks and trade secrets in the Software are and shall remain in Honeywell.

You may not sell, transfer, publish, or otherwise make available any software copies thereof to others. You acknowledge that the Software is a trade secret of Honeywell. You agree to secure and protect each program, software product and copies thereof in a manner consistent with the maintenance of Honeywell's rights therein and to take appropriate action by instruction or agreement within your organization to satisfy your obligations hereunder. Violation of these provisions shall be a basis for immediate termination of this license. Termination of the license shall be in addition to and not in lieu of any other legal or equitable remedies available in Honeywell.

About This Document

Abstract

The **Designer** program operates on a PC with Windows™ 7 (32-bit and 64-bit), Windows™ 8.1 (32-bit and 64-bit), Windows™ 10 (32-bit and 64-bit), Windows Server 2016, and Windows Server 2019. It enables you create, edit, view and monitor ControlEdge HC900 Control strategy configurations as well as your Operator Interface menu, screen and button configurations. It uses graphic symbols and line drawing connections to represent control strategies. Completed configurations are loaded into the control system using a dedicated communication port in the controller.

References

The following list identifies all documents that may be sources of reference for material discussed in this publication.

Document Title	Doc ID
ControlEdge HC900 Controller Technical Overview	51-52-03-31
Legacy ControlEdge HC900 Controller Installation and User Guide	51-52-25-107
ControlEdge HC900 Operator Interface User Guide	51-52-25-108
ControlEdge HC900 Function Block Reference Guide	51-52-25-109
ControlEdge HC900 Communications User Guide	51-52-25-111
ControlEdge HC900 Process & Safety Controller User & Installation Manual	51-52-25-154
ControlEdge HC900 Controller Safety Manual	51-52-25-153

Support & Contact Information

For Europe, Asia Pacific, North and South America contact details, refer to the back page of this manual or the appropriate Honeywell Solution Support web site:

Honeywell Organization	WWW Address (URL)
Corporate	*http://www.honeywell.com*
Honeywell Process Solutions	*http://www.hpsweb.honewell.com/ps*
HPS Technical tips	*http://hpsweb.honeywell.com/Cultures/en-US/Products/Instrumentation/hybrid/hc900/TechnicalTips/documents.htm*
Training	*https://process.honeywell.com/us/en/services/training*

Telephone and Email Contacts

Area	Organization	Phone Number
United States and Canada	Honeywell Inc.	1-800-343-0228 Customer Service 1-800-423-9883 Global Technical Support
Global Email Support	Honeywell Process Solutions	Email: (Sales) **FP-Sales-Apps@Honeywell.com** or (TAC) **hfs-tac-support@honeywell.com**

Symbol Definitions

The following table lists those symbols that may be used in this document to denote certain conditions.

Symbol	Definition
⚠ DANGER	This **DANGER** symbol indicates an imminently hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, **will result in death or serious injury**.
⚠ WARNING	This **WARNING** symbol indicates a potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, **could result in death or serious injury**.
⚠ CAUTION	This **CAUTION** symbol may be present on Control Product instrumentation and literature. If present on a product, the user must consult the appropriate part of the accompanying product literature for more information.
CAUTION	This **CAUTION** symbol indicates a potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, **may result in property damage**.
	WARNING **PERSONAL INJURY:** Risk of electrical shock. This symbol warns the user of a potential shock hazard where HAZARDOUS LIVE voltages greater than 30 Vrms, 42.4 Vpeak, or 60 Vdc may be accessible. **Failure to comply with these instructions could result in death or serious injury.**
	ATTENTION, Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) hazards. Observe precautions for handling electrostatic sensitive devices
	Protective Earth (PE) terminal. Provided for connection of the protective earth (green or green/yellow) supply system conductor.
	Functional earth terminal. Used for non-safety purposes such as noise immunity improvement. NOTE: This connection shall be bonded to protective earth at the source of supply in accordance with national local electrical code requirements.
	Earth Ground. Functional earth connection. NOTE: This connection shall be bonded to Protective earth at the source of supply in accordance with national and local electrical code requirements.
	Chassis Ground. Identifies a connection to the chassis or frame of the equipment shall be bonded to Protective Earth at the source of supply in accordance with national and local electrical code requirements.

Table of Contents

1. SOFTWARE INTRODUCTION AND OVERVIEW 1

Introduction 1
Features 1

2. HARDWARE AND SOFTWARE REQUIREMENTS 5

What to Know Before You Start 5
Rack, Module, and Channel Assignments 5

3. IMPLEMENTATION 7

Starting the Application 7
Connecting the PC to the Controller 8

4. USER INTERFACE 9

User Interface Overview 9
General Terminology 10
File Browser Window 11
Worksheet Toolbox Window 12
Traceback Window 15
Watch Summary Window 16
Status Bar 17
Menu Conventions 17
Selecting a Menu 18
Closing a Menu 18
Main Menu 18
File Menu 19
Edit Menu 21
View Menu 23
Options Menu 24
Monitor Menu 24
Recipes Menu 25
Window Menu 26
Help Menu 26
Main Toolbar Functions 27
Navigational Tools 29
Right Mouse Click 29
Keyboard Navigation 31

5. FILE MANAGEMENT 33

Opening an Existing File 33
Creating a New Configuration File 33
Saving A Configuration File 33
Creating Other File Types 35
Converting ControlEdge HC900 Configurations 36
Uploading a File from the Controller 37
Downloading a File to the Controller 38
Downloading Firmware 41
Download Firmware Error Messages 43

File Properties 45
How to Add Worksheet Protection 46
File Read Protection 49
Write Protect a File 50

6. PC COMM PORTS AND CONNECTIONS 51

How to Manage PC Comm Ports and Connections 51
PC Network Port Set Up For Controller Access 51
PC Serial Com Port Setup 53
PC to Controller Connection Settings 55
Remote Loopback Test 56
Remote Access 56
Provide the Modem Number to Call 57
Communications Statistics 57

7. WORKSHEETS OVERVIEW 59

What is a Worksheet? 59
Worksheet Category Tabs 60

8. CONTROLLER WORKSHEET 61

Controller Worksheet Overview 61
Controller Configuration Toolbar 62
E-Mail Notification 63
Unlock the Worksheets 64

9. DISPLAY WORKSHEET 65

Operator Panel Worksheet Overview 65
Operator Panel Configuration Toolbar 65
Operator Interface Displays 66
Display Buttons Configuration 66
Configuring or Viewing Display Tag Groups 68
Alarm Details 72
Event List Configuration 73
Event Details 74
E-Mail Notification 74
Operator Interface Settings 75
O/I File Names for Disk Storage 77
Start Up Display Configuration 77
Message Display Configuration 78
Unlock the Worksheets 78

10. FUNCTION BLOCK DIAGRAM (FBD) WORKSHEET 79

FB Worksheet Overview 79
FBD Configuration Toolbar 80
How to Add a New FBD Worksheet 81
How to Navigate Between FBD Worksheets 81
Keyboard Navigation 83
Traceback Window 84
Resolve Dangling Soft Wires 85
How to Find an Item on the FBD Worksheet 87
How To Find and Replace Item on the FDB Worksheet 88

How to Change a FBD's Worksheet Properties 90
How to Change the Worksheet Order 91
How to Delete a FBD Worksheet 91
How to Add Worksheet Protection 91
Alarm Group Configuration 93
Alarm Details 94
Event List Configuration 96
Execution Order 96
Event Details 102
E-Mail Notification 103
Unlock the Worksheets 103

11. LIBRARY FUNCTIONALITY 104

Change Item Name 105

12. FUNCTION BLOCKS OVERVIEW 108

Function Block Definition 108
Function Block Identification 108
Function Block Inputs and Outputs 108
Types of Function Blocks 110
Function Block Attributes 110
Fast Scan Indicator 111

13. USING FUNCTION BLOCKS TO BUILD A CONTROL /SAFETY STRATEGY 112

Before You Start 112
General Steps to Build a Control /Safety Strategy 112
Adding, Moving, Deleting Function Blocks to a FBD 113
Connecting/Disconnecting Blocks 114
Adding a Variable 116
Adding a Numeric Constant 120
Adding a Connector 121
Variables 121
Wire Nodes 122
Signal Tags 123
Page Connectors 126
Boundary Item 128
Text String 129
Changing the Default Annotation Attributes 130
Auto Save Functionality 130

14. CONVENTIONS 131

Drag and Drop 131
Accessing Context Sensitive Help 131
Right Mouse Click 131

15. HOW TO CONFIGURE FUNCTION BLOCK PARAMETERS 132

Accessing Block Details 132
Function Block Address 132
User Assigned Tag Names 132

Function Block Parameters 132

16. FUNCTION BLOCK DIAGRAMS 134

Overview 134
Function Block Diagram Rules 134
Saving A Configuration File 134

17. UTILITIES WORKSHEET 136

Overview 136
Controller Utility Functions 136
Uploading a File from the Controller 137
Download a File to the Controller 137
Set Controller Serial Ports 138
Modbus RTU Host - Advanced Setup 139
Calibrate Controller 141
Set Controller Mode 141
Set Controller Network Parameters 141
Set Controller Time 144
Data Storage Utility 147
Back Up Controller Information 148
Restore Controller Information 149
Manually Write Database to Flash 151
Configure Modbus/Peer Write Access 152
Password Configuration 155
Diagnostics 157
Calibrate Modules 158
PPO Block Calibration 160

18. SET POINT PROGRAMMING 164

Terms and Definitions 164
What is a Setpoint Program? 166
Setpoint Program Configuration Overview 166

19. SETPOINT SCHEDULERS 167

Setpoint Scheduler Overview 167
Setpoint Schedule Overview 167

20. SEQUENCERS 169

What is Sequence Control? 169
Sequence Configuration Overview 169

21. RECIPES 170

Recipe Overview 170
Recipes Menu 171

22. RECIPE (VARIABLES) 172

Introduction 172
Recipe (Variables) Configuration 172
Using Recipes to Download Setpoint Profiles 173
Create/Edit Recipe (Variables) File 174

Recipe Pool 175
Setup/Edit a Recipe in Pool 176
Recipe Properties 176

23. SETPOINT PROFILES 177

Create/Edit Setpoint Profile File 177
Setpoint Profile Properties 179

24. SETPOINT SCHEDULES 181

Create/Edit Setpoint Schedule file 181
Setpoint Schedule Pool 182
Setup/Edit Setpoint Schedule in Pool 183
Setpoint Schedule Properties 185

25. SEQUENCES 186

Create/Edit Sequence File 186
Sequence Pool 187
Setup/Edit Sequence in Pool 188
Sequence Properties 189

26. ON-LINE MONITORING 190

Overview 190
Enter Monitor Mode 191
Visual Indicators for Monitor Mode 192
Monitor Update Rate 193
Monitor Toolbar 193
How Do I Start Monitoring 195
Right Click Procedure in Monitor Mode 196
Function Block Monitor Window 197
Forcing/Unforcing an Output 198
Forced Blocks Window 200
How Do I Stop Monitoring 203
Logic Flow 203

27. WATCH SUMMARY WINDOW 208

Overview 208
Find Feature 210
Sort Function 210
Watch Summary - User Defined 210
Watch Summary - Signals 212
Watch Summary - Variables 214
Watch Summary - Inputs/Outputs 215
Watch Summary - Display Groups 216

28. DIAGNOSTICS 217

Controller Diagnostics 217
Rack Diagnostics 227
Rack Diagnostics: Power Supply 230
I/O Module Diagnostics Status Indications 231
I/O Channel/Sensor Status 233

Controller Ports Diagnostics 236
Modbus Host (Serial) Port Diagnostics 249
Modbus Initiator (TCP) Port Diagnostics 252

29. REPORTS 255

Print Report 255
Print Report Preview 262
Export Report 263

30. MODBUS REGISTER ADDRESSES 265

Modbus Map Overview 265
Configure Modbus Map Method 265
Modbus addressability of principal function blocks 267
Fixed Modbus Map 268
Custom Modbus Map 271
Adding function block parameters to custom map 276
Adding system parameters to custom map 279

31. REDUNDANCY 280

Redundancy System Status Indicators 280
Redundancy Link Status Indicators 281
Lead CPU Status Indicators 282
Reserve CPU Status Indicators 286
Scanner 2 Link Status Indicators 287

32. VERSION CONTROL 289

General Guidelines 290
Manage Repository 291
Checkin operations 293
Version Control Explorer 294
Version History 296

33. COMPARE FUNCTIONALITY 297

Compare Settings 297
Compare Two Revisions 298
Compare with Controller 298
Compare with File Selection 298
Report Summary 299

34. APPENDIX A – OPERATOR INTERFACE 302

Data Storage 302

INDEX 314

1. Software Introduction and Overview

Introduction

The Controller and Operator Interface configurations are performed using ControlEdge HC900 Control Designer software on a PC operating with Windows™ 7 (32-bit and 64-bit), Windows™ 8.1 (32-bit and 64-bit), Windows™ 10 (32-bit and 64-bit), Windows Server 2016, and Windows Server 2019.

Easy-to-use Windows™-based software, operable over Ethernet or via an USB to RS 485 adapter or modem connection, simplifies controller and operator interface configuration. It provides advanced monitoring functions for debug, uploads the complete, annotated graphic controller and operator interface configuration, and supplies an array of printouts for enhanced documentation.

In some instances, an On-line configuration download capability allows configuration changes such as block additions or block substitutions to be made without switching the controller to program mode, avoiding initialization.

Once a configuration is installed into the controller and operator interface, the software may be used to develop or change recipes, edit data storage schedules, monitor areas of the configuration to verify proper operation, or perform calibration functions.

Features

- Graphic drag and drop, soft-wire configuration
- Supports on-line configuration changes
- Configuration upload that includes graphic configuration to recreate the function block diagram and OI assignments
- Configures Controller and Operator Interface in an integrated environment
- Configures View OI data storage, e-mail alarms
- Configures recipes (Variables only), SP profiles, SP schedules, and sequences with on-line operation, provides easy file generation for media transfer to ControlEdge HC900 OI's locally and file management.
- Configuration partitioning using "Worksheets"
- Monitoring tools including watch windows, concurrent detailed block parameter windows, digital/logic power flow via color coding, live data at block pins, and a signal traceback facility
- Use Ethernet or RS-485 to access controller
- Supports English, Chinese, Russian, and German languages.

Note: In the new HCD (6.6 and greater), there will be a difference in number of non ASCII characters supported in the Name and Description fields (like tag name, tag description). The field length remain same as previous HCD versions but each **non** ASCII character takes more than a byte to store where as ASCII character takes only 1 byte.

Worksheets

Worksheets are a logical partition of a configuration and selected by tabs that appear on the Main Window. A configuration is built using four main elements (or Worksheets) of configuration.

The user-friendly graphic development environment allows partitioning of the control strategy into "worksheets". This allows the configuration to be organized according to process function, allows faster configuration access, and improves documentation.

The configuration originator may apply additional security to specific worksheets to prohibit access to proprietary operations while allowing other users to modify unprotected worksheets or generate recipe and data storage files.

Blocks are simply selected from a categorized list, dropped on a selected worksheet page, and soft-wired to other blocks directly or via tag references. Editing tools such as box copy and paste speed development.

With Controller Rev 6.0 and higher, there is also the concept of “Safety” function-block-diagram worksheets (vs. the regular “Process” function-block-diagram worksheets) for controllers that support it. The Safety worksheets allow definition of “Safety-enabled” configurations to run on SIL-compliant controller models. Within Safety worksheets, certain restrictions at both configuration and run-time are enforced to ensure safety compliance is achieved (See below section on Function Block Configuration development). Note that a reference to a “Safety block” refers to a function block that is placed on a Safety worksheet.

Monitoring

On-line monitoring tools allow quick analysis of execution problems. These include:

- Multiple function blocks monitor access on a single display from multiple worksheets. Most internal parameters are available for read/write plus block outputs may be forced including I/O and logic blocks. Major blocks such as PID, Setpoint Programmer and Sequencers have dialog boxes to allow operation and test. Stored profiles or sequences may also be selected on-line.
- User-selected Watch Window lists allow access to digital and analog I/O, Signal Tags, Variables (for write actions), and custom display data groups by tab selection. A user-defined watch window provides custom association of parameters for a debug session. Watch windows also allow write (or force) capability.
- Logic power flow indication using color-coded soft wiring for digital connections to and between block pins including signal tags and connectors
- Live data at block pins (analog floating point or digital status) on a complete block or pin basis.
- Signal Trace-back, for any input to a block, for finding the signal sources for quick identification of potential errors.
- A Forced Blocks window shows all forced outputs and allows release of force conditions individually.
- Data update selection as fast as 250 ms.
- Retention of monitoring setup when moving back and forth between editing and monitoring modes.

The user-selected, dockable Watch Window lists and Signal Trace-back finds the signal sources and provides a clear view of the configuration operation allowing quick identification of potential faults.

Read/write interaction is provided for most blocks including PID, Setpoint Programmer and Sequencers.

A FIND function allows location of multiple instances of specific tags, variables, and function blocks across all worksheets. A right click on any signal tag also allows selection of a "Find Where Used" listing for fast access to tag destinations and return to the tag source.

Configuration Download

Configuration download capability (Hot Start) allows configuration changes such as block additions or block substitutions to be made, with restrictions, without switching the controller to program mode, avoiding initialization (Cold Start). Corrections or additions are executed shortly after download – within 3 normal scan cycles. For scan information, refer to the ControlEdge HC900 Controller Installation and User Guide.

Note: Controller may lose configuration if it is powered off within 5min and do not have good battery as it will take 5min time to save new configuration into flash

Operator Interface Configuration (for Legacy 559/1042 OI)

Configuration of the Operator Interface is an integral part of the controller configuration. Controllers that have been configured with Operator interface data provide the necessary display format data. This unique attribute guarantees compatibility of the controller and user interface databases and greatly simplifies product maintenance.

Designer configuration software uses the database of the function block control strategy to develop operating displays for the Operator Interface. A large selection of display templates is provided that may be assigned quickly and easily to the Operator Interface.

Additional Software Functions

In addition to creating displays and defining display access, Designer software allows users to set up data archiving schedules, develop recipes, create alarm grouping, establish operator security and define a number of other operator interface attributes.

Documenting your configuration is supported through a variety printable presentation formats. A few of these include a summary of the controller I/O, the graphic configuration diagram, function block properties, recipe groups, setpoint profile groups, Operator Interface display and point selections, among others.

Recipe/Data Storage File Generation

Recipes and data schedules may be defined within the configuration and/or created as files (via File New) for external file transfer to ControlEdge HC900 operator interfaces or for file management.

Reports

Documenting your configuration is supported through a variety of report formats. Each can be print-previewed. A few of these include a summary of the controller I/O used, function block worksheet selection (each page of diagram worksheet printed as 8.5 x 11" sheet), function block properties, variable and tag parameters, Modbus addresses, Data Storage Settings, recipe listings, setpoint profile listings, sequencer listings, setpoint scheduler listings, OI display groups, Alarm and Event Groups, and controller setup.

Function Block Configuration development

Function Block configuration development is performed using "Drag and Drop " techniques for positioning graphic icons on a FBD Worksheet from a list of available functions. Once dragged and dropped from the Item list onto any FBD worksheet, you can double-click on a block and open a Properties page in which you can configure the specific parameters of that block.

Signal flow connections from icon to icon form the flow of the control strategy by using either softwire connections or named tags to complete the controller configuration.

Depending on controller model, you can create up to 20/40 graphic diagrams, 1 page high by 20 pages wide. The completed diagram may be printed on pages of 8.5" x 11" paper.

With Controller Rev 6.0 and higher, there is also the concept of “Safety” worksheets (vs. the regular “Process” worksheets) for controllers that support it. The Safety worksheets allow definition of “Safety-enabled” configurations to run on SIL-compliant controller models. On a Safety worksheet, certain restrictions related to safety may be active:

- Only the function block types that are supported by the SIL-compliant controllers may be placed on Safety worksheets. Others will be grayed out in the Toolbox when a Safety worksheet is active.

- There will be strict data-flow restrictions. Generally, the restriction is that data can flow from items on a Safety worksheet to items on Process worksheet, but not vice-versa. This means that setting up data-flows using Connectors, Page-Connectors, and Signals will be restricted to allow only one-way data flows.

- For some function block types, their functionality will become restricted to adhere to the above mentioned data-flow rule. An example is the Write Constant block, which, if placed on a Process worksheet, will not be allowed to be configured to write to a block on a Safety worksheet.

- The data flow restrictions will not only be applied at configuration time, but will be applied at run-time as well (in the controller). For example, SIL-compliant controllers will not allow other controllers to write into blocks in the Safety worksheets using the Peer Data function blocks.

Note: During configuration development, if Chinese (Mandarin), German, and Russian characters used for name, description or any fields in configuration, they will not be displayed correctly in CS900 and Historian tool as they will not support Chinese/Mandarin, German, and Russian text.

This page has been intentionally left blank

2. Hardware and Software requirements

Please refer to Designer Specification manual “51-52-03-43”

What to Know Before You Start

Rack, Module, and Channel Assignments

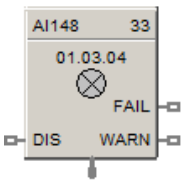
The controller contains one or more racks. Each rack may contain one or more I/O modules of various types and each I/O module contains a number of channels. Each rack, module and channel is assigned a number in the configuration that corresponds to a physical location in the installed racks.

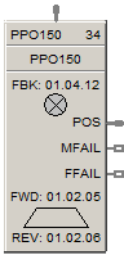
Before starting, determine the I/O content of the controller racks. Although configurations can be constructed using default I/O locations, the recommended configuration approach is to first verify that the proper I/O is available to execute the desired configuration, and to record the location of each I/O Rack, Module, and Channel so that they may be properly entered during configuration file development.

Please note that expansion racks **ARE NOT** permitted on the ControlEdge HC900-C30 controller.

To allow for and facilitate future expansions and modifications, it is usually a good idea to leave some I/O module slots vacant in each rack, since in software configuration of the I/O, the identification of each I/O point depends on the physical position of the I/O hardware (Rack #, Module #, and Channel #). If all module slots in a rack are full, addition of one I/O module to a given rack could require hardware and software modifications for one or more other I/O Racks in the system.

The function blocks that deal with reading input channels and/or writing to output channels are categorized as I/O Function Blocks (with the exception of the Three-Position Step Control block which is considered a Loop Function Block). These function blocks all have one or more I/O address properties that must be configured through the block’s properties dialog. The rack, module and channel numbers assigned to the block’s I/O address properties are displayed on the block’s graphic as a series of 3 two-digit numbers separated by decimals, as shown below.





In the above diagram, the AI148 Analog Input function block has a single input channel configured as:

Rack 01
Module 03
Channel 04

The PPO150 Position Proportional Output function block has 1 analog input and 2 digital output channels configured as:

Feedback	Forward Relay	Reverse Relay
Rack 01	Rack 01	Rack 01
Module 04	Module 02	Module 02
Channel 12	Channel 05	Channel 06

3. Implementation

Starting the Application

When the application is started, the only viewable parts are the File Browser and the Worksheet Toolbox.

Go to the **Main Toolbar** or the **File Menu** and select:

or NEW - Displays a "Choose a New File Type" dialog box with three tabs.

New Configuration:
Select the "**Configuration**" tab. From the drop-down menus, select Controller and Revision. Click OK and a new Designer Configuration file is listed in the File Browser and a new diagram is placed in the Main Window area.

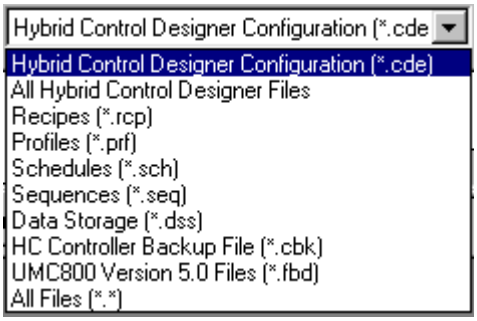
New Recipes:
Select the "**Recipe**" tab. On the tab, click on a radio button to select one of the following:
Recipes (Variables)
Setpoint Profile
Setpoint Schedule
Sequence

Click OK. The associated "Editor" dialog box will appear and a new "Opened Recipe File" is listed in the File Browser. Refer to the specific Recipe type for specifics.

New Data Storage (Legacy feature for 559/1042 OI):
Select the "**Data Storage**" tab. On the tab, click on a radio button to create a new Data Storage File

or

or OPEN - Displays the *"Open"* dialog box.
From the "Files of Type" drop-down menu, select a file type.



Navigate to folder where the file is stored.
Click on the desired file name, then click "OPEN".

or

or Upload (Configuration) - The Upload File dialog box will appear. A temporary file name will be place in the "File Name" box.
Check the current connection. This will indicate over which communications port the upload will occur.
Change the current connection, if necessary, prior to beginning the upload.
Press "START". The dialog box will show "Percent Complete".
The Uploaded Configuration File (.cde) will appear with a temporary file name.
From the "File" menu, select Save or Save As and enter a file name and path in the appropriate fields.

Connecting the PC to the Controller

The PC can be connected to the Controller by:

- Direct Serial connection
- Modem connection via Remote Access.
- Direct Ethernet connection
- Networked Ethernet connection

For details refer to the ControlEdge HC900 Controller Installation and User Guide, document 51-52-25-154, section "Connecting the ControlEdge HC900 Controller to a PC with the Designer Software."

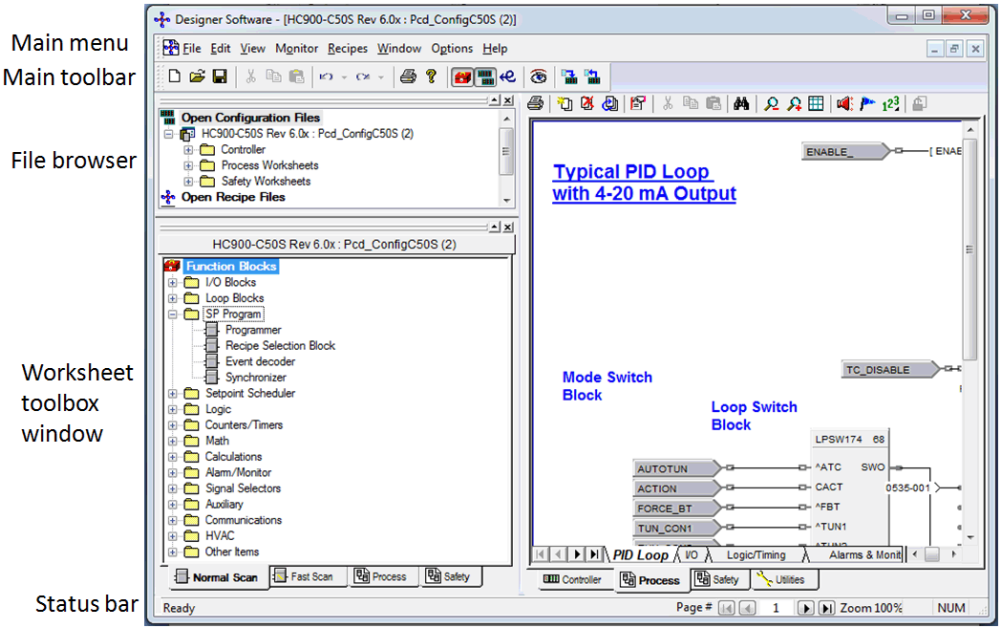
4. User Interface

User Interface Overview

The main components of the User Interface are:

Main Menu

- Main Toolbar
- Worksheet Window(s)
- File Browser
- Worksheet Toolbox Window
- Status Bar

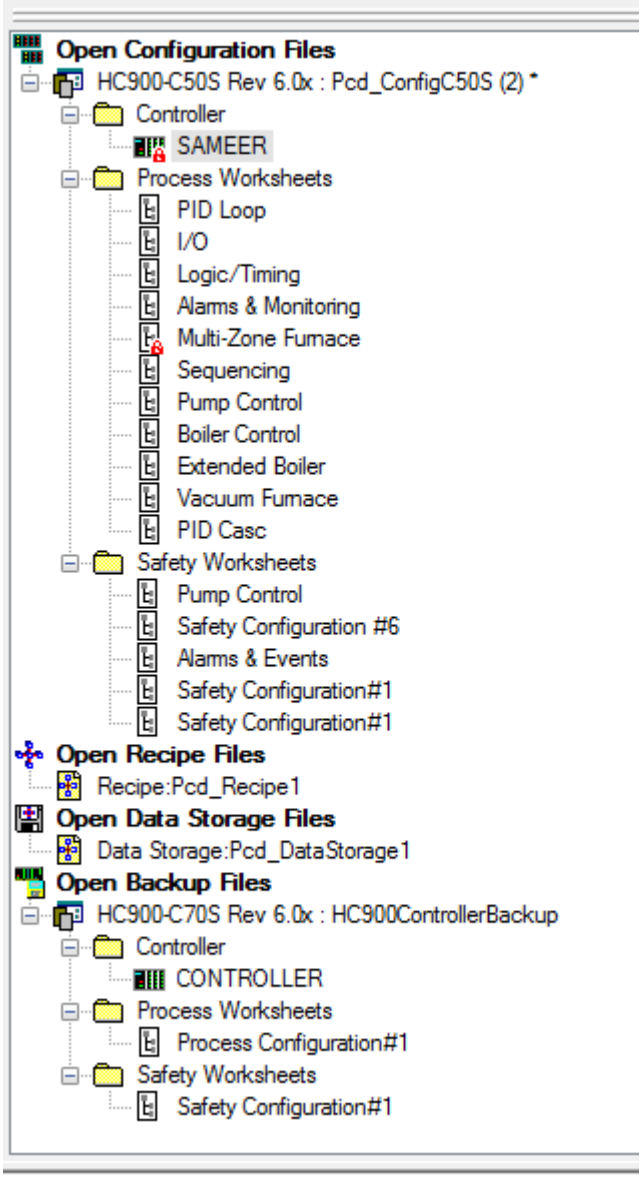


General Terminology

Term	Definition
Browser	Defaults to the top left side of the Worksheet is a dockable window listing opened files. It allows you to move quickly between files and worksheets.
Configuration Files	A Configuration File contains a Control Strategy that you have created best suited for your application. All Open Configuration Files appear in the Browser Window
Recipe File	A Recipe File refers to one of 4 types of user files – a "Recipe" file consisting of Variables only, a Setpoint Profile, a Setpoint Schedule, or a Sequence.
Data Storage File	A Data Storage File contains a data storage schedule for loading at the operator interface via storage media.
Function Blocks	A Function Block is a unit of software that performs a set of operations on its *Input Signals* and *Function Block* parameters and produces *Output Signals.* These output signals can be configured as inputs to other blocks, whose output parameters can be configured as inputs to other function blocks, and so on.
Main Window	The Main Window contains Menus, toolbars and worksheet window plus other items that help you navigate through the application.
Menu	The Main Menu is a top-level menu for this application. You select (highlight) a menu and then choose a command from the drop-down menu. Choosing the command carries out the action.
Status Bar	The status bar is located along the bottom of the window. It indicates information about the current window, the time, the date, download, upload, monitoring and network information. This status bar can be displayed or not displayed from the "View" menu.
Tab	A configuration is built using three main worksheet types: Controller, Display, and Function Blocks. Select the desired tab, located at the bottom of the configuration window for type of worksheet. There are also Tabs in the Function Block Diagrams that allow you to navigate around the multiple FBD Worksheets.
Toolbox	The Worksheet Toolbox, located on the lower left side of the Worksheet, is a dockable window and lists all the function block by category separated by fast and normal scan tabs at the base of the toolbox. You can drag and drop function blocks onto FBD worksheets. A Configuration Tab lists all configured items. Click on any item to jump to it.
Trace Window	Helps you find problems with soft-wire and signal connections between Function Blocks.
Watch Summary Window	The Watch Summary window lets you monitor the following groups of data from the controller: Signal, Variables, I/O. OI Display Groups.
Worksheet	A Worksheet is a logical partition of a configuration. A configuration is built using three main Worksheet) types: Controller, Display (for Legacy 559/1042 I/O configuration), and Function Blocks. A fourth worksheet type (Utilities) included Maintenance functions for the controller. A fifth worksheet is visible when user configures Custom Modbus Map.

File Browser Window

The File Browser Window is a dockable window listing open Configuration Files, Recipe Files, Data Storage Files and Backup Files, as show below. It allows you to move quickly between open files and individual worksheets within configuration files. You can collapse or expand the tree branches and you can enlarge or shrink the size of the window.



- Right-click on any open file name to make it the active document in the Worksheet Window.
- Right-click on any open file and select **Close File** from the con menu to close it.
- Right-click on a **Configuration** or **Backup** file name and select **Properties** from the context menu to view the file properties.
- Expand the branches under any **Configuration** or **Backup** file name to display the currently configured worksheets. A red lock displayed in the worksheet icon indicates that the worksheet is write-protected.
- Double-click on a worksheet in the browser to make it the active view in the Worksheet Window.
- Right-click on a worksheet to view its context menu. The options available on the context menu will depend on the type of worksheet and the current protection status but may include:
    - Worksheet Properties
    - Unlock Worksheets
    - Print Worksheet
    - Append New Worksheet
    - Delete Worksheet
    - Reorder Worksheets

The File Browser Window can be undocked from its default location to the top-left of the Worksheet Window and moved to another location by dragging and dropping on the bar above the tree view. It can also be hidden or made visible by toggling the state of the **File Browser** option available from:

- The Main View menu
- The Main Toolbar
- The worksheet context menu View sub-menu

Worksheet Toolbox Window

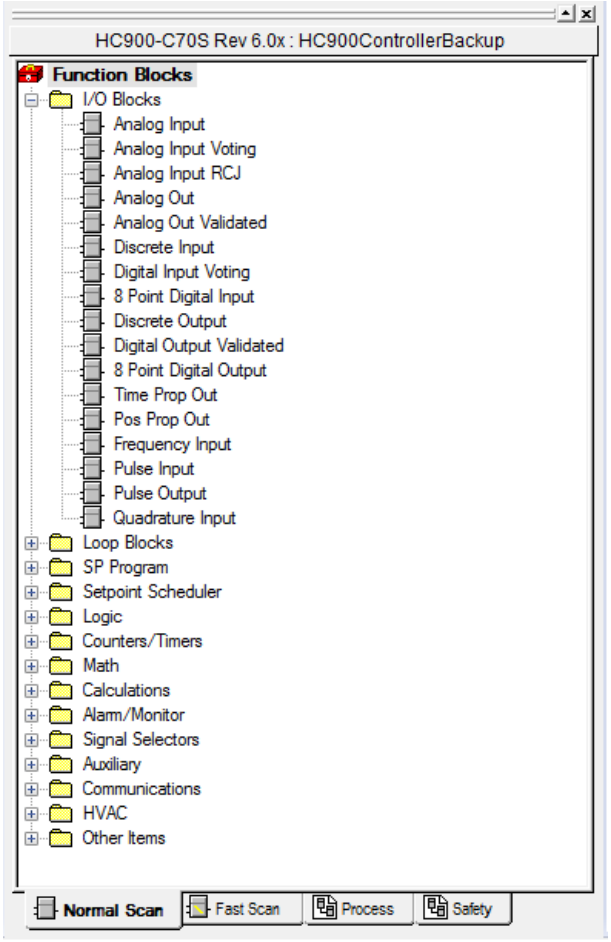
The Worksheet Toolbox is a dockable window which provides two main functions:

- Categorized library of available function blocks and other items that may be placed on function block worksheets.
- Categorized library of all function blocks, variables and signal tags currently in use on all worksheets, providing easy access to properties and navigation to the containing worksheet.

You can collapse or expand the tree and you can enlarge or shrink the size of the window.

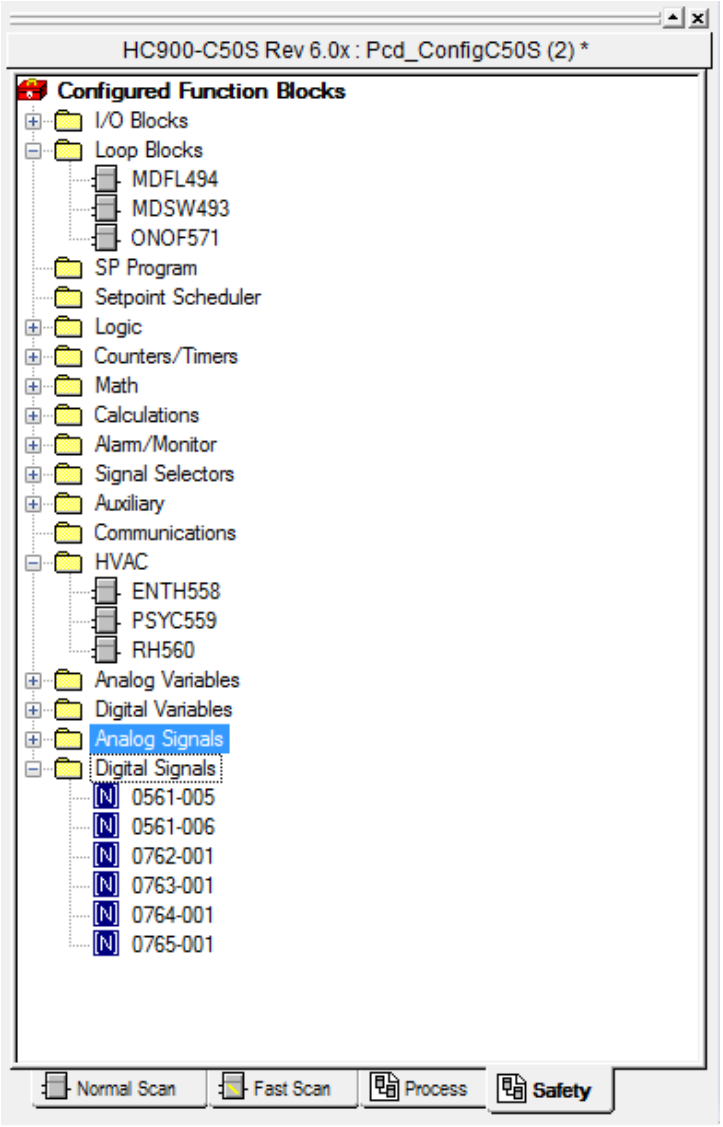
This toolbox applies to the current active document and the **name of the active configuration appears on a button at the top of the window**. Click on this button to view the active configuration's file statistics.

The Worksheet Toolbox contains a tab control with either 3 or 4 tabs. The first two tabs contain the library of available function blocks grouped by the rate that they will be executed at, either Normal Scan or Fast Scan, as shown below.



- Click on a tab to display the function block categories available for that scan rate.
- Expand each category to display the available function blocks. For Safety Enabled SIL-compliant configurations some function blocks are not compatible with Safety Worksheets and will be disabled and grayed-out if the current active worksheet is a Safety Worksheet.
- If the current active worksheet is a Function Block Worksheet, drag and drop any enabled function block to place it on the worksheet.
- Right-click on a function block and select **Help** from the context menu to display a help file page with the details of that block.

The third and optional fourth tabs contain the library of function blocks currently in use, grouped by the type of function block worksheet, either Process or Safety, as shown below. (The Safety tab will only be available in SIL-compliant configurations.)



- Click on a tab to display the function block categories available for that worksheet type.
- Expand each category to display the function blocks used. The blocks will be identified by the Function Block ID and the assigned Block Number rather than function block type. The icon indicates a Normal Scan rate block and the icon indicates a Fast Scan rate block.
- If the configuration is using a Custom Modbus Map, items can be dragged and dropped on to the corresponding Custom Modbus Map configuration dialog.
- Right-click on an item to display its context menu and select from the following options:
  - **Properties…** to open the item's properties dialog
  - **Block Execution Order…** to change the relative execution order of function blocks
  - **Find** to navigate to the item's location on the worksheet
  - **Help** to display a help file page with the details of that item

The Worksheet Toolbox can be undocked from its default location to the bottom-left of the Worksheet Window and moved to another location by dragging and dropping on the bar above the tree view. It can also be hidden or made visible by toggling the state of the **Worksheet Toolbox** option available from:

- The Main View menu
- The Main Toolbar
- The worksheet context menu View sub-menu

Traceback Window

Overview

This feature helps you find problems with soft-wire and signal connections between Function Blocks.

For Example:

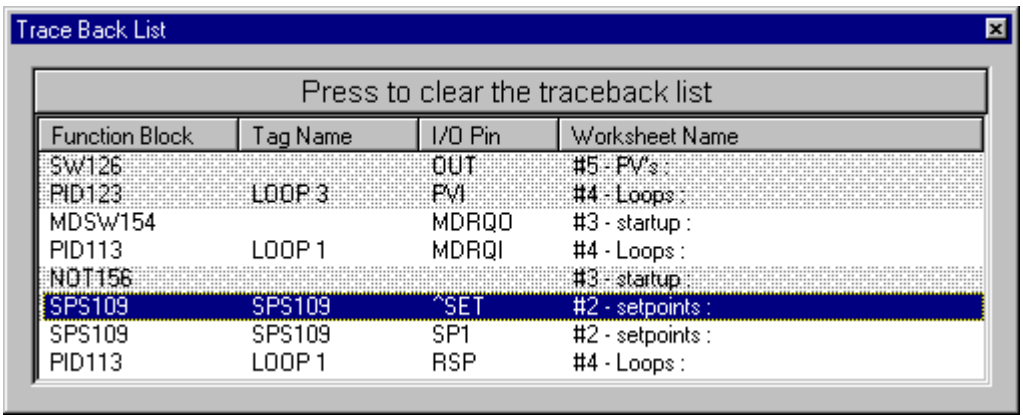
If you are testing a configuration that you've built and want to know why a Digital Output is ON when it should be OFF, you can search for the source of the Input Signal.

Traceback is useful for finding the analog or digital source signal.

Trace Window

Access the Trace Window from the Main Menu Toolbar

Or, from the View Menu on the main menu.



It is a dockable, sizeable window.

The Trace Window provides a list of all blocks/pins you have traced and lists :

- Block ID
- Tag Name
- I/O Pin Name
- Worksheet name

Trace Window Update

Each time you perform a Trace, the window will update with a new pair of block/pins.
The ***first item*** is the ***signal source***, the ***second item*** is the ***signal destination***.

Select any of the rows in the Traceback window to recall the diagram to display the selected block.

The last trace is on the top of the list.

Right Mouse Click Procedure to Trace Signals

Select a Function Block of interest.

Right Mouse click on any INPUT pin.

Select "TRACE". Traceback will "find" the source of the connection you selected and refresh the FBD view with that block visible (Highlighted) - even if the other side of the connection is on a ***different*** worksheet.
The Output pin of the block (the signal source) will be displayed in RED.

From that block, repeat the traceback to another block and another block, etc.

Use the Traceback list to view your Traceback history.

You can clear the Trace List by pressing the bar at the top of the window.

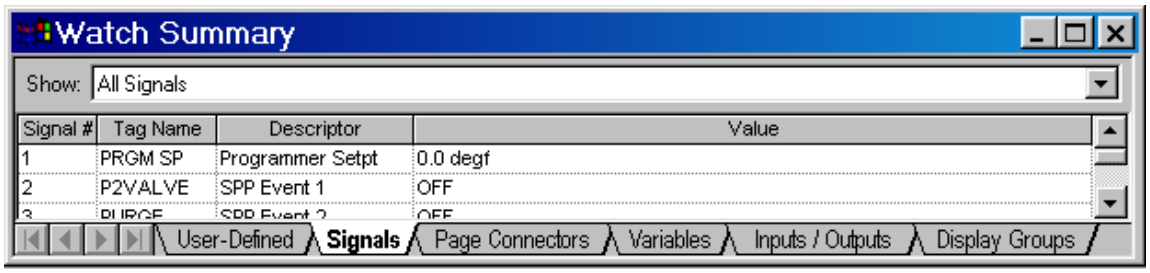
Watch Summary Window

Overview

accesses the Watch Summary Window from the Monitor Toolbar

Or, the menu item "Watch Summary" from the Monitor Menu on the main menu.

This is a view of the Watch Summary Window. It is a Dockable (movable), sizable window.
[Press and hold the CTRL key down to prevent Docking when moving the window]



There are five tabs at the bottom of the window that lets you monitor the following groups of data from the controller. Click on any of the tab titles below **to view an example** of the selected data for that tab. All parameter listings may be **sorted** by column.

User Defined (Customized list of Variables, Signal Tags, Page Connectors)

Signals (can be filtered by type - All, Analog, Digital)

Page Connectors (can be filtered by type - All, Analog, Digital)

Variables (can be filtered by type - All, Analog, Digital)

I/O (can be filtered by type - AI, AO, DI, DO)

OI Display groups (Overviews, Panel Meters, Alarms, Trends, etc)

Docking and Undocking the Window

Double clicking in the Title Bar area of the Watch Summary Window will toggle its docked state. If the window is docked, double clicking in the title bar area will undock the window.

If the window is Undocked
- double-clicking in the title bar area will dock the window at it last docked position
- Dragging the window to the top, bottom, left, or right edge of the main viewing area of the application will dock the window at that location

[Press and hold the CTRL key down to prevent Docking when moving the window]

Hot Links

You can click on any I/O function block or Signal on the Controller Worksheet or any I/O function block, Signal, or Variable in the Watch Window and that item will be located on the Function Block Diagram.

As you move the mouse over a HOT LINK, the text changes to Underlined Blue and the cursor changes to a Hand.

Writes or Forces

By clicking on the item in the Value column, you may write a value such as for a Variable or force a value for an analog input or digital input. For I/O, a Forced column will indicate that the I/O point is forced.

Status Bar

The status bar is located along the bottom of the application's window. It indicates information about the current window. It can be turned on or off in the "View" Menu.

Menu Item Description - The text string at the far left on the status bar gives a brief description of the menu item in focus. If you pull down a menu list and position the cursor on a menu item this field will describe the menu item.

Connected Field - To the left of the Page Number indicator are two fields that are visible when you are in Monitor Mode. One indicates "Connected" and the other is a green LED that flashes when communications is active between the PC and controller.

Worksheet Page Number -To the left of the Zoom indicator is a page number field. This will display the page number of the **current FBD Worksheet**. It is blank for other worksheet types (Display, Controller, and Utilities). There are scroll buttons to navigate through pages of the worksheet.

Zoom Level – indicates the level of Zoom active on the worksheet. (i.e. 100%)

Active Keyboard Keys - Toward the far right, you will see indicators to alert the user that the Caps Lock key on the keyboard is active , the NUM lock on the keyboard is active, or the SCRL (Scroll Lock) key is active.

Menu Conventions

The following menu conventions are used.

Menu Convention	Meaning
Dimmed command	You will not be able to use this command at the current time. (For example: You may need to select another item before using this command.)
An ellipsis (**...**) following a command	A dialog box will appear when you choose this command. The dialog box contains options you need to select before the command can be completed.
A check mark next to a command	The command is in effect. When you remove the check mark (by selecting the command), the command is no longer in effect.
A key combination next to a command	The key combination is a keyboard accelerator *shortcut* for this command. You can use this key combination to choose this command.
A triangle next to a command	When you choose this command, a cascading menu appears, listing additional commands.

Selecting a Menu

In this application, you select (highlight) a menu and then choose a command from that menu. Choosing the command carries out the action.

To choose an item from a selected menu:

Mouse

Using the mouse pointer, point to the name of the menu on the menu bar, and click the left mouse button. This opens the menu. To move directly to a menu item, drag the selection cursor down the menu until the desired item is highlighted, then release the button.

UP/Down Arrow Keys

Press the "ALT" key to highlight the menu bar then use the UP/Down arrow keys on the keyboard to select the item, and then press "Enter".

Underlined Letter

If a name in the menu bar has an underlined letter you can press ALT and then type the letter that's underlined to open the menu.

For example: to open the FILE menu in the Designer main window, press ALT+F.

Closing a Menu

To close a menu:

Click the menu name or anywhere outside the menu, or

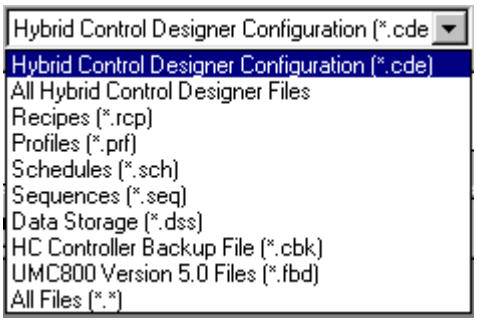
Press ESC to close the menu but remain on the menu bar so that you can make another selection

Main Menu

The Main Menu is located across the top of the User Interface. The menus are:

File Menu
Edit Menu
View Menu
Monitor Menu
Recipes Menu
Window Menu
Help Menu

File Menu

Menu Selection	Function
New *Toolbar*: *Shortcut*: CTRL+N	Displays a "Choose a New File Type" dialog box with these tabs: ***New Configuration:*** Select the "**Configuration**" tab. From the drop-down menus, select Controller and Revision. Click OK and a new Configuration file is listed in the File Browser and a new diagram is placed in the Main Window area. ***New Recipes:*** Select the "**Recipe**" tab. On the tab, click on a radio button to select one of the following: Recipes (Variables) Setpoint Profile Setpoint Schedule Sequence Click OK. The associated "Editor" dialog box will appear and a new "Opened Recipe File" is listed in the File Browser. Refer to the specific Recipe type for specifics. ***New Data Storage:*** Select the "**Data Storage**" tab. On the tab, click on a radio button to create a new Data Storage File
Open … *Toolbar*: *Shortcut*: CTRL+O	Displays the *"Open"* dialog box. From the "Files of Type" drop-down menu, select a file type.  Navigate to folder where the file is stored. Click on the desired file name, then click "OPEN". Opens files and converts UMC800 (*.FBD) configuration files.
Close	Closes the active document window. It will also close a minimized window if active. [It will not close an active dialog box.]
Save *Toolbar*: *Shortcut*: CTRL+S	Saves the active configuration. First time save displays the "*Save As*" dialog box.
Save As ...	Displays the *"Save As"* dialog box. Prompts user to name the active configuration and select the file in which the file is to be stored.
Download	Configuration Download transfers a saved configuration **FROM** the PC **TO** the controller. The Controller may be in either RUN or PROGRAM mode.

Menu Selection	Function
Upload Configuration	Configuration Upload transfers a configuration **FROM** the controller **TO** the PC including graphic function block pages, text annotations, stored recipes/profiles/schedules/sequences, OI display assignments, OI data storage setup. The uploaded file name, as a default, will include the controller name, alias name (if assigned) and network name (if assigned). The Controller may be in ANY mode. **No configuration file is required to be opened** prior to the Upload Request
Upload…	Opens the "Upload" dialog box that lists the type of recipes available to upload. Click on a radio button to select one of the following: Recipes (Variables) Setpoint Profile Setpoint Schedule Sequence Data Storage. Upload transfers a recipe **FROM** the controller **TO** the software.
Back up Controller…	Saves a controller's active configuration as a backup file with .cbk extension. Similar to saving an uploaded configuration except that the configuration *and* port settings are saved. You are prompted to specify the comm. link settings for the controller to be backed up. Backup files are read-only; to edit you must first save as .cde. See Back Up Controller Information for more details.
Hang Up Modem	When communicating with a controller via a Modem, select this to disconnect the Modem from the controller.
Properties ...	Displays the *"File Properties "* dialog box. Tabs allow user to fill in Configuration **File properties**, read Configuration File **Statistics (**capacity usage), **read protection**, and worksheet protection (password access to individual worksheets)
Write Protect File ...	Displays the *"Add Write Protection"* dialog box. Can enter and confirm a password for the selected file. Use the check box to turn "Write Protect" on or off.
Print Report *Toolbar:* *Shortcut*: CTRL+P	Displays the "Print Report" Dialog box. Let's you choose reports for printing from 5 different categories: Controllers Function Block Diagrams Displays Recipes Alarms and Events
Print Report Preview	Let's you choose a report preview (Print Preview) for printing from the 5 categories: Controllers Function Block Diagrams Displays Recipes Alarms and Events The selected report is displayed on the screen as it will look when printed.
Export Report	Let's you export reports as files in comma or tab separated format.
Print Setup ...	Displays *"Print Setup"* dialog box. Allows user to select printer, paper type, and orientation.
Most Recent Files	Lists the most recent files that were open.
Exit	Exits the application.

Edit Menu

Menu Selection	Function
Undo **Toolbar:** **Shortcut: CTRL+Z**	Click once to undo the last action. Click on the down arrow to see all previous actions. To undo several actions, move mouse to an earlier action and click on it: all actions from that action forward are undone. If you accidentally undo an action, use redo. You can only undo actions that affect the contents of the configuration; you can't undo actions that affect the display of the configuration (such as zoom).
Redo **Toolbar:** **Shortcut: CTRL+Y**	Click once to redo the last Undone action. Click on the down arrow to see all Undone actions. To redo several actions, move mouse to earliest desired action and click on it: all actions from that action forward are redone. If you accidentally redo an action, use undo. You can redo only actions that affect the contents of the configuration; you can't redo actions that affect the display of the configuration (such as zoom).
Cut **Toolbar:** **Shortcut: CTRL+X**	Moves the currently selected Process or Safety block diagram items from the current diagram and places them on the clipboard. Indicated by a red dotted line. Upon pasting the items, all links to them (e.g., display references, Modbus address, recipes) are preserved as if they were moved; they are not deleted and pasted as a new copy. The only exception to this is if the item is pasted into a diagram on a different configuration.
Copy **Toolbar:** **Shortcut: CTRL+C**	Copies the currently selected Process or Safety block diagram items from the current diagram, and place it on the clipboard. Indicated by a blue dotted line.
Paste **Toolbar:** **Shortcut: CTRL+V**	Places the contents of the clipboard containing Process or Safety block diagram items onto the Process or Safety block diagram at the location determined by the blinking insertion point caret. This command is unavailable if the clipboard is empty. Cut and pasted items maintain their links (e.g., display references, Modbus addresses, recipes); they are not deleted and pasted as a new copy. The only exception to this is if the item is pasted into a diagram on a different configuration. If you paste a cut (not copied) function block and soft wires to the same or different worksheet in the same configuration, the soft wires will be dangling (unconnected) and you are asked to specify how you want to resolve dangling soft wires. (*See "Resolve Dangling Soft Wires" section in the HCD help file*).
Paste Special **Toolbar:** **Shortcut: CTRL+ALT+V**	Places the content of the clipboard containing Process or Safety block diagram items onto the Process or Safety block diagram as the Paste option. This command is unavailable if the clipboard is empty. Cut and pasted items maintain their links (e.g., display references, Modbus addresses, recipes); they are not deleted and pasted as a new copy. The only exception to this is if the item is pasted into a diagram on a different configuration. If you paste a cut (not copied) function block and soft wires to the same or different worksheet in the same configuration, the soft wires will be dangling (unconnected) and you are asked to specify how you want to resolve dangling soft wires. (*See section "Resolve Dangling Soft Wires" in the HCD help file*). While pasting the items, the Change Item Name window appears if the tags contain names. NOTE: The paste special functionality does not inherit the properties such as channel numbers and signal tags.

Delete	Deletes the currently selected item on the function block diagram.
Append Process Worksheet / Append Safety Worksheet	Adds a new Process or Safety block diagram. You will see “Append Process Worksheet” or “Append Safety Worksheet” depending on which tab is currently active. If the Controller or Utilities tab is currently active, this command will be grayed out. If selected when enabled, a new worksheet will be created and a new sub-tab for it will appear at the bottom of the diagram window. The new diagram reference will be placed in the File Browser. Click on the diagram name in the File Browser to edit the name.
Delete Process Worksheet / Delete Safety Worksheet	Deletes the selected Function Block Diagram and its reference in the File Browser.
Reorder Process Worksheets… / Reorder Safety Worksheets…	Opens the Worksheet order dialog box. Allows you to change the order of the worksheets as they appear at the bottom of the Worksheet area. Click on worksheet name and use the increment-decrement buttons at the top of the dialog box to change the worksheet order.
Worksheet Properties…	Opens the "Worksheet Properties" dialog box. Allows you to enter or edit the Title and Description of the worksheet. Type in a title (24 characters) and description (32 characters) for your Worksheet -.
Unlock Worksheets	Displays "Unlock Worksheets" dialog box. Enter password to unlock all protected worksheets. Click on "Unlock".
Block and Tag Order	Opens the “Execution Order” dialog box to let you re-arrange block execution order. Also available from the Process or Safety worksheet toolbar. Select "Tag Order" to re-arrange the tags order for: Alternator Operates Device Controls HOA Switches Loops Ramp Operates Sequencers SP Programmers SP Schedulers Stage Operates
Loop Mode Priority	Opens the “Loop Mode Priority” dialog box. Let’s you select which has priority: Manual Mode or Tracking Mode.
Alarms	Opens the "Alarm Group Configuration" dialog box. See section “Alarm Group Configuration” in the help manual. Also available from the Process or Safety worksheet toolbar.
Events	Opens the "Configure Event List" dialog box. See section “Event List Configuration” in the help manual. Also available from the Process or Safety worksheet toolbar.
Configure Modbus Map Type	Available for configuration revision 4.0 or higher. Selects a method for configuring the Modbus register map: fixed or custom. See section “Configure Modbus Map Method” in the help manual.
Modbus Register Map…	Available for configuration revision 2.0 or higher. See section “Fixed Modbus Map” in the help manual.
Trend Backfill Log Point Selection	Available for configuration revision 4.4 or higher. Let’s you select method for configuring points to be saved in the trend history buffer either via signal tag name or Modbus address.

Defragment Function Block List	Frees up memory occupied by previously deleted function blocks. After defragmentation is complete, downloading the configuration to the controller requires a cold start. When configuration memory is 100% full but includes fragmented space from deleted blocks, the defragment window appears automatically. To avoid untimely cold starts, we recommended you defragment before configuration memory is full. (See section “File Properties” in the help manual)
Find **Shortcut: CTRL+F**	Searches for an item on the "Find Item" dialog box. Select an item type from the "Show" drop-down menu to search, then select an Item from the "Item" drop down menu. The Tag, Variable, or Function Block will be highlighted on the Function Block Diagram.
Go To **Shortcut: CTRL+G**	Displays the "Enter Page Number" dialog box and allows you to enter the page number to which you want to go (1-20).
Select All **Shortcut: CTRL+A**	Selects all items present in the worksheet.

View Menu

Menu Selection	Function
Toolbar	Displays or hides the toolbar in the top of the Main window. Gray box with √ mark indicates display.
Status Bar	Displays or hides the status bar at the bottom of the Main window. Gray box with √ mark indicates display.
File Browser	Displays or hides the File Browser at the top left of the Main window. Gray box with icon indicates display.
Worksheet Toolbox	Displays or hides the Worksheet Toolbox at the bottom left of the Main window. Gray box with icon indicates display. Tabs separate fast scan and normal scan function block types.
Trace Window	Allows you to view the Traceback list.
Localization	Allows to select any one of supported language for HCD
Network Device List	Let you setup a PC Network Port for interface to a specific controller. See PC Network Port Set Up.
PC Serial Port Setup	Let you setup up to 8 PC Serial Comm ports for interface to a specific controller. See PC Serial Com Port Setup.
Grid	Displays or hides a Grid on the FBD Worksheet
Zoom Out	Let you Zoom in out to see more of a document. Zoom levels of 50%, 75%, 100%, 125%, and 150%. Also available from FBD worksheet toolbar.
Zoom In	Let you zoom in to return items to normal size. Zoom levels of 50%, 75%, 100%, 125%, and 150%. Also available from FBD worksheet toolbar.

Options Menu

Menu Selection	Function
Options	Options are: **Warning Level** Allows enable/disable of Open Input and Unassigned I/O warnings. Click on Box to select. **Default Annotation Attributes** Allows the setting of default font characteristics for Text Annotations. **Export Delimiter** Allows setting of export report's default format (comma delimited or tab delimited). **Auto Save** Allows saving cde files automatically at regular intervals. See Auto Save Functionality. **Improve PCD Performance (Disables Undo and Redo)** Disables the undo and redo functionality for improving the performance. By default, the undo and redo is available to the user. The status is displayed in the status bar.

Monitor Menu

Menu Selection	Function
Monitor Mode	Enters or exits monitor mode. **While in monitor mode, edits to the configuration cannot be made.** If entering monitor mode, selecting this menu item opens the "Enter Monitor Mode" dialog box.
Monitor Toolbar	The Monitor Toolbar toggles each monitor window listed below:
Set Update Rate	You can specify the monitor update rate that determines how often data is collected from the controller during monitoring.
Set Logic State Colors	You can select a color scheme for indicating the on/off status of digital wires, digital signal tags, page connectors, and logic inversion.
Watch Summary Window	Toggles the Watch Summary Window that lets you view groups of related data such as I/O and Signal Tags.
Controller Diagnostics	Toggles the Controller Diagnostics Window that lets you view the controller parameters and values.
Rack Diagnostics	Toggles the Rack Diagnostics window that lets you view the Rack Diagnostics, Expansion I/O Comm Diagnostics (except C30 CPU) and the I/O Module parameters and indicators.
Controller Ports Diagnostics	Toggles the Configuration Port Diagnostics window that lets you view the Configuration Port parameters and values. Serial Port S1 Serial Port S2 Network Port Expansion I/O Comm (except C30 CPU) Host Connections Peer to Peer Connections
Modbus Host Ports Diagnostics	Displays Modbus ports diagnostics. Modbus Host (Serial) Port Diagnostics Modbus/TCP Initiator Port Diagnostics
Monitor Function Block *Shortcut*: CTRL+M	Toggles the Function Block Monitor Windows that lets you monitor all the parameters of the selected Function Block.

Menu Selection	Function
Forced Blocks	Toggles the Forced Block Summary Window that lets you see all the outputs that are being forced and permits release of the force condition for a selected output.
All Function Block Windows	Allows you toggle the function block windows that are open - On/Off.
All Pins	Let you toggle monitoring values (numeric or On/Off state) at any input or output pin – Display or Hide.
All Monitor Windows	Allows you toggle the Monitor windows that are open - On/Off.
Redundancy…	Accesses Redundancy diagnostics. Redundancy System Redundancy Link Lead CPU Reserve CPU Scanner 2 Link

Recipes Menu

Accesses all recipe pools. To learn about the different recipe types read Recipe Overview.

Menu Selection	Function
Allocate Recipe Memory	Allocates the controller's memory for the four recipe types. This is the number of recipes that can be stored in the controller's four recipe pools. Recipes in these pools can be loaded and run by Recipe Selection Blocks, Programmers, Schedulers, and Sequencers. As recipe memory usage increases, less memory is available for other parts of your configuration (such as function blocks).
Recipes (Variables)…	A recipe (variables) is a list of Variables with settings that define the ingredients needed to make a product or run a particular batch. This selection opens the Recipe Pool dialog box and allows viewing, adding, editing, and printing of Recipe details. You can save the selected recipe item to a file; open a recipe file and insert it into the pool; and download the selected recipe item to a controller's recipe pool.
Setpoint Profiles…	Setpoint Program (Profile) configuration provides a quick and easy way to create, edit, and save different ramp/soak (setpoint) profiles for the Setpoint Programmer (SPP) control blocks in the configuration. This selection opens the Setpoint Profile Pool dialog box and allows viewing, adding, editing, and printing of Setpoint Profile details. You can save the selected SPP item to a file; open a SPP file and insert it into the pool; and download the selected SPP item to a controller's Setpoint Profiles pool.
Setpoint Schedules…	Setpoint Schedule configuration provides a quick and easy way to create, edit, and save different Setpoint Schedules for the Setpoint Scheduler (SPS) control blocks in the configuration. This selection opens the Setpoint Schedule Pool dialog box and allows viewing, adding, editing, and printing of Setpoint Schedules details. You can save the selected SPS item to a file; open a SPS file and insert it into the pool; and download the selected SPS item to a controller's Setpoint Schedule pool.
Sequences…	Sequence configuration provides a series of inter-related events used to start-up or shut-down a unit process, or a series of timed and process measurement dependent events that are executed to produce a final product. This selection opens the Sequence Pool dialog box and allows viewing, adding, editing, and printing of Sequence details. You can save the selected SEQ item to a file; open a SEQ file and insert it into the pool; and download the selected SEQ item to a controller's Sequence pool.

Window Menu

Menu Selection	Function
Cascade	Arranges windows so that they overlap making it easy to select a window.
Tile Horizontally	Arranges windows side by side. Each window is visible and none overlap.
Tile Vertically	Arranges windows over and under each other. Each window is visible and none overlap.
Arrange All	Arranges configuration Icons when configurations are minimized.
(Open window designations)	Lists all Function Block Diagrams, recipes, and data storage files that are open and checks the one that is active. Click any file to display it.

Help Menu

MENU SELECTIONS

Help Topics

Calls up the top level Helps Contents page.

Selecting a **Topic** displays information about that topic. If the information about a topic exceeds the height of the window, a vertical scrollbar will be displayed.

Selecting the **Index** tab lets you type in the first few letters of the word you are looking for.

Selecting the **Find** tab lets you search for specific words and phrases in Help topics, instead of searching for information by category.

About Help

Displays copyright and software version, and user name and company name entered during software's installation.

ADDITIONAL HELP ACCESS

Right-click Help for Help Topics

Right-click on any Function Block to access topic help for that particular Block

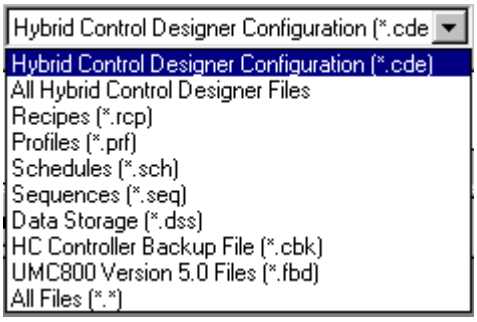
Hotspots

When the cursor is over a hotspot area on an image, it turns to a hand indicating that when clicked some sort of action occurs.

Note: *In Mandarin Help Topic, Index, and Find contents are in English only.*

Main Toolbar Functions

Click on ICON to open a dialog box.

ICON	Function	Dialog Box Comments
	New	Displays a "Choose a New File Type" dialog box with these tabs. ***New Configuration:*** Select the "**Configuration**" tab. From the drop-down menus, select Controller and Revision. Click OK and a new Designer Configuration file is listed in the Designer Browser and a new diagram is placed in the Main Window area. ***New Recipes:*** Select the "**Recipe**" tab. On the tab, click on a radio button to select one of the following: Recipes (Variables) Setpoint Profile Setpoint Schedule Sequence Click OK. The associated "Editor" dialog box will appear and a new "Opened Recipe File" is listed in the File Browser. Refer to the specific Recipe type for specifics. ***New Data Storage:*** Select the "**Data Storage**" tab. On the tab, click on a radio button to create a new Data Storage File
	Open	Displays the *"Open"* dialog box. From the "Files of Type" drop-down menu, select a file type.  Navigate to folder where the file is stored. Click on the desired file name, then click "OPEN". Opens files and converts UMC800 (*.FBD) configuration files.
	Save	Saves the active configuration. First time save displays the "*Save As*" dialog box.
	Cut	Moves the currently selected FBD diagram items from the current Function Block diagram and places them on the clipboard. Indicated by a red dotted line. Upon pasting the items, all links to them (e.g., display references, Modbus address, recipes) are preserved as if they were moved, they are not deleted and pasted as a new copy.
	Copy	Copies the currently selected FBD diagram items from the current Function Block diagram and places it on the clipboard. Indicated by a blue dotted line.
	Paste	Places the contents of the clipboard containing FBD diagram items onto the Function Block Diagram at the location determined by the blinking insertion point caret. This command is unavailable if the clipboard is empty. Cut and pasted items maintain their links (e.g., display references, Modbus addresses,

ICON	Function	Dialog Box Comments
		recipes), they are not deleted and pasted as a new copy. If you paste a cut function block and soft wires to the same or different worksheet in the same configuration, the soft wires will be dangling (unconnected) and you are asked to specify how you want to resolve dangling soft wires.
	Undo	Click once to undo the last action. Click on the down arrow to see all previous actions. To undo several actions, move mouse to an earlier action and click on it: all actions from that action forward are undone. If you accidentally undo an action, use redo. You can undo only actions that affect the contents of the configuration; you can't undo actions that affect the display of the configuration (such as zoom).
	Redo	Click once to redo the last Undone action. Click on the down arrow to see all Undone actions. To redo several actions, move mouse to earliest desired action and click on it: all actions from that action forward are redone. If you accidentally redo an action, use undo. You can redo only actions that affect the contents of the configuration; you can't redo actions that affect the display of the configuration (such as zoom).
	Print	Displays the "Print Report" Dialog box. Let's you choose reports for printing from 5 different categories: Controllers Function Block Diagrams Displays Recipes Alarms and Events
	Help Topics	Opens Help Topics Table of Contents and Help information screen.
	Worksheet Toolbox	Displays or hides the Worksheet Toolbox Window.
	File Browser	Displays or hides the File Browser Window.
	Traceback Window	Displays or hides the Traceback Window.
	Monitor Mode	Enters/Exits Monitor Mode and allows On-line Monitoring and Diagnostics. ***When pressed***, the active configuration is in the Monitor mode (and cannot be edited). ***When not pressed***, the active configuration is in the edit mode.
	Download	Opens the "Download File" dialog box. Press start to Download file selected to the controller.
	Upload	Opens the "Upload File" dialog box. Press start to Upload file selected from the controller.

Navigational Tools

Navigational Tools available:

Main Menus and Main Window Toolbar

File Browser Window

Worksheet Category Tabs

Worksheet Toolbars (Controller, Display, Function Block Diagram, Utilities)

Find / Go To

Function Block Help (right mouse click on block)

Connection Traceback Window

Finding an Item on the FBD Worksheet

Hot Links

Keyboard Navigation

Right Mouse Click

Shown below are the right-click menus.
See also Right Click In Monitor Mode.

Right Click on Function Block Object (not pins)

Help - Calls up Topic Help for Function Block selected

Execution Order

Cut

Copy

Paste

Paste Special

Delete

Edit Modbus Register Address

Properties

Right Click on Unconnected Function Block pins*

Signal Tag

Page Connector

Analog Variable

Digital Variable

Numeric Constant

Connector

Paste – Reconnects a signal tag or page connector that you cut from another pin.

*When you drop one of these items it automatically connects to the pin you right-clicked on.

Right Click on Connected Function Block Input Pins

Trace

Right Click on Variable

Help - Calls up Topic Help for Function Block selected

Execution Order

Cut

Copy

Paste

Delete

Add to Modbus Registers

Properties

Right Click on Signal Tag

Help – calls up help

Find Where Used – Opens Find dialog box. Let's you locate any and all places where the signal tag is used.

Cut -- Cuts the signal tag so you can reconnect (paste) it to a different unconnected pin of the same type (digital or analog). Can reconnect to a different function block. Item is grayed out indicating the cut. Press Esc to cancel.

Delete – Deletes the signal tag.

Add to Modbus Registers

Properties

Right Click on Page Connector

Help – calls up help

Find Where Used – Opens Find dialog box. Let's you locate any and all places where the page connector is used.

Cut --Cuts the page connector so you can reconnect (paste) it to a different unconnected pin of the same type (digital or analog). Can reconnect to a different function block. Item is grayed out indicating the cut. Press Esc to cancel.

Delete – Deletes the page connector.

Add to Modbus Registers

Properties

Click on FB Diagram White Space

Cut

Copy

Paste

Paste Special

Drop Other Items

Execution Order

Fast Logic Order

Find

Go To

View (displays the view menu)

Properties [File]

Keyboard Navigation

Press	To
LEFT ARROW	Scroll worksheet to the left
RIGHT ARROW	Scroll worksheet to the right
UP ARROW	Scroll worksheet up
DOWN ARROW	Scroll worksheet down
END	Go to the end of last page
HOME	Go to the beginning of first page
PAGE DOWN	Go to the next worksheet page
PAGE UP	Go to the previous worksheet page
CTRL+LEFT ARROW	Go to the end of last page
CTRL+RIGHT ARROW	Go to the beginning of first page
CTRL+UP ARROW	Go to the top of the page
CTRL+DOWN ARROW	Go to the bottom of the page
CTRL+PAGE DOWN	Go to the next worksheet tab
CTRL+PAGE UP	Go to the previous worksheet tab
CTRL+A	Selects all items

Other keyboard functions

If necessary, you can use the standard keystroke conventions to move around.

ALT *used together with the underlined letter in text labeling an object lets you select that object.*

TAB *select next field or object in dialog boxes and configuration templates*

SHIFT+TAB *select previous field or object in dialog boxes and configuration templates*

UP ARROW *previous choice in the field*

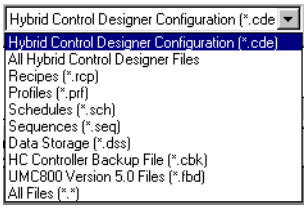
DOWN ARROW *next choice in the field*

ALT+DOWN ARROW *opens a drop-down list box*

This page has been intentionally left blank

5. File Management

Opening an Existing File

Select "Open" from the File Menu… or **from the Main Toolbar** *Shortcut*: CTRL+O	Displays the *"Open"* dialog box. Drop-down the "Files of Type' menu and select a file type.  Navigate to folder where the file is stored. Click on the desired file name, then click "OPEN".
Or	From the "File" menu, select one of the most recently opened file listed above the "Exit" item.

Creating a New Configuration File

Select "New" from the File Menu then "Configuration" tab from the dialog box **or** **from the Main toolbar** *Shortcut*: CTRL+N	Displays a "Choose a New File Type" dialog box. Select the "Configuration" tab. From the drop-down menus, select Controller and Revision. Click OK and a new Designer Configuration file is listed in the Designer Browser and a New diagram is place in the Main Window area.

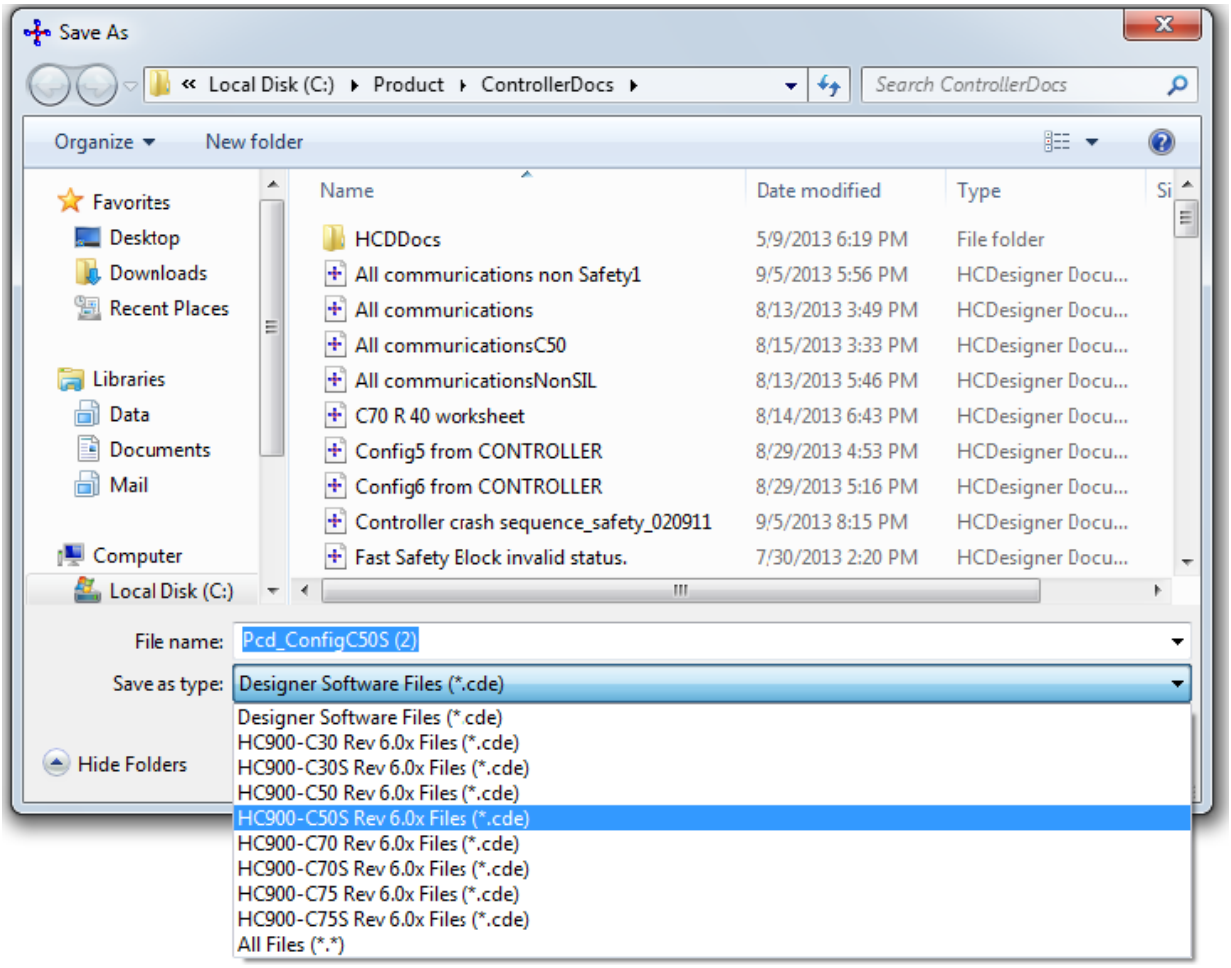
Saving A Configuration File

To Save an Existing File

1. Select "SAVE" from the "FILE" menu or from the Main Toolbar
2. If there **are no** unconnected inputs that need to be set to OFF or 0, **and** there are no I/O blocks with unassigned I/O addresses, then the data is saved automatically, and the rest of the steps may be skipped.
3. If there **are** unconnected inputs that have not been previously set to OFF or 0, **and/or** there are I/O blocks with unassigned I/O addresses, the Process Control Designer will notify you of the situation and ask if you want to see a list of unconnected inputs and/or a list of unconfigured I/O blocks.
4. Click "Yes" to view the summary of unconnected inputs or unconfigured I/O blocks.
5. Click "Log File" to save the list to a text file, if desired.

To Save a New File or Save the File as a New Name

1. Select "SAVE AS" from the "FILE" menu. The "Save As" dialog box will open.



2. Type in the new file name in that field.
3. From the drop-down menu in the "Save as Type" field, select the configuration type depending on the controller you have.
4. If there **are no** unconnected inputs that need to be set to OFF or 0, **and** there are no I/O blocks with unassigned I/O addresses, then the data is saved automatically, and the rest of the steps may be skipped.
5. If there **are** unconnected inputs that have not been previously set to OFF or 0, **and/or** there are I/O blocks with unassigned I/O addresses, the Process Control Designer will notify you of the situation and ask if you want to see a list of unconnected inputs and/or a list of unconfigured I/O blocks.
6. Click "Yes" to view the summary of unconnected inputs or unconfigured I/O blocks.
7. Click "Log File" to save the list to a text file, if desired.

To Save a File as a Different Device or Revision (i.e. conversion)

1. Select "SAVE AS" from the "FILE" menu. The "Save As" dialog box will open.
2. Type in the new file name in that field.
3. From the drop-down menu in the "Save as Type" field, select the configuration type and revision that you wish to convert to.
4. If there **are no** unconnected inputs that need to be set to OFF or 0, **and** there are no I/O blocks with unassigned I/O addresses, then the data is saved automatically, and the rest of the steps may be skipped.
5. If there **are** unconnected inputs that have not been previously set to OFF or 0, **and/or** there are I/O blocks with unassigned I/O addresses, the Process Control Designer will notify you of the situation and ask if you want to see a list of unconnected inputs and/or a list of unconfigured I/O blocks.
6. Click "Yes" to view the summary of unconnected inputs or unconfigured I/O blocks.
7. Click "Log File" to save the list to a text file, if desired.

Note that if you convert a safety-enabled configuration to a non-safety configuration, then all the safety worksheets in the configuration will be converted to process worksheets.
Conversely, if you convert a non-safety configuration to a safety-enabled configuration, then a blank safety worksheet will be added to the configuration.

Creating Other File Types

See sections for details.

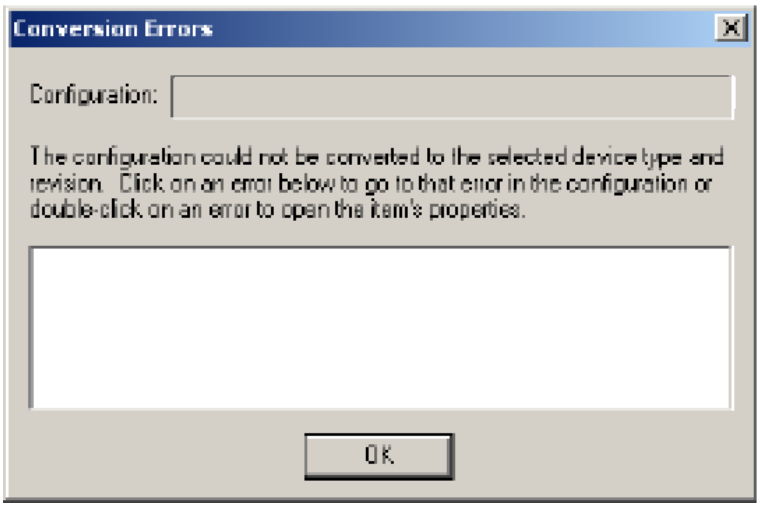
Create/Edit Recipe (Variables)
Create/Edit Setpoint Profile
Create/Edit Setpoint Schedule
Create/Edit Sequence
Create/Edit Data Storage Settings
Back up Controller Information

Converting ControlEdge HC900 Configurations

You cannot download a configuration saved as one ControlEdge HC900 controller model to a controller of a different model. You must first convert the configuration before doing a download.

Conversion Procedure

1. With the configuration file open, select “SAVE AS” from the “FILE” menu. The “Save As” dialog box will open.
2. From the drop-down menu in the “Save as Type” field, select the type of Controller configuration that you want to convert **TO**. (See table below.)
3. Select “SAVE”.
4. If there is a problem with the conversion from C50 to C30, the “Conversion Error” dialog box will appear indicating what the error is. For example:
   Too many Loop Blocks,
   Greater than 400 User Function Blocks,
   Expansion Rack used in Configuration.



5. If there is no problem, the conversion will proceed.
6. If there **are no** unconnected inputs that need to be set to OFF or 0, the data is saved automatically.
7. If there **are** unconnected inputs that have not been previously set to OFF or 0, the application will notify you that there are unconnected inputs and ask if you want to see a list of unconnected inputs.
8. Click “Yes” to view the summary of unconnected inputs.
9. Click “Log File” to save the list to a text file, if desired.

Note: Configuration for model revisions can only be saved as models of same revision or newer revision. Configuration fails cannot be saved as older configuration revisions.

Start with an “original configuration” and do a File, Save As, and save the configuration to the newer revision (or different controller type).

The new configuration can only be downloaded to a controller of the same type.

* Configuration revision remains the same or is upgraded to a later revision

Uploading a File from the Controller

Introduction

Upload transfers a file **FROM** the controller **TO** the PC. Uploadable files are configurations, recipes, and data storage.

The Controller may be in ANY mode.

No configuration file is required to be opened prior to the Upload Request.

Uploading Configuration

1. From the "File Menu" select Upload Configuration, or click on the Upload icon on the Main Toolbar ,or click on the Upload icon on the Utilities Worksheet Toolbar then select "Upload Configuration".
2. The Upload File dialog box will appear. A temporary file name will be place in the "File Name" box.
3. Under "Current CommLink Settings", select the port and address to communicate to a controller. Reference "Utilities Worksheet in the appropriate fields. " for configuring the PC Ports.
4. Press "START". The dialog box will show "Percent Complete".
5. The Uploaded File will appear with an automatic file name containing the controller name, its local name (or alias), and the network it is on.
6. From the "File" menu, select Save or Save As and enter a file name and path in the appropriate fields.

   Note: If Upload fails due to file corruption, controller must be Cold-Started to reload operating RAM.

Uploading Recipe or Data Storage

1. From the "File Menu" select Upload... The Upload File dialog box will appear. A temporary file name will be place in the "File Name" box.
2. Under “Current” CommLink Settings”, select the port and address to communicate to a controller. Reference "Utilities WorksheetUtilities_Worksheet_Overview" for configuring the PC Ports.
3. Press "START".
4. Select a file type to upload. If uploading a recipe you’ll be asked to choose which recipe in the controller’s memory to upload.
5. The dialog box will show "Percent Complete". When the upload is complete, the Uploaded File will appear (with a temporary file name) in the editor for that file type.
6. From the "File" menu, select Save or Save As and enter a file name and path in the appropriate fields.

Downloading a File to the Controller

Introduction

Once a control strategy—configuration file—is opened, Configuration Download transfers a configuration **FROM** the PC **TO** the controller.

The Controller may be in either RUN or PROGRAM mode (not Run-Locked)

ATTENTION: **You cannot download a configuration saved as one ControlEdge HC900 controller model to a controller of a different model. You must first convert the configuration before doing a download. See "Converting ControlEdge HC900 configurations ".**

Procedure

1. From the File Menu select "Open" or Upload a file***** from the controller.

   IMPORTANT: If you intend to make a set of changes to a running configuration and wish to preserve the context of the current configuration parameters, you should perform an upload from the controller first to assure that you have the current configuration, make the incremental changes, save the modified file, and then download. This is highly recommended to avoid configuration conflicts.

2. Select the file (.cde) that is to be downloaded.
3. The selected function block diagram will appear in the Active View window. **Only the active file window can be downloaded.**
4. At this point you can make incremental changes to the file. (See "Downloading in the RUN mode" first)'
5. From the "File Menu" select **Download** or

   click on the **Download icon** on the Main Toolbar or

   click on the **Download icon** on the *Utilities Worksheet* Toolbar then select "Download Configuration".
6. The "Download File" dialog box will appear. Check the Port and Address information for correctness.
7. Press "START" to download the configuration to the configuration buffer.
   The ***download will begin*** if the controller is in: PROGRAM mode or RUN mode.
   The ***download will be rejected*** if the controller is in: RUN/LOCKED mode or OFFLINE mode.
   The dialog box will show "Percent Complete".
8. After the database tables have been transferred to a configuration buffer, select one of the following commands to transfer from the buffer to the controller: Download of a safety-enabled configuration will not be allowed if there is a mismatch of I/O channel information or in case of duplicate I/O information.

HOT START - the controller will use the new or updated configuration in RUN Mode.

WARNING

During Hot-Start, TPSC Outputs turn Off. After Hot-Start complete, TPSC Output resumes to original position.

During a Hot Start:

- Controller memory will not be re-initialized
- Outputs will be held at their current value.
- Controller will stay in RUN mode

There are two possible actions with a Hot Start.

- If the Hot Start will be completed within approximately 3 controller scan cycles, then the Hot Start will proceed automatically.

- If the Hot Start requires longer than 3 controller scan cycles, a dialog box displays a) the estimated duration of the Hot Start and b) options to initiate or cancel the Hot Start.

COLD START - the controller will transition through normal PROGRAM-TO-RUN mode transition

- Controller memory will be re-initialized
- Outputs will be turned off during re-start
- Controller will return to RUN mode

ABORT - the controller will disregard the new configuration and continue to use the previous configuration.

9. The dialog box status line will state "Mode Change in Progress" then "Download Successful" when completed.

Downloading in Run Mode

WARNING

While we provide application assistance personally, through our literature and the Honeywell web site, it is up to the customer to determine the suitability of the configuration in the application and the potential dangers of downloading a configuration while running.

Downloading in RUN Mode has the potential to create a hazardous situation. Changes to the configuration result in a short suspension of the control program followed by an immediate execution of the new configuration. It is the user's responsibility to ensure that configuration changes will not result in a hazardous situation.

It is the user's responsibility to assess this risk for his process. Failure to comply with these instructions could result in death or serious injury to people and/or property damage.

Downloading in Run Mode (Hot Start) is a means to make configuration changes and download them to the controller without taking the process off-line.

It is intended for **incremental changes to a running configuration**, such as:

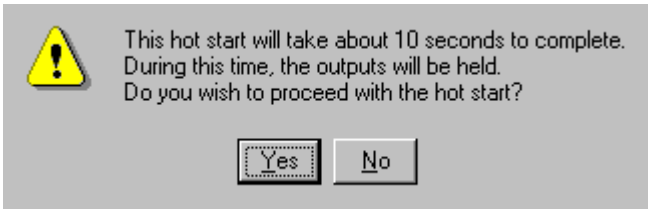
Adding and Deleting Blocks
Modifying block configuration parameters
Adding/changing soft-wires, signals, variables
Adding OI displays, Data Storage
Adding Recipes, SP Profiles, SP Schedules, or Sequencers.
Adding, deleting, or modifying I/O (DI, DO, AI, AO).

IMPORTANT: If you intend to make a set of changes to a running configuration and wish to preserve the context of the current configuration parameters you should perform an upload from the controller first to assure that you have the current configuration, make the incremental changes, and then download.

Cautions

Configuration Change Transfer

Once the HOT START button is depressed, the configuration will be updated with the new changes. Note: During the time period required to perform the Hot Start, the controller will suspend the execution of its function blocks and hold its outputs at their current value. If you select Hot Start and the Hot Start will take longer than approximately three controller scan cycles, a popup window appears:



If this time period is acceptable, click Yes to begin the Hot Start. If this time period is not acceptable, press No.

Configuration Parameters

All Configuration Parameters are set to the value or state in the .cde file following a download. For example: *Tuning constants could be over written by a Download while in Run Mode*. The tuning constants are considered **part of the configuration**. If you DO NOT first upload the present configuration, you will overwrite the active parameters with the values in the configuration that are downloaded. The new download is an all or nothing proposition.

Function Block Changes

If a function block is ***deleted***, Designer does not re-use the block number.

If a function block is ***added***, Designer uses the highest current block number + 1.

Restrictions:
When a configuration uses the last block number (500 for C30, 2100 for C50, 5100 for C70/C70R/C75) and you try to add another block, Designer will prompt you to "de-fragment" the table and recover previously deleted blocks. ***There can be NO Hot Start this case.***

Data Storage Schedule (Legacy 559/1042 OI only)

Assuming changes have NOT been made to an OI data Storage Schedule, the data storage will be interrupted only as long as it takes to transfer the configuration changes.

Downloading Firmware

Background

Code download provides a mechanism to upgrade the firmware in your ControlEdge HC900 Controller to a newer version without the need to replace the CPU/IO card. This can be useful if you wish to upgrade your controller/IO to take advantage of new features and functions as they are introduced, or in the event that a software bug requires field repair. The HC Designer upgrade files can be downloaded from website https://process.honeywell.com/us/en/support/product-documents-downloads.

Getting Started

Before you begin the download there are a few things you need to be aware of.

- Code Download can take a couple of minutes using Ethernet. Therefore, it is highly recommended that you do not start the code download procedure at a time when the likelihood of power failure is increased, such as during thunderstorms.
- Disable Wi-Fi on your PC.
- The code download function is only available through the ControlEdge HC900 Control Designer program connected to the controller via the CONFIGURATION port or Ethernet port on the ControlEdge HC900. Use the Utilities Worksheet to do the download.
- For controllers (< 6.5X version), the controller will not allow the firmware download to begin if there is a low battery diagnostic for both batteries and requires at least one good to proceed.
- Code download will destroy the configuration database in the controller. Therefore, before code download is started, either upload the configuration file via the operator interface and save on floppy disk or other storage media, or upload and save to your PC via the software's Utilities Worksheet.

Firmware Files

The firmware files for the various CPU, Scanner and IO versions are placed in the C:\Program Files (x86)\HC900 Firmware directory when HC Designer is installed or upgraded. It is strongly recommended both controller and scanners be upgraded together.

Controller Mode

Before starting the Firmware Download, switch the controller to "Program Locked" mode. Program Locked offers more security by requiring a key to change the mode switch position. See set controller mode.

Download Procedure

Step	Action
1	Backup the controller configuration either by uploading to: • Display: (559/1042) floppy disk, (900CS) CF compact flash, (900CR) SD • HC Designer
2	Make sure the controller's mode switch is in "Program" (locked) or "Run/Prog" position. If the switch is in "Run/Prog" position, go to set controller mode display and change mode to Program (locked).
3	In Designer select the Utilities Worksheet tab.

Controller Module	
4	From the "Controller Utilities Functions" select "Download to Controller". On the sub-menu, select " Firmware", then "**Controller Module**".
5	Use the "Look in:" drop down list in the "Open" dialog box to select the drive and folder you placed the files in.
6	Select and open the file "***Version*.CPU**" displayed in the file list box.
7	Select the "Port" and "Address" on the "Download File" dialog box.
8	Click on the "Start" button in the "Download File" dialog box. The download will start, and progress is displayed. The download itself will take a few minutes, depending on the Port type and connection.
9	A "Download Succeeded" status will be displayed in the "Download File" dialog box. If a failure is detected, an error message will appear in the Status section of the "Download File" dialog box. See "Error Messages" for a list of possible messages and resolutions. Also see Failure Modes.
Scanner Module	
10	From the "Controller Utilities Functions" select "Download to Controller". On the sub-menu, select " Firmware", then "**Scanner Module**".
11	Use the "Look in:" drop down list in the "Open" dialog box to select the drive and folder you placed the files in.
12	Select and open the file "***Version*.SCN**" displayed in the file list box.
13	Select the "Port" and "Address" on the "Download File" dialog box.
14	Click on the "Start" button in the "Download File" dialog box. The download will start, and progress is displayed. The download itself will take a few minutes, depending on the Port type and connection.
15	A "Download Succeeded" status will be displayed in the "Download File" dialog box. If a failure is detected, an error message will appear in the Status section of the "Download File" dialog box. See "Error Messages" for a list of possible messages and resolutions. Also see Failure Modes.

16	Restore the configuration from the backup copy you previously made.
IO Module	
17	From the "Controller Utilities Functions" select "Download to Controller". On the sub-menu, select "Firmware", then "**Io Module**".
18	Use the "Look in:" drop down list in the "Open" dialog box to select the drive and folder you placed the files in.
19	Select and open the file "***Version*.bin**" displayed in the file list box.
20	Select the "Port" and "Address" on the "Download File" dialog box.
21	Click on the "Start" button in the "Download File" dialog box. The download will start, and progress is displayed. The download itself will take a few minutes, depending on the Port type and connection.
22	A "Download Succeeded" status will be displayed in the "Download File" dialog box. If a failure is detected, an error message will appear in the Status section of the "Download File" dialog box. See "Error Messages" for a list of possible messages and resolutions. Also see Failure Modes.

Failure Modes

If there is a download failure indication on the "Download File" dialog box:

- DO NOT cycle the controller power and DO NOT remove the battery.
- Check the physical connections.
- Check for power failures.
- Restart the download from the beginning.

Download Firmware Error Messages

This is a list of possible error messages that could be displayed as the result of a Download Firmware failure:

Error Message	What to do
Instrument must be in PROGRAM LOCK mode to perform this operation	Put controller in program lock mode before starting code download.
Instrument's battery missing or dead	Replace controller battery before starting code download.
Missing loader binary file	Could not open the loader file. Make sure the “loader.s19” file is in the same directory as the firmware file to be downloaded.
Could not open firmware update file	Make sure the firmware file is present in the directory selected.
Programming is not required, the downloaded version matches the code in the controller	The version in the controller matches the version that was downloaded.
The downloaded file is corrupted	The firmware file was bad. Replace the firmware file
Failed to complete file transfer	Could be caused by communication loss or controller power failure. Restart code download again.
Controller is not responding, code download failed	Could be caused by communication loss or controller power failure. Restart code download again.
Failed to put instrument into loader	Could be caused by communication loss or controller power failure.

Error Message	What to do
transfer mode	Restart code download again.
Failed to get controller status	Could be caused by communication loss or controller power failure. Restart code download again.
Unexpected controller mode. Code download will abort. The controller will now reset	Could be caused by communication loss or controller power failure. Restart code download again.
Failed to get expansion rack status	Could be caused by communication loss or controller power failure. Restart code download again.
FLASH erase failure. Replace the controller card	The controller has a hardware problem. Replace the controller card.
FLASH programming failure. Replace the controller card	The controller has a hardware problem. Replace the controller card.
FLASH memory failure. Replace the Controller card	The controller has a hardware problem. Replace the controller card.

An incomplete code download has been detected. Do not remove controller power! Removing controller power could result in damage to the scanner card(s)	A previous code download was aborted or failed. Code download will proceed using the selected file.
An incomplete code download has been detected. Code download will proceed using the selected file	A previous code download was aborted or failed. Code download will proceed using the selected file.
No scanner racks detected	Most likely cause is no expansion racks connected to the main controller. It can also be caused by a failed scanner card. If a scanner is properly connected to the controller and this message is displayed, replace the scanner card.
“Rack 1: SUCCESS, Rack 2: FAILED"	Completion report for scanner code download. There should be a SUCCESS status for each card connected to the main controller rack. A FAILED status could be caused by a communications problem between the main controller rack and the scanner racks or by a failed scanner card. Restart code download again.
Failed to get UIO Module status	Could be caused by communication loss or controller power failure. Restart IO code download again.
Failed to put instrument into IO mode	Could be caused by communication loss or controller power failure. Restart IO code download again.
Programming is not required, the downloaded version matches the code in the IO Module	The version in the IO Module matches the version that was downloaded.
IO Module is not responding, IO download failed	Could be caused by communication loss or controller power failure. Restart IO code download again.
“R1:M1: SUCCESS, …….R1:M12 : FAIL ……R12:M12: SUCCESS”	Completion report for IO code download. There should be a SUCCESS status for each UIO Module connected to the controller. A FAILED status could be caused by a communications problem between the controller and UIO Modules or by a failed IO card. Restart IO code download again.

File Properties

Let you fill in the title and author of the file as well as view the file statistics (Number of Blocks, Inputs, and other items).

From the Designer Window File menu, select “Properties”. Or in the File Browser Window right-click on an open configuration.

The “File Properties” dialog box will appear.

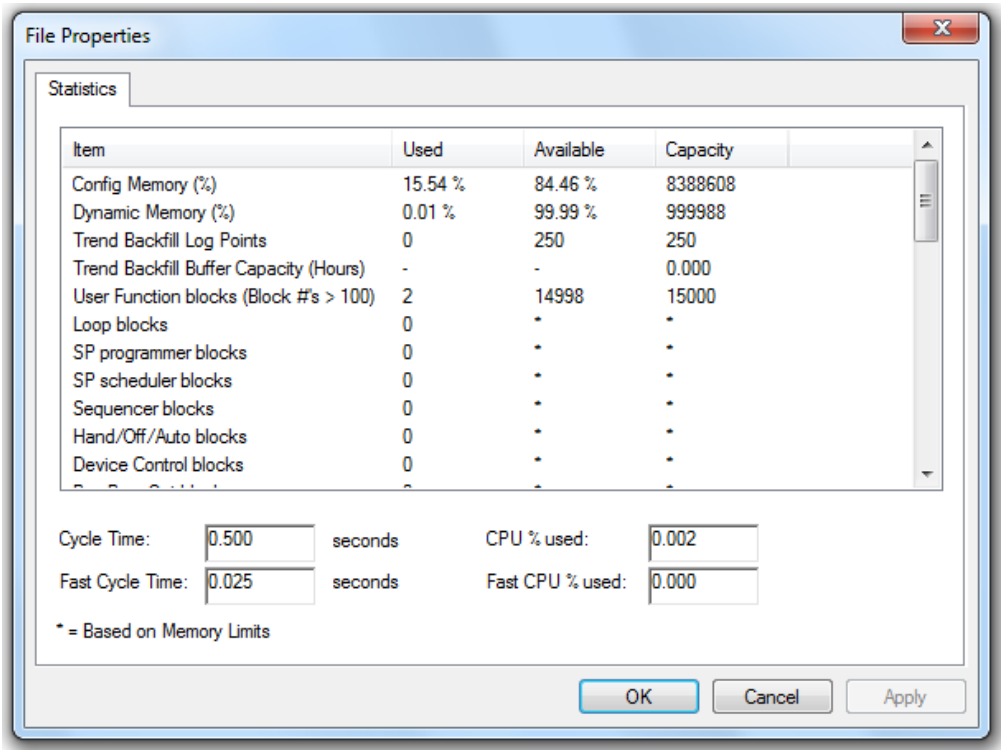
Select a tab:

General

Enter Title and Author.

Read only: Path and file name, Date created and Last Modified, Schema #, Device information (CPU type, Revision number)

Statistics



Shows usages and capacities for all items in the configuration. Asterisk * indicates there is no specific limit for this item, its limit is determined by available memory.

Cycle Time and Fast Cycle Time increase (slow down) as the following increase: CPU % Used, Fast CPU % Used, Dynamic Memory, Config Memory. Also, extensive use of Free Form Logic blocks (as opposed to equivalent gate logic) can substantially increase Fast Cycle Time.

Be aware that deleted function blocks consume memory; this memory can be made available by defragmenting.

"Read Protection" - Indicates current protection. If file is unprotected, click on "Protect File" to allow new password entry or change current password.

"Worksheet Protection" - Indicates current protection. If worksheet is unprotected, click on "Protect" to allow new password entry or change current password. Also, you can change or remove worksheet protection.

How to Add Worksheet Protection

Introduction

The ControlEdge HC900 Control Designer provides an optional configuration Worksheet protection. New files default to "No Protection". Worksheets can be protected on individual basis where all protected worksheets use the same password. A user has limited access to protected worksheets.

Protected Worksheet Type	View Worksheet?	Edit Worksheet?
Controller	YES	NO
Display	YES	NO
Function Blocks	NO	NO
Modbus Map	YES	NO

Protected Worksheets:

- can be **"unlocked"**. Protection is disabled, but not removed from the file. If you save the file, the worksheet protection will be "locked" when the file is reopened.
- can have their **passwords changed**. In order to change a password, you will need to know the current password.
- Can have their **protection "removed"**. Removing the protection is permanent. If you save the file, the worksheet will not be protected when the file is reopened.

Protection Symbols

There are three symbols that could appear on the "Worksheet Protection" tab that indicate the level of protection for the file:

= No protection is in place, worksheets are 'Unlocked"

= Protection exists, and the worksheets are "Unlocked".

= Protection exists, and the worksheets are "Locked".

Protecting a Worksheet When There is No Protection

Step	Action
1	From the "File" menu, select "Properties", then select the "Worksheet Protection " tab.
2	Click on the "Change Protection" button.
3	Click on the box next to the worksheet names you want to protect, then select "DONE" button.
4	Click on the "Lock" button to setup a password.
5	Enter a password for the file in the "New Password" field (up to 14 characters). Important note: *Password shall not have Chinese characters*
6	Re-enter the password in the "Confirm New Password" field.
7	Click "OK".
8	In Version 6.2 and earlier, click “Disable Master Password” if you wish to prevent others from overiding password protection by getting a master password from Honeywell. **IMPORTANT NOTE:** If you forget your password after Disable Master Password has been selected you will not be able to view any protected worksheets.
9	In Version 6.3 and greater "Disable Master Password" and "Forgot Password" options are not available. IMPORTANT NOTE: If you forget your password after password has been set you will not be able to view any protected worksheets

To Change a Password

Step	Action
1	From the "File" menu, select "Properties", then select the "Worksheet Protection " tab.
2	Click on the "Change Password" button.
3	Enter the current password in the appropriate field.
4	Enter a New Password in the appropriate field. Important note: *Password shall not have Chinese characters*
5	Confirm the new password in the appropriate field.
6	Click "OK".

To Temporarily Unlock a Worksheet

Step	Action
1	From the "File" menu, select "Properties", then select the "Worksheet Protection " tab.
2	Click on the "Unlock" button.
3	Enter the current password in the appropriate field.
4	Click "OK", the worksheets are unprotected **NOTE:** *the "Controller", "Display", and "Function Block" worksheets also have a toolbar button to unlock worksheets.*

To Permanently Remove Worksheet Protection

Step	Action
1	From the "File" menu, select "Properties", then select the "Worksheet Protection " tab.
2	Click on the "Remove Protection" button.
3	Enter the current password in the appropriate field.
4	Click "OK", the worksheets are unprotected.

Protecting a Worksheet When Worksheets Protection is Active

Step	Action
1	From the "File" menu, select "Properties", then select the "Worksheet Protection " tab.
2	"Unlock" the worksheet.
3	Change protection.
4	Select worksheet names, then "DONE".
5	Select "LOCK"

File Read Protection

Protected files are password protected. You will be prompted for a password to open them.

Introduction

The ControlEdge HC900 Control Designer provides an optional configuration File Read protection. All the files default to “No Protection”. Through the Properties selection on the FILE menu, you can enter a password to read protect each file. You can change the password and also remove Write protection using the same password.

Use this security feature to prevent other users from viewing your configuration. Once a file is protected and saved (or downloaded to a controller), it cannot be opened (or uploaded) unless you know the password.

Adding Read protection to a file

Step	Action
1	From the “File” menu, select “Properties”, then select the "Read Protection " tab.
2	Click on the "Protect File" button.
3	Enter a password for the file in the “New Password” field (up to 14 characters).
4	Important note: *Password shall not have Chinese characters*
5	Re-enter the password in the “Confirm New Password” field. Click “OK”.

Important Note: In version 6.3 and greater, the "Forgot Password" option is not available. If you forget your password after it has been set to “read protect” the file you will not be able to open it.

To Change a Password

Step	Action
1	Click on the "Change Password" button.
2	Enter the current password in the appropriate field.
3	Enter a New Password in the appropriate field.
4	Important note: *Password shall not have Chinese characters*
5	Confirm the new password in the appropriate field. Click “OK”.

To Unprotect a File

Step	Action
1	Click on the "Unprotect File" button.
2	Enter the current password in the appropriate field.
3	Click "OK", the file is unprotected

Write Protect a File

Introduction

Optional configuration File Write protection is provided. This feature makes use of the disk general file "Read Only" attribute. All the files default to "No Protection". When set to "Read Only", the file is Write Protected, which means it cannot be over written or deleted.

Select "Write Protect File" from the FILE menu.

Use the Check Box on the dialog box that appears to turn the attribute On (selected) or Off (deselected).

6. PC Comm Ports and Connections

How to Manage PC Comm Ports and Connections

The middle and lower portions of the Utilities Worksheet contain the PC Comm Ports and Connections functions.

Setting up your PC Comm Ports consists of the following functions:

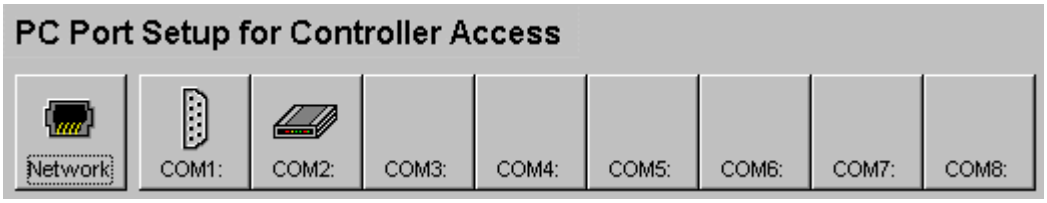
- PC Network Port Setup for Controller Access
- PC Serial Comm Port Setup
- PC to Controller Connection Settings
- Remote Loopback test
- Remote Access
- Communications Statistics

Attention:

- Following Address Ranges are not permitted by Internet Protocol Rules:
  - 0.x.x.x
  - 127.x.x.x
  - 128.0.x.x
  - 191.255.x.x
  - 192.0.0.x
  - 223.255.255.x
  - 224.x.x.x - 255.x.x.x
- When making IP Address changes, cannot have Existing and New Addresses within same 255.255.255.0 Subnet
- For best performance, Subnet must be: 255.255.255.0

PC Network Port Set Up For Controller Access

The software lets you setup a PC Network Port and up to 8 PC Serial/USB Comm ports for interface to a specific controller (serially via the controller's RS-232 (legacy) or RS485 configuration port or over a network via the controller's Ethernet port, accessed by its IP address). You will need a Network Interface Card (NIC) in your PC for network connection. If there is a Modem on your PC, a symbol will appear on one of the Serial comm ports buttons.



Setting Up a Network Port

1. Click on the Network Port setup button	

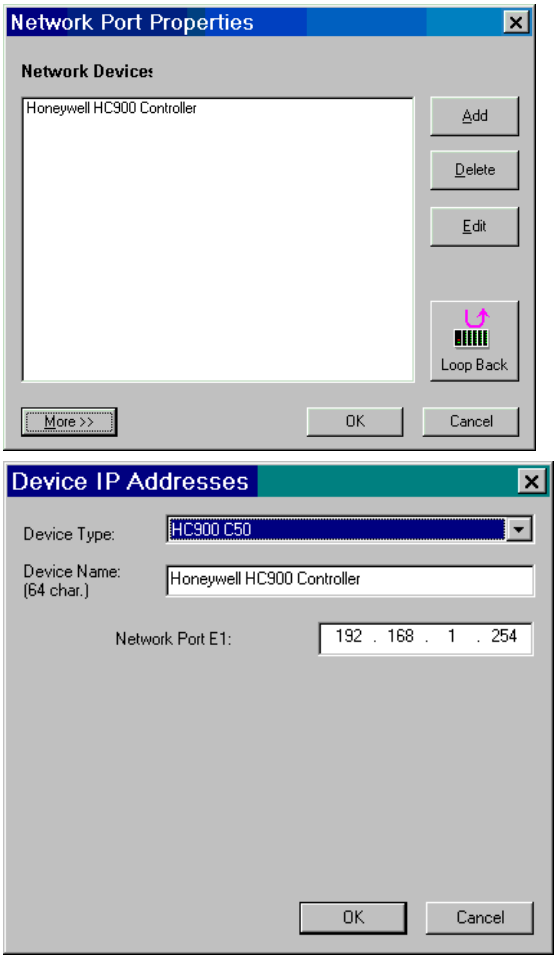
2. The Network Port Dialog Box opens

To ADD a Network Port:
Click on ADD and enter the properties in the Device IP Address fields.

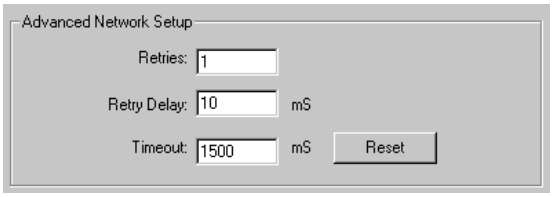
To EDIT a Network Port:
Click a device, click on EDIT and enter the properties in the Device IP Address fields.

To Delete a Network address:
Click on a device in the Network address list, then click Delete button. The address will be deleted.

3. To do a Loopback test for a specific address click on the Loopback button.



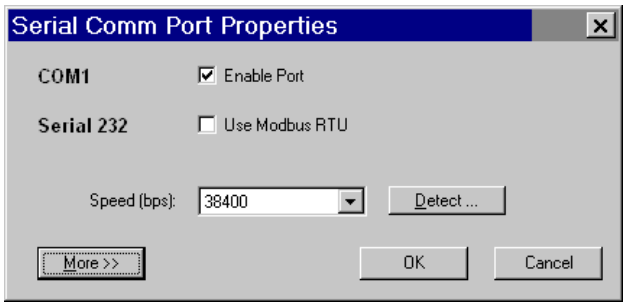
4. For **Advanced Network Setup**, click on the MORE>> button at the bottom of the "Network Port Properties" dialog box.
Number of Retries before Abort - Enter a decimal value
Retry Delay - Enter a value in milliseconds
Timeout - Enter a value in milliseconds
Note: It is not recommended that you set the values lower than those shown in the dialog box, since it may cause some communications operations to fail.
Press **Reset** button to reset these fields to their default values

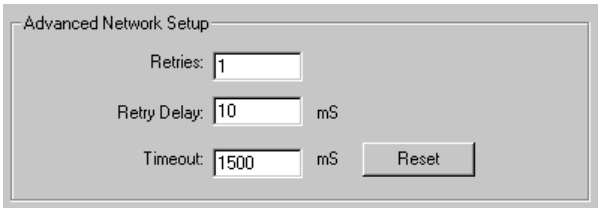


PC Serial Com Port Setup

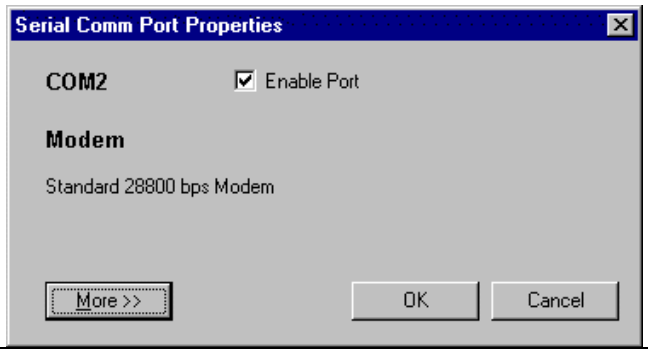
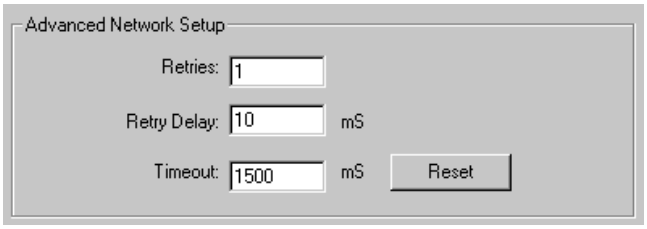
The software lets you setup a Network Port and up to 8 Serial Comm ports. If there is a Modem on your PC, a symbol will appear on one of the Serial Comm Ports buttons. See Setting up a Serial Com Port with a Modem.

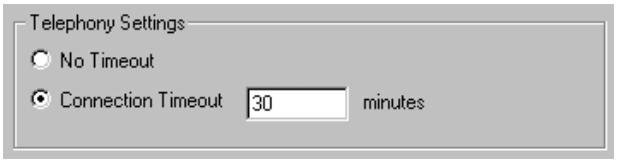
Setting Up a Serial Comm Port

1. Click on the Serial Comm Port setup button. When there is no port Icon above the comm port name, the port is currently disabled. With newer PCs a USB to RS232 or USB to RS485 adapter may be used.	
2. The "Serial Comm Port Properties" Dialog Box will Open Click the 'Enable Port" box Manually select a Baud Rate from the "Speed" drop-down menu, or if a controller is currently connected to the ports, press the "Detect" button to detect the controller's RS232 /RS485 baud rate. Click OK. Note: The Legacy controller's serial port can be set for either RS232 or RS485 operation (by means of DIP switches on the CPU card). Version 6.0 and greater CPUs support only an RS485 serial connection. If the Detect process runs through all the baud rates rapidly without appearing to actually check each baud rate, there may be a mismatch between the PC's serial port type and the controller's serial port type. If this behavior occurs, make sure that the DIP switches on the controller's CPU card are set correctly. The legacy controller factory settings are RS232 for Serial Port S1 and RS485 for Serial Port S2.	 Note: The serial comm ports are configured to default to Honeywell ELN protocol, If a user configures a serial port to use Modbus RTU (device) protocol, the Serial 232 box may be checked for HC Designer to communicate via this protocol.
3. The Serial CommPort Button will now show an icon indicating that the port has been set up.	

4. For **Advanced Network Setup**, click on the MORE>> button at the bottom of the "Serial Comm Port Properties" dialog box. *Number of Retries before Abort* - Enter a decimal value *Retry Delay* - Enter a value in milliseconds *Timeout* - Enter a value in milliseconds *Note: It is not recommended that you set the values lower than those shown in the dialog box, since it may cause some communications operations to fail.* Press **Reset** button to reset these fields to their default values.	

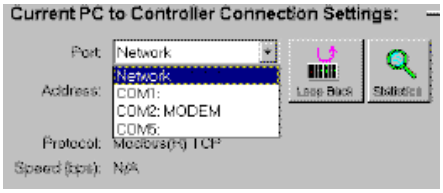
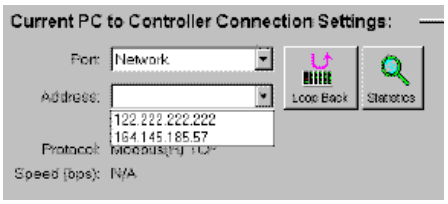
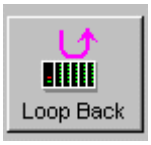
Setting Up a Serial Comm Port with a Modem

1. Modems must be "Installed" in MS Windows™.	
2. Click on the Serial Comm Port Setup button.	
3. The "Serial Comm Port Properties" Dialog Box opens Click the 'Enable Port" box There is NO Baud selection because the speed is determined by the controller's modem. Click OK.	
4. For **Advanced Network Setup**, click on the MORE>> button at the bottom of the "Serial Comm Port Properties" dialog box. *Number of Retries before Abort* - Enter a decimal value *Retry Delay* - Enter a value in milliseconds *Timeout* - Enter a value in milliseconds *Note: It is not recommended that you set the values lower than those shown in the dialog box, since it may cause some communications operations to fail.* Press **Reset** button to reset these fields to their default values.	

5. For **Telephony Settings**, click on the MORE>> button at the bottom of the "Serial Comm Port Properties" dialog box. **Click on a radio button to select one of the following two options:** *No Timeout* - No timeout is performed and the application will stay connected until you Hang Up *Connection Timeout* - Enter in the active field (in minutes) how long the application will leave the line open before hanging up automatically. The Modem will hang up if there is no communications activity for this amount of time.	

PC to Controller Connection Settings

After setting up your PC Network and PC Serial Comm Ports:

Select a Port from the drop-down menu	
If you selected "Network" Select the Address of the controller from the drop-down menu.	
You can run a loopback test	
You can view and reset the communications statistics	

Remote Loopback Test

Remote Loopback tests the connection between the PC and the Controller.

Running the test

- Click on the Loopback icon on the Utilities Worksheet Window. . The "Remote Loopback Test" dialog box will appear.
- Click "SEND". The Status line will read:
  Instrument Responded Correctly, or
  Instrument did not Respond - check the connections
- Click "Close".

Remote Access

For Remote Controller Access via dial-up modem an external modem is required at the controller and is connected to the standard RS 232 configuration port.

If a modem is already installed on the PC the Designer will notify you that it exists.

Remote Access functions include on-line monitoring Live Monitor - Overview, Uploading and Downloading Configurations.

Procedure

1. Click on the Utilities tab.
2. Under PC Port Setup, click on a Comm Port.

3. The Serial Comm Port Properties dialog box opens. Click on the "Enable Port" box.
4. From the "Port" drop-down menu, select "COMx:MODEM".

will appear next to the Statistics button.
5. Click on this icon, and then the **Provide the Modem number to call** dialog box appears.

To **Hang Up** a call, select **"Hangup Modem"** from the File Menu in the Main Menu.

A message will ask you to confirm that you want to hang up.

Provide the Modem Number to Call

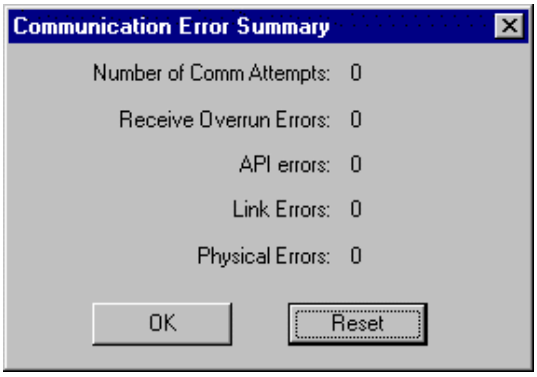
Provide the required Modem number in the Modem Number text field, and then click "Dial Now" to proceed further with the call.

To Hang Up a call

Select “Hangup Modem” from the File Menu in the Main Menu. A message will ask you to confirm that you want to hang up.

Communications Statistics

The "Statistics" button on the "Current PC to Controller Connections Settings" will launch the "Communications Error Summary" dialog box. The summary statistics are shown below:



See the table below for corrective action for each communication error.
Click on "Reset" to change the statistics to "0".

Error	Reason
Number of Comm Attempts	Count of messages sent down to a Controller
Receive Overrun Errors	A count of Controller response messages that were longer than expected. Make sure you have the latest version of HC Designer and that it is compatible with the Controller version. Contact Technical Support if the problem continues.
API Errors	The number of Application Errors are typically errors reported by the Controller. Common reasons for this error: Instrument responded to the wrong message. Check that there isn't more than one device with the same IP or Modbus address trying to communicate with the Controller. Controller communication port is in use by other device(s). Instrument responded with an error code. Take note of any error message dialog boxes that may popup while communicating with the Controller (e.g. While Monitoring). Attempt any corrective action based on the reported errors. Contact Technical Support if the problem continues.
Link Errors	Count of messages that could not be interpreted by HC Designer. Typically these occur when the response message contains garbled data. Check physical connections between the Controller and the PC. If you are using a modem or a serial cable, this error may be the result of "line noise".
Physical Errors	Count of hardware type errors. These typically occur when the Controller doesn't respond. Check cable and other hardware connections. If using a modem or a serial cable, verify the cable connections and baud rates of all pieces.

7. Worksheets Overview

What is a Worksheet?

A Worksheet is a logical partition of a configuration file. Worksheets can be further categorized by function into 6 main categories. Each category is assigned a tab in the worksheet category tab control that makes up the main Worksheet Window of a configuration. There are restrictions on the number of individual worksheets that can exist in a given category and not all categories are available to all controller types and revisions of controller firmware. Below are the different worksheet categories:

Controller Worksheet	• Displays the configuration of I/O modules • 1 per configuration
Operator Panel Worksheet (Also referred to as Display Worksheets)	• Display and configure Operator Interface displays • 1 per configuration • Not available in revision 6.0 and above
Function Block Diagram Worksheets (This category is sub-divided into)	• Display and configure control logic
Process Worksheets	• 20 per configuration (for C30, C30S, C50, C50S) • 160 per configuration (for C70, C75) • 80 per configuration (for C70S, C75S)
Safety Worksheets	• 20 per configuration (for C30S, C50S) • 80 per configuration (for C70S, C75S) • Only available for SIL-compliant controller types • Only available in revision 6.0 and above
Modbus Map Worksheet	• Only available in revision 4.0 and higher configurations using a Custom Modbus Address Map • 1 per configuration
Utilities Worksheet	• Provides access to a variety of maintenance functions for the controller • 1 per configuration

Each Worksheet may have full or restricted access (Worksheet Protection).

Worksheet Category Tabs

A configuration is organized into categories shown as tabs at the bottom of the Main window:

Controller

Display

Function Blocks / Process/ Safety

Modbus Map (Rev. 4.0 configurations and higher with custom Modbus map)

An additional tab, Utilities, is provides access to a variety of useful functions that interact with the controller.

8. Controller Worksheet

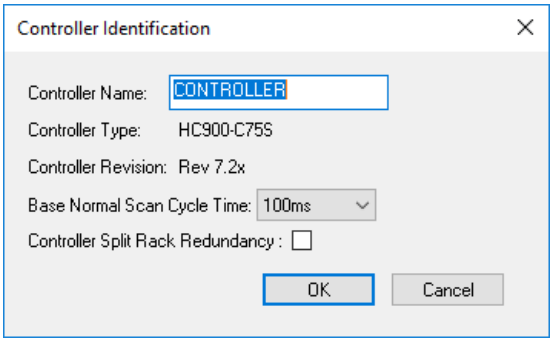
Controller Worksheet Overview

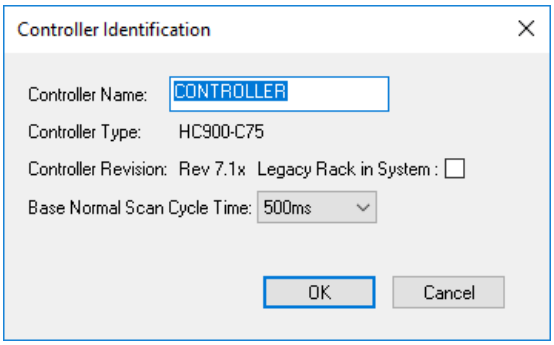
There is one worksheet for the configuration. It displays the I/O in all configured racks.

Toolbar

The Controller Worksheet has a Toolbar to launch dialog boxes to configure:

- **Print Worksheet**- Prints the I/O Summary as viewed on the worksheet.
- **Controller Identification**





  - Controller Name - Enter a controller name. It will be displayed on the Operator Interface used for Peer Communications (16 characters).
    Important note: Controller name shall not have Chinese characters
  - Controller Type - (Read Only)
  - Controller Revision - (Read Only)
  - Legacy Rack in System - Check the box when the system is having legacy rack (<= 4.4 version)
  - Base Normal Scan Cycle Time - Choose 100ms / 500ms
  - Controller Split Rack Redundancy - Check the box if the system is using split rack redundancy for controller.
- **Controller E-Mail Notification**
- **Unlock Worksheets**

I/O Summary

A summary of each addressed I/O point (as well as unassigned I/O points) in the configuration indicates:

- Rack/Module/Channel
- Block ID - a hot link when clicked finds the I/O block on the Function Block Diagram
- Engineering Units and AI Input range
- Signal Tag of primary output pin (if present) a hot link when clicked finds the signal tag on the Function Block Diagram
- Signal Descriptor of primary output pin (if present)
- Channel Properties: Click the required I/O function block ID on the list. The respective Input/Output properties dialog box appears in order to edit the function block properties.

Controller Configuration Toolbar

Click on ICON to open a dialog box.

ICON	Function	Dialog Box Comments
	Print Worksheet	Click to open the standard ***Print*** dialog box. Fill in appropriate fields Printed Output is the I/O Summary as viewed on the worksheet. To display each page, as it will look when printed, click Print Report Preview on the File menu.
	Controller Identification	Click to open the ***Controller Identification*** dialog box. Type in a name for your controller configuration. (same as Worksheet name) Also indicates controller type and revision. (read only) Base Normal Scan Cycle Time - Choose 100ms / 500ms Controller Split Rack Redundancy - Check the box if the system is using split rack redundancy for controller.
	E-Mail Notification	Click to open the ***E-Mail Notification*** dialog box. Two Tabs on Dialog Box: ***General -*** FROM name displayed for convenience (read only) and SUBJECT information - 31 character configurable text. ***To List -*** enter up to 3 configurable E-Mail addresses. For each Email address check an Alarm/Event priority ***See*** "E-Mail Notification"
	Unlock Worksheets	Click to open the "Unlock Worksheets" dialog box. Enter a password and click "Unlock" to unlock all worksheets.

E-Mail Notification

Opens the **E-Mail Notification** dialog box. It lets you configure up to three E-Mail addresses per controller configuration for Alarm and Event notification.

There are two tabs on the dialog Box.

General Tab

FROM The ***Controller name*** is configured by the builder of the Configuration file [Read Only]

SUBJECT Enter an Event Subject (up to 31 characters)
Enter an Alarm Subject (up to 31 characters)

Note: If “alarm subject” is not configured in HCD, emails receive “Email address 1” as a default subject for all three email address.

To List Tab -

Enter up to 3 configurable E-Mail addresses (32 characters per addresses).
For each Email address check the Alarm/Event priorities you want the E-mail address to receive.

Events do not have multiple priorities like alarms because they are considered at a priority lower than all alarms.

Alarm priorities were set during "Alarm Group Configuration" under "Alarm Details"
2 = Low Priority Alarm
3 = Medium Priority Alarm
4 = High Priority Alarms
5 = Emergency Alarm

The priority of an event is always indicated as "1" - (see Event Configuration)

Attention: See "Set Controller Network Parameters" and follow the wizard to set up a SMTP mail server IP Address.

Examples:

Somebody@somewhere.com receives ***only priority 5 Alarms***
(only the check box for "5" is checked

Aperson@somewhere.com receives ***all Alarms and Events***
(all 5 boxes are checked)

People@somewhere.com receives ***only Events***
(only check box for "1" is checked)

Unlock the Worksheets

Open the "Unlock Worksheets" dialog box.

Enter the password in the field and then, press "UNLOCK".
See How to Add Worksheet Protection on page 46.

9. Display Worksheet

Note: This section applies to models 551, 552 and 1042 operator interfaces. It does not apply to the 900 Control Station.

Operator Panel Worksheet Overview

The Operator Panel Worksheet has a Toolbar to launch dialog boxes to configure:

O/I Display Buttons [1 - 8] Model 1042; [1 - 5] Model 559
and Display Groups

O/I Security (Operator Interface Settings)

O/I Data Storage

Alarm Groups

Event List

Filenames

Start Up Banner Page

Help Message screens.

Unlock Worksheets

There is a Display Keys Report that indicates current O/I Button assignments:

Display Button Number

Display Position on the button

Display Format

Group Title or Tag name

This assignment summary is built and updated dynamically on the worksheet body. It can be printed from the toolbar.

Operator Panel Configuration Toolbar

Click on ICON to open the dialog box.

ICON	Function	Dialog Box Comments
	Print	Prints the OI Display Worksheet. The printed output is the list of displays on each user-assigned button as viewed on the worksheet. To display each page as it will look when printed, click "Print Preview" on the File menu.
	Display Button Configuration	Click to open Display Buttons Configuration. It lets you assign displays to the user-assigned Operator Interface keys.
	Operator Interface Settings	Click to open the "Operator Interface Settings" Dialog Box. It lets you edit security settings on the Operator Interface.
	Data Storage Configuration	Click to open the Data Storage Configuration dialog box. It lets you create groups of data to be archived on the Operator Interface's storage device. Dialog box tabs are: ***Trend, Point Log***, *and* ***Alarm/Event***

ICON	Function	Dialog Box Comments
	Alarm Group Configuration	Click to open the Alarm Group Configuration dialog box. It lets you configure groups of alarm points in the controller to report be reported at the OI and via E-Mail. See "Configuring or Viewing Display Tag Groups".
	Configure Event List	Click to open the Configure Event List Dialog Box. It lets you configure tags to events from the controller to be reported at the OI or via E Mail.
	Operator Interface File Names	Click to open the "O/I File Names for Disk Storage" Dialog Box. It lets you configure root names for the Operator Interface.
	Start Up Display Configuration	Click to open the Start Up Display Configuration Dialog Box. It lets you configure the Operator Interface Start Up display.
	Message Display Configuration	Click to open the "Message Display Configuration" Dialog Box. It lets you configure a set of message help displays for the Operator Interface.
	Unlock Worksheets	Click to open the "Unlock Worksheets" dialog box. Enter a password and click "Unlock" to unlock all worksheets.

Operator Interface Displays

The **Operator Interface** uses a color display to provide a variety of screen presentations for viewing control loops, setpoint programs, and other analog and digital status.

Modifying and customizing the operator interface is done using the Designer software.

With the software, data points can be identified with ASCII tag names. Once named, these data points may be accessed by the operator interface using a standard set of display formats.

Customized display access and the assignment of selected display screens to keyboard buttons may be viewed using the Operator Interface Worksheet.

All of the information for control loops and setpoint programmers will be accessed by the associated tag name while selected screens such as bar graphs, trends, and overview displays will require the user to specify the individual data points to be represented on the screen.

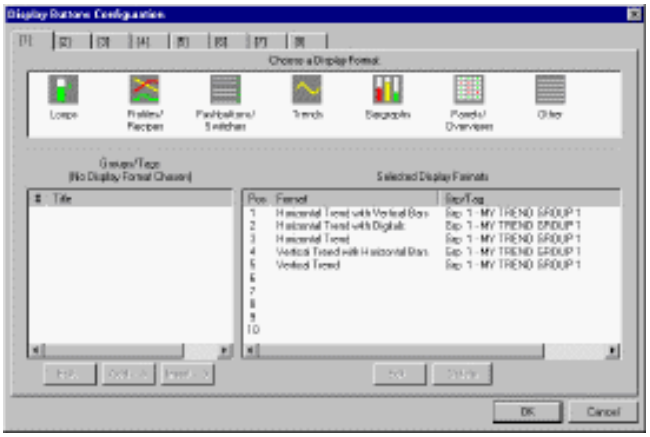
Display Buttons Configuration

Overview

This function lets you customize display access by assigning specific display screens to a set of assignable buttons. OI Model 1042 has 8 assignable buttons, Model 559 has 5. Each assignable button supports a sequence of up to ten screens. Screens assigned to these buttons may be Monitor screens (view data only) or Operate screens (take actions). The type of screen and the data presented on the screen is defined during configuration.

Configuration Procedure

on the Operator Panel Worksheet Toolbar opens the "Display Buttons Configuration" dialog box.



Select one of the tabs (one for each button) located across the top of the dialog box.

"Choose a display format" field. This will determine what will be shown in the "Groups/Tags" field located below the "Display Format" selection box.

Display Formats categories are as follows. For examples, see the ***Operator Interface User Guide***.

Category	Available Display Formats
Loops	1 Loop faceplate with trend, 1 Loop Numeric, Auto-Manual Bias, Multi-loop Faceplate
Profiles/ Recipes	Recipe Load, Sequencer, Setpoint Programmer, Setpoint Scheduler
Pushbuttons/ Switches	Device Control Operate, Four-Selector Switch, HOA Switch, Pushbutton
Trends	Horizontal Trend, Horizontal Trend with Digitals, Horizontal Trend with Vertical Bars, Vertical Trend, Vertical Trend with Horizontal Bars
Bargraphs	3 Pt Horizontal, 3 Pt Vertical, 6 Pt Horizontal, 6 Pt Vertical
Panels/ Overviews	1 Pt Rotating Panel, Multipoint Panel, Overview, Panel - 4 Pts, Panel Meter
Other	Alarm, Alternator Operate, Data Storage Status, Messages, Ramp Operate, Stage Operate

A list of configured Groups/Tags and their titles will appear in the "Groups/Tags" selection window on the tab. The format selection title is listed under "Groups/Tags".
Click on a Group/Tag number.

Click **ADD** - to add the selection to the "Selected Display Formats" list.
Click **INSERT** - to insert into a screen position. Other entries will shift down. Note that you must first select (click) the position in the "Selected Display Formats" list, on the right-hand side of the dialog, where you want to insert this display.
Click **DELETE** - to delete a page from a selected position in the "Selected Display Formats" list.

Click **EDIT** - to change the Tag Order or to bring up the Display Tag Group Configuration dialog box. Note: You can also double-click on an entry in the "Groups/Tag" list or the "Selected Display Formats" list. This action produces the same result as clicking on the Edit button for the selected entry.

Each time you configure a Loop (PID, CARB, ONOFF, TPSC, or AMB), SP Programmer (SPP), SP Scheduler (SPS), Sequencer, Hands/Off/Auto Switch (HOA), Ramp, Stage, Alternator or Device Control (DC) function block, you will have assigned a unique Tag Name to the block. This selection lets you arrange tags to determine the tag order in various displays on the operator interface. The order in which they appear in this "Tag Order" dialog box can be changed to coincide with the order in which you want them to be displayed.

For other Display Groups, it allows you to go and edit the group; for example: Trend, Bar, Overview, and others.

Configuring or Viewing Display Tag Groups

Overview

The "**Display Tag Groups**" lets you configure groups of tags that can be accessed by the operator interface using a standard set of display formats and a predefined menu hierarchy. These groups are configured using tabs that appear on the "Display Tag Groups Configuration" dialog box. The groups are listed below.

After you have completed all the group configurations you can select the groups to be displayed and assign them to a specific operator panel display button. Refer to (Display Button Configuration)

Configuration

on the Operator Panel Worksheet Toolbar opens the "Display Tag Group Configuration" dialog box.

Select one of the tabs (one for each group) located across the top of the dialog box.

Click on tab below to access the configuration procedure for the specific tab.

Alarms Display Tag Group

The Alarm Display Tag Group configuration tab provides a drop list of **Alarm** groups.

You can configure 20 Alarm Groups of 12 alarm points each. Each group contains a set of selected digital signal tags. An Alarm may be any Digital Signal Tag. There are up to 240 alarm points available. Each alarm point can be configured to generate an E-mail notification.

Select the **Alarm tab** then Select Display Group from the drop-down menu. Digital signals will be displayed in the "Selected Tags List" field.

You can also select "Alarms" from:

- the EDIT menu on the Main Menus
- the FBD Worksheet toolbar button
(when you **do not have** an OI and **do not** need to use Alarm Group logic in the control strategy)
- the FBD Worksheet by dropping an ALMGR block onto the configuration and either double-clicking on the block or right-clicking on the block and selecting the properties menu item on the context menu to bring up the 'Alarm Group Configuration" dialog box.
(when you **do not have** an OI and **do** need to use Alarm Group logic in the control strategy)

1. From the "Selected Tags List" drop-down menu, select the type of tags you wish displayed in the list. The default selection is "ALL".
2. Enter the group title. Use any mix of numbers, letters, and spaces
3. Select a 'Tag Name" from the "Select Tag List".
4. Click on ADD, the selected signal tag will be placed in the next available position in the "Selected Tags" field,
OR
Select a position in the "Selected Tags" field, then click on INSERT. The selected signal tag will be placed in the position chosen and the other signal tags will reorder as required.
5. Repeat the selection for up to 12 tags for each group.
6. Select a signal in the "Selected Tags" field and click on ALARM DETAILS, and enter Alarm details in the Dialog Box.
7. Click **OK**.

Note: when you edit "Alarm Group 1-20" from either the O/I Worksheet, the FBD worksheet, or the FBD Alarm Group block, you are editing the same data.

Panel Meter Display Tag Groups

This selection lets you configure groups of **Panel Meter** Displays. Each group may contain a mix of analog signal tags, digital signal tags, analog variables, and digital variables.

1. Select the Panel Meter tab then Select Display Group from the drop-down menu. Analog signal tags, digital signal tags, analog variables, and digital variables will be displayed in the "Selected Tags" field.
2. From the "Selected Tags List" drop-down menu, select the type of tags you wish displayed in the list. The default selection is "ALL".
3. Enter the group title. Use any mix of numbers, letters, and spaces.
4. Select a 'Tag Name" from the "Select Tag List".
5. Click on ADD, the selected signal tag or variable will be placed in the next available position in the "Selected Tags" field,
OR
Select a position in the "Selected Tags" field, then click on INSERT. The selected signal tag will be placed in the position chosen and the other signal tags will reorder as required.
6. Repeat the selection for up to 12 tags for each group. Click **OK**.

Trend Display Tag Groups

A selection of horizontal or vertical trend format displays is available to provide a historical record of recent control performance. Trend displays may be configured with analog or digital points on each display. Trend displays allow a user selectable time period of from 0.5 to 24 hours each. Each display will retain from 1.5 to 6 screens of historical data that may be recalled from memory. Trend graph displays provide traditional value versus time plots in horizontal or vertical orientation. Each group may contain a mix of analog signal tags and digital signal tags.

Attention: If you want **trends displayed logarithmically** make sure that the first signal tag selected has the decimal place setting. (Exponential Notation). See "Signal Tags".

1. Select the Trend tab then Select Display Group from the drop-down menu. Analog signal tags and digital signal tags will be displayed in the "Selected Tags" field.
2. From the "Selected Tags List" drop-down menu, select the type of tags you wish displayed in the list. The default selection is "ALL".
3. Enter the group title. Use any mix of numbers, letters, and spaces
4. Select a 'Tag Name" from the "Select Tag List".
5. Click on ADD, the selected signal tag will be placed in the next available position in the "Selected Tags" field,
   OR
   Select a position in the "Selected Tags" field, then click on INSERT. The selected signal tag will be placed in the position chosen and the other signal tags will reorder as required.
6. Enter the "Scale High" and "Scale Low" values for each signal selected.
7. Select a Time base for the Trend Display from the drop-down menu. (30 minutes to 24 hours)
8. Repeat the selection for up to 6 tags for each group.
9. Click **OK**.

Bar Display Tag Groups

This selection lets you configure 8 groups of **Bar Displays**. Bar Graph displays provide graphic representation of multiple analog or digital signal tags using horizontal or vertical orientation. Bar Graph displays are available in 3-point or 6-point vertical or horizontal format. Each group may contain a mix of analog signal tags and digital signal tags.

1. Select the Bar tab then Select Display Group from the drop-down menu. Analog signal tags and digital signal tags will be displayed in the "Selected Tags" field.
2. From the "Selected Tags List" drop-down menu, select the type of tags you wish displayed in the list. The default selection is "ALL".
3. Enter the group title. Use any mix of numbers, letters, and spaces
4. Select a 'Tag Name" from the "Select Tag List".
5. Click on ADD, the selected signal tag will be placed in the next available position in the "Selected Tags" field,
   OR
   Select a position in the "Selected Tags" field, then click on INSERT. The selected signal tag will be placed in the position chosen and the other signal tags will reorder as required.
6. Enter the "Scale High" and "Scale Low" values for each signal selected. Defaults are 0 and 100.
7. Repeat the selection for up to 6 tags for each group.
8. Click **OK**.

Overview Display Tag Groups

This selection lets you configure groups of Overview Displays. An **Overview** display will present the current status/state for analog or digital tagged points. The display allows operator entry of values via assigned analog and digital variables. Each group may contain a mix of analog signal tags, digital signal tags, analog variables, and digital variables for monitor only and/or operator entries. Analog entries for variables have range limits and digital variables may be turned on or off (via corresponding label).

The user may adjust analog and digital variables listed on overview displays while in operation. Configure entry limits for analog variables. Use entry limits for analog variables. Use entry limits of 0 (low) and 1 (high) for digital limits.

1. Select the Overview tab then Select Display Group from the drop-down menu. Analog signal tags, digital signal tags, analog variables, and digital variables will be displayed in the "Selected Tags" field.
2. From the "Selected Tags List" drop-down menu, select the type of tags you wish displayed in the list. The default selection is "ALL".
3. Enter the group title. Use any mix of numbers, letters, and spaces.
4. Select a 'Tag Name" from the "Select Tag List".
5. Click on ADD, the selected signal tag or variable will be placed in the next available position in the "Selected Tags" field,
   OR
   Select a position in the "Selected Tags" field, then click on INSERT. The selected signal tag will be placed in the position chosen and the other signal tags will reorder as required.
6. Enter the "Min Value" and "Max Value" values for each signal selected. Defaults are –99999 and +99999
7. Repeat the selection for up to 12 tags for each group.
8. Click **OK**.

Single Point (Rotating) Panel Display Tag Groups

This selection lets you configure 2 groups of **Single Point (Rotating) Panel** Displays. Single Point Panel displays provide a single point alphanumeric readout that consists of the tag and current value. The display sequences through a list of up to 12 analog or digital signals or analog or digital variables. Each group may contain a mix of analog signal tags, digital signal tags, analog variables, and digital variables.

1. Select the Single Point tab then Select Display Group from the drop-down menu. Analog signal tags, digital signal tags, analog variables, and digital variables will be displayed in the "Selected Tags" field.
2. From the "Selected Tags List" drop-down menu, select the type of tags you wish displayed in the list. The default selection is "ALL".
3. Enter the group title. Use any mix of numbers, letters, and spaces.
4. Select a 'Tag Name" from the "Select Tag List".
5. Click on ADD, the selected signal tag or variable will be placed in the next available position in the "Selected Tags" field,
   OR
   Select a position in the "Selected Tags" field, then click on INSERT. The selected signal tag will be placed in the position chosen and the other signal tags will reorder as required.
6. Repeat the selection for up to 12 tags for each group.
7. Click **OK**.

Multi-Point Panel Display Tag Groups

This selection lets you configure 8 groups of **Multi-Point Panel** Displays. Multi-Point Panel displays present the current value/state for up to seven Analog or Digital signal tags or analog or digital variables in the controller. Each group may contain a mix of analog signal tags, digital signal tags, analog variables, and digital variables.

1. Select the Multi Point tab then Select Display Group from the drop-down menu. Analog signal tags, digital signal tags, analog variables, and digital variables will be displayed in the "Selected Tags" field.
2. From the "Selected Tags List" drop-down menu, select the type of tags you wish displayed in the list. The default selection is "ALL".
3. Enter the group title. Use any mix of numbers, letters, and spaces.
4. Select a 'Tag Name" from the "Select Tag List".
5. Click on ADD, the selected signal tag or variable will be placed in the next available position in the "Selected Tags" field,
   OR
   Select a position in the "Selected Tags" field, then click on INSERT. The selected signal tag will be placed in the position chosen and the other signal tags will reorder as required.
6. Repeat the selection for up to 7 tags for each group.
7. Click **OK**.

Alarm Details

Select a tag in the "Selected Tags" area of the Alarm Group Configuration dialog box, then click on "Alarm Details' button. The **Alarm Details** dialog box opens and enables you to enter details for the selected tag.

The block number and output number are listed across the banner. The Tag number and descriptor is listed in field below the banner.

Details include:

Alarm Priority - used for routing alarms to Email (which Email addresses get which alarms)
Each of 3 E-mail address may have any/all alarm priorities assigned to it.

2 *- Low Priority Alarm*
3 *- Medium Priority Alarm*
4 *- High Priority Alarm*
5 *- Emergency Alarm*
(select from the drop-down menu)

E Mail Notification of alarms, by priority, on a point by point basis.
(check the box to allow Email notification*)* The E-mail will be sent:
- if an alarm occurs on a point configured to send E-mail.
- to any/all of the 3 E-mail addresses that have the associated alarm priority assigned.

Detailed Text - appears on the Operator Interface*.*
(enter 2 lines of detailed text -24 characters max for each line*)*

Trigger Direction -
Trigger on ON state means alarm goes ON when triggered by rising edge (the discrete goes off-to-on)
Trigger on OFF state means alarm goes ON when triggered by falling edge (the discrete goes on-to-off)
(click on radio button to select)

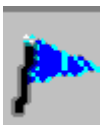
Alarm Acknowledge - Group acknowledge

Manual Acknowledge - Can be acknowledged by operator. When a manual acknowledge alarm goes into alarm and then out of alarm without being acknowledged by the operator, it will be indicated as cleared. Use when you want the operator to be able to acknowledge the alarm or see that the alarm was acknowledged and cleared.

Auto Acknowledge -When an auto acknowledge alarm goes into alarm and then out of alarm without being acknowledged by the operator, it will show no indication it was in alarm. Alarm can still be acknowledged by the operator when it is in the alarm state. An alarm point with this attribute will never indicate "clear" status.
(click on radio button to select*)*

Note: an alarm will always be stored to the O/I Archive list.

Event List Configuration

 on the Operator Panel Worksheet Toolbar opens the **Configure Event List** dialog box.

You can also select "Events" from:
- the EDIT menu on the Main Menu
- the FBD Worksheet toolbar button

Up to 64 digital signals can be configured as events.

The most recent 150 events will be available for display at the Operator Interface

Events can generate Emails.

From 150 to 1500 event records can be stored on the Operator Interface archive disk.

Each event must have at least one of the following destinations:
Email, OI archive, or OI Display

You can select the events from a list of **all digital tags**.

A digital signal may be either an Event or an Alarm, but not both

Procedure

1. Enter a Title for the Event list.
2. From the drop-down menu, select the type of tags you want to display on the tag name list.
3. Click on each tag name you want included in the list.
4. Click on ADD. The selected tag or variable will be placed in the next available position in the "Selected Tags List".
5. Select a tag in the list then, click on "Event Details" button to enter details for the tag selected. Details include:
   E Mail Notification
   Store to O/I Archive List
   Display on O/I
   Trigger Direction for ON or OFF state
6. Click OK.

Event Details

The **Event Details** dialog box enables you to enter details for the tag selected when you configure events. The block number and output number are listed across the banner. The Tag name and tag descriptor is listed in field below the banner.

Events do not have multiple priorities like alarms. They are considered a lower priority than alarms.

Details include:

E Mail Notification of events on a point by point basis. (Check the box to allow Email notification*)* The E-mail will be sent:
- if an event occurs on a point configured to send E-mail.
- to any/all of the 3 E-mail addresses that have events assigned. **Event priorities** are always indicated as "1"

Store to OI Archive List -OI Event File on the data archive disk on an event by event basis

Display on OI - presentation on OI Status line and Event Summary display

Trigger Direction – ON – Event on rising edge (Off-to-on transition)

OFF – Event on falling edge (off-to-on transition).

(click on radio button to select)

E-Mail Notification

opens the **E-Mail Notification** dialog box. It lets you configure up to three E-Mail addresses per controller configuration for Alarm and Event notification.

There are two tabs on the dialog Box.

General Tab

FROM	The ***Controller name*** is configured by the builder of the Configuration file [Read Only]
SUBJECT	Enter an Event Subject (up to 31 characters) Enter an Alarm Subject (up to 31 characters)

To List Tab -

Enter up to 3 configurable E-Mail addresses (32 characters per addresses).
For each Email address check the Alarm/Event priorities you want the E-mail address to receive.

Events do not have multiple priorities like alarms because they are considered at a priority lower than all alarms.

Alarm priorities were set during "Alarm Group Configuration" under "Alarm Details"
2 = Low Priority Alarm
3 = Medium Priority Alarm
4 = High Priority Alarms
5 = Emergency Alarm

The priority of an event is always indicated as "1" - (see Event Configuration)

Attention: See "Set Controller Network Parameters" and follow the wizard to set up a SMTP mail server IP Address.

Examples:

Somebody@somewhere.com receives ***only priority 5 Alarms***
(only the check box for "5" is checked

Aperson@somewhere.com receives ***all Alarms and Events***
(all 5 boxes are checked)

People@somewhere.com receives ***only Events***
(only check box for "1" is checked)

Operator Interface Settings

Note: This section applies to models 551, 552 and 1042 operator interfaces with floppy disk storage. It does not apply to the 900 Control Station.

on the Operator Panel Worksheet Toolbar opens the "**Operator Interface Settings**" Dialog Box.

Select one of the tabs:

Security

Save

Main Menu

Language

Security Tab

This lets you configure, download, and upload security settings for the operator interface. The security configuration is divided into two areas: **Operator Security** and **Engineer Security**.

Each of the security features shown in the dialog box offers a different level of security.

Item	Feature	Description
1	**Enable Security**	This is a master enabling switch. **Click on box** to enable security on any of the engineer or operator secured items that are also selected. *If this is **not** selected, no engineer or operator secured items will be secured, even if they are selected.*
2	**Operator Security Code**	Enter a 3-digit NUMERIC code that will be used to secure items 3 through 9. 0 disables Operator Security
3	**Set Up Control**	Click to secure access to setup items. Click off to allow unrestricted access.
4	**Change between Auto and Manual Control**	Click to secure loop mode AUTO/MANUAL operation Click off to allow unrestricted access
5	**Change between Local and Remote Setpoint**	Click to secure changing between Local and Remote Setpoints. Click off to allow unrestricted access.
6	**Disk Utilities/ Data Storage**	Click to secure access to disk utilities, data storage controls, and load data storage settings. Click off to allow unrestricted access.
7	**Setpoint Programmer - Scheduler - Sequencer operations**	Click to secure Setpoint Program/Scheduler/Sequencer operation. Click off to allow unrestricted access.
8	**Recipe operations/Variable Edit**	Click to secure recipe and variable edit operation. Click off to allow unrestricted access.
9	**Log On/Off**	Click to secure Log On/Off operation. Click off to allow unrestricted access.
10	**Engineer Security Code**	This is a higher level of security than the operator security code because it secures access to "off-line" functions such as calibration. Choose a 3-digit code which will be used to secure the item 11 through 13. 0 disables Engineering Security

Item	Feature	Description
11	**Unit Setup**	Click to secure Set Mode, Set Time and Date, Set Security, Comm Ports, Self-Tests, Calibrate AI, Calibrate AO. Click off to allow unrestricted access.
12	**Function Block Edit**	Click to secure Edit Device Control and HOA EDIT displays. Click off to allow unrestricted access.
13	**Edit Menus**	Click to secure Edit Device Control and HOA operate display Edit menus. Click off to allow unrestricted access

Save tab

The Save tab is available for Rev. 2.0 or later configurations.

Prevents unauthorized saves by specifying which items can be saved to the controller's pool.

Recipes
Setpoint Profiles
Schedules
Sequences

Main Menu tab

The Main Menu tab is available for Rev. 2.0 or later configurations.

Specify which items appear on the OI main menu:

Recipes
SP Programmers
SP Schedulers
Sequencers
Loops
Alarms/Events/Diags
Summary Displays
Unit Setup
Disk Utilities
Data Storage
Log Off

Language tab

Specify the language for all OI menus.

O/I File Names for Disk Storage

on the Operator Panel Worksheet Toolbar opens the **OI File Names** dialog box.

You can configure up to 25 file name roots (6-characters) for use by the operator interface in disk storage.

The Operator Interface lets you choose a name root and append it with a 2-digit number. Then a 3-character extension is automatically added to create a filename for the disk storage functions.

Please use DOS format File Names.

The first several names listed in the dialog box are defaults and can be changed.

Click on a box and enter a file name.

Start Up Display Configuration

on the Operator Panel Worksheet Toolbar opens the **Start Up Display Configuration** dialog box.

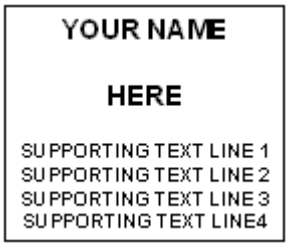
This selection lets you enter **Title Text** and **Comment Text** for your start up display. The "Start Up display" is the first screen displayed following start up and is **not associated with any display button.**

This same text is also viewed on the OI's Logoff Display.

Configuration Procedure

1. Enter a title on the Startup display. The title can be up to 2 lines in length but there is a maximum of 12 characters per line.
2. Enter a text message on the Startup display. The message can be up to 4 lines in length but there is a maximum of 24 characters per line.

Example



Message Display Configuration

on the Operator Panel Worksheet Toolbar opens the **Message Display Configuration** dialog box.

This selection lets you configure 10 pages of **Help Message Displays**.

Configuration Procedure

1. Select a page from the drop-down menu or navigate to the desired page using the Forward/Reverse buttons on the top of the dialog box.
2. Enter a title text for the display. The title can be one line in length but there is a maximum of 24 characters per line.
3. Enter a message text for the display. The message can be up to 11 lines in length for each page but there is a maximum of 32 characters per line.

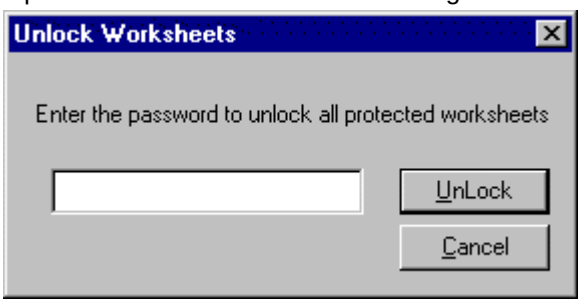
Example

START UP NOTES

USE RECIPE #1 AFTER SHUTDOWN
CHANGE SETPOINT TO 450
SHUT OFF PUMP #1
TURN OFF WATER VALVE
RESET LIMIT CONTROL
VERIFY WATER LEVEL ON TANK #1

Unlock the Worksheets

Opens the "Unlock Worksheets" dialog box.



Enter the password in the field and then, press "UNLOCK".

How to add/change worksheet protection.

10. Function Block Diagram (FBD) Worksheet

FB Worksheet Overview

Function Block Diagram Worksheets let you build your General Steps to Build a Control /Safety Strategy graphically right on the User Interface Overview. It provides a full complement of SAMA-style symbols that we call Function blocks that can be softwired. " to each other. It also includes single tag, generation capability for resident control data that can be linked to displays and other software programs.

The Function Block Diagram Worksheet has a Toolbar, to launch dialog boxes to configure:

- Worksheet Properties - Enter a configuration name and description in the appropriate fields.
- Alarm Group Configuration
- Event List Configuration
- Block Order

The toolbar also contains icons for Cut, Copy, and Paste; Zoom Level, and an Icon to toggle a grid on and off on the worksheet.

The Function Blocks are listed in the appropriate Worksheet Toolbar. (Function Block Menu Tree).

You can Drag and Drop the function blocks from the menu onto the worksheet and softwire them to create a control and/or safety strategy.

Note that with Controller Rev 6.0 and higher, there is now the concept of “Safety” function-block-diagram worksheets (vs. the regular “Process” function-block-diagram worksheets) for controllers that support it. The Safety worksheets allow definition of “Safety-enabled” configurations to run on SIL-compliant controller models. Within Safety worksheets, certain restrictions at both configuration and run-time are enforced to ensure safety compliance is achieved.

The “Process” worksheet is the same as the “FBD” worksheet as they were called prior to Rev 6.0.

Note that a “Safety” function-block-diagram worksheet may be simply called “Safety worksheet”, and a “Process” function-block-diagram worksheet may be simply called “Process worksheet”, for purposes of brevity. Also, a function block that is placed on a Safety worksheet may be simply called a “Safety block”.

When a new configuration is created, the Safety worksheet tab will only appear if the controller model and revision selected is a SIL-compliant model/revision.

- Up to 20/40 worksheets per configuration depending on controller model A total of up to 400 Function Block Pages (20 x 20) for non-SIL controllers C30, C50
- A total of up to 1600 Function Block Pages (80 x 20) for non-SIL controllers C70, C70R, C75
- A total of up to 800 Function Block Pages (20 x 20 x 2) for SIL controllers C30S, C50S
- A total of up to 3200 Function Block Pages (80 x 20 x 2) for SIL controllers C70S, C75S

There is extended use of Right Mouse Click.

FBD Configuration Toolbar

Click on ICON to open the dialog box.

ICON	Function	Dialog Box Comments
	Print Worksheet	Click to print the active worksheet. It opens the "Print" dialog box for printing.
	Append Process Worksheet / Append Safety Worksheet	Adds a new Process or Safety block diagram. If selected, a new worksheet will be created and a new sub-tab for it will appear at the bottom of the diagram window. The new diagram reference will be placed in the File Browser. Click on the diagram name in the File Browser to edit the name.
	Delete Process Worksheet / Delete Safety Worksheet	Click to delete the selected Process / Safety Worksheet highlighted on the File Browser. This will delete all the items in the worksheet.
	Reorder Process Worksheets / Reorder Safety Worksheets	Opens the Worksheet order dialog box. Allows you to change the order of the worksheets as they appear at the bottom of the Worksheet area. Click on worksheet name and use the increment-decrement buttons at the top of the dialog box to change the worksheet order.
	FBD Worksheet Properties	Type in a title and description of your FBD Worksheet. The title will appear in the File Browser and on the associated FB Worksheets tab at the bottom of the diagram.
	Cut	Moves the currently selected FBD diagram items from the current Function Block diagram and places them on the clipboard. Indicated by a red dotted line. Upon pasting the items, all links to them (e.g., display references, Modbus address, recipes) are preserved as if they were moved, they are not deleted and pasted as a new copy.
	Copy	Copies the currently selected FBD diagram items from the current Function Block diagram and places it on the clipboard. Indicated by a blue dotted line.
	Paste	Places the contents of the clipboard containing FBD diagram items onto the Function Block Diagram at the location determined by the blinking insertion point caret. This command is unavailable if the clipboard is empty. Cut and pasted items maintain their links (e.g., display references, Modbus addresses, recipes), they are not deleted and pasted as a new copy. If you paste a cut function block and soft wires to the same or different worksheet in the same configuration, the soft wires will be dangling (unconnected) and you are asked to specify how you want to resolve dangling soft wires.
	Find Item	Allows you find an Item on the FBD worksheet. Opens the "Find Item" dialog box.
	Zoom Out	You can "zoom out" to see more of the page at a reduced size. Zoom levels of 50%, 75%, 100%, 125%, and 150%.
	Zoom In	You can "zoom in" to return items to normal size. Zoom levels of 50%, 75%, 100%, 125%, and 150%.

ICON	Function	Dialog Box Comments
	Grid	Let you place a grid in the FBD Diagram. This can aid in the placement of items on the diagram.
	Alarms	Click to open the "Alarms Group Configuration" Dialog Box. It lets you configure alarm points. See "Alarm Group Configuration"
	Events	Click to open the "Configure Event List" Dialog Box. It lets you configure events in the controller. See "Event List Configuration"
	Block Tag Order	Click to show drop down menu. Let's you change the execution order of the function blocks. Select Execution Order, Fast Logic Order, or Tag Order.
	Unlock Worksheets	Click to open the "Unlock Worksheets" dialog box. Enter a password and click "Unlock" to unlock all worksheets.

How to Add a New FBD Worksheet

1. Right click on the FBD Worksheet name on the Browser. Select "Append New Worksheet", or
2. Select the "New FBD Worksheet" icon on the Function Block Diagram Toolbar (far left), or
3. From the Edit menu on the Main Drop-down menus, select "Append New Worksheet".
4. A new worksheet will appear at the bottom of the Function Block Diagram list in the browser and a blank worksheet will be place on the Designer.
5. Right click on the new Worksheet name in the browser or double-click on the worksheet's tab then, select Properties and set the new worksheet properties.
6. For each worksheet added, a tab will appear at the bottom of the Function Block Worksheet area with the name of the worksheet that was set in "Worksheet Properties" on it. Use the scroll bar for access to a specific worksheet tab.

How to Navigate Between FBD Worksheets

Use the Worksheet Tabs

For each worksheet added, a tab will appear at the bottom of the Function Block Worksheet area with the name of the worksheet that was set in "Worksheet Properties" on it. If necessary, use the scroll bar to access other worksheet tabs. Click on the tab to select the associated Worksheet.

Use the File Browser

The File Browser, located on the top left side of the Worksheet, is a movable window listing opened files.

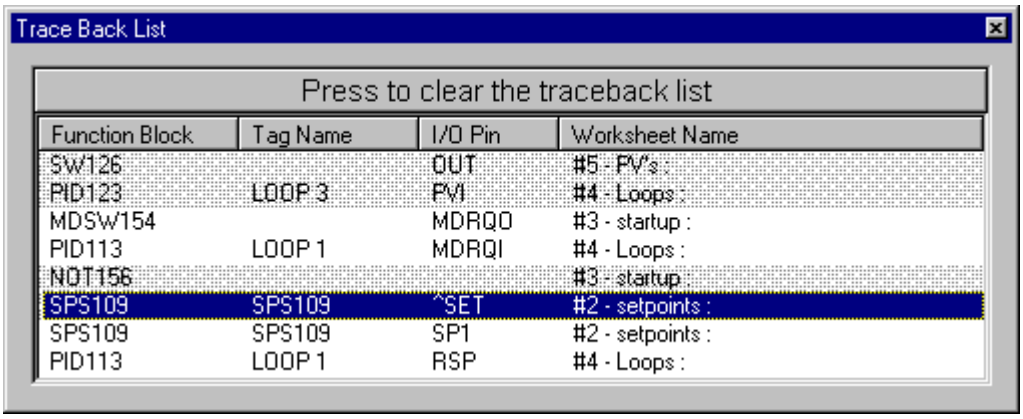
It allows you to move quickly between files and worksheets.

To select a particular Worksheet, double-click the Function Block Worksheet name.

Use the Connection Traceback

Access the Trace Window from the Main Menu Toolbar

Or, from the View Menu on the main menu.



Function Block	Tag Name	I/O Pin	Worksheet Name
SW126		OUT	#5 - PV's :
PID123	LOOP 3	PVI	#4 - Loops :
MDSW154		MDRQO	#3 - startup :
PID113	LOOP 1	MDRQI	#4 - Loops :
NOT156			#3 - startup :
SPS109	SPS109	^SET	#2 - setpoints :
SPS109	SPS109	SP1	#2 - setpoints :
PID113	LOOP 1	RSP	#4 - Loops :

The Trace Window provides a list of all blocks/pins you have traced and lists :

- Block ID
- Tag Name
- I/O Pin Name
- Worksheet name

The last trace is on the top of the list.

Selecting a function block from the list will activate the associated function block worksheet.

Use the "Find Item" feature

From the "Edit" Menu on the main menu select "Find". It lets you search for an item on the FBD Worksheet.
Select the item type from the "Show" drop down menu on the "Find Item" dialog box.
Select an item from the "Item" drop-down menu. Click on the Worksheet in the "Find Results" field and the associated worksheet will be selected and the Tag, Variable, or Function Block will be highlighted on the worksheet.

Keyboard Navigation

Press	To
LEFT ARROW	Scroll worksheet to the left
RIGHT ARROW	Scroll worksheet to the right
UP ARROW	Scroll worksheet up
DOWN ARROW	Scroll worksheet down
END	Go to the end of last page
HOME	Go to the beginning of first page
PAGE DOWN	Go to the next worksheet page
PAGE UP	Go to the previous worksheet page
CTRL+LEFT ARROW	Go to the end of last page
CTRL+RIGHT ARROW	Go to the beginning of first page
CTRL+UP ARROW	Go to the top of the page
CTRL+DOWN ARROW	Go to the bottom of the page
CTRL+PAGE DOWN	Go to the next worksheet tab
CTRL+PAGE UP	Go to the previous worksheet tab

Other keyboard functions

If necessary, you can use the standard keystroke conventions to move around.

ALT *used together with the underlined letter in text labeling an object lets you select that object.*

TAB *select next field or object in dialog boxes and configuration templates*

SHIFT+TAB *select previous field or object in dialog boxes and configuration templates*

UP ARROW *previous choice in the field*

DOWN ARROW *next choice in the field*

ALT+DOWN ARROW *opens a drop-down list box*

Traceback Window

Overview

This feature helps you find problems with soft-wire and signal connections between Function Blocks.

For Example:

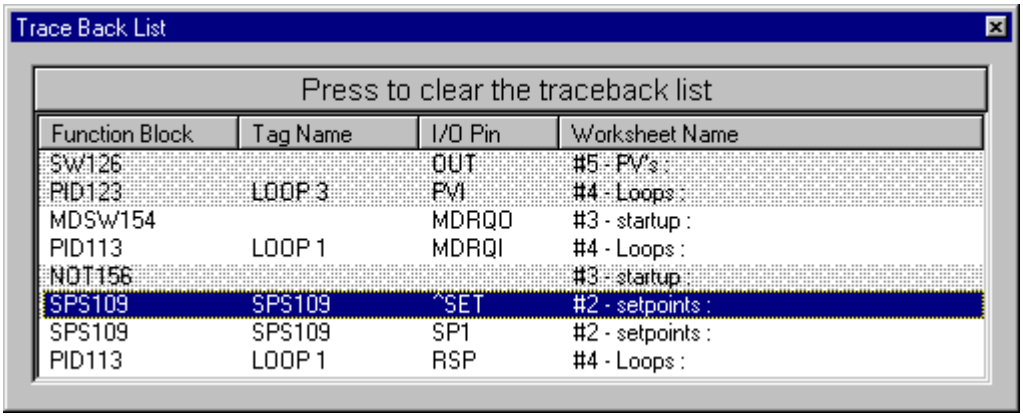
If you are testing a configuration that you've built and want to know why a Digital Output is ON when it should be OFF, you can search for the source of the Input Signal.

Traceback is useful for finding the analog or digital source signal.

Trace Window

Access the Trace Window from the Main Menu Toolbar

Or, from the View Menu on the main menu.



It is a dockable, sizeable window.

The Trace Window provides a list of all blocks/pins you have traced and lists:

- Block ID
- Tag Name
- I/O Pin Name
- Worksheet name

Trace Window Update

Each time you perform a Trace, the window will update with a new pair of block/pins.
The ***first item*** is the ***signal source***, the ***second item*** is the ***signal destination***.

Select any of the rows in the Traceback window to recall the diagram to display the selected block.

The last trace is on the top of the list.

Right Mouse Click Procedure to Trace Signals

1. Select a Function Block of interest.
2. Right Mouse click on any INPUT pin.
3. Select "TRACE". Traceback will "find" the source of the connection you selected and refresh the FBD view with that block visible (Highlighted) - even if the other side of the connection is on a ***different*** worksheet.
   The Output pin of the block (the signal source) will be displayed in RED.
4. From that block, repeat the traceback to another block and another block, etc.
5. Use the Traceback list to view your Traceback history.
6. You can clear the Trace List by pressing the bar at the top of the window.

Resolve Dangling Soft Wires

When you cut a function block(s) and any connected soft wires, after you paste the selection onto the same or different worksheet *in the same configuration,* the pasted soft wires are left dangling (unconnected). To resolve these dangling soft wires a dialog box appears with the following choices.

Delete dangling soft wires. Select this to delete the soft wires from the pasted function block(s). The soft wire connections prior to the cut will be broken.

Split dangling soft wires using signal tags. Select this to restore the pre-cut connections using automatically created signal tags. The function blocks will again be connected not with soft wires but with signal tags.

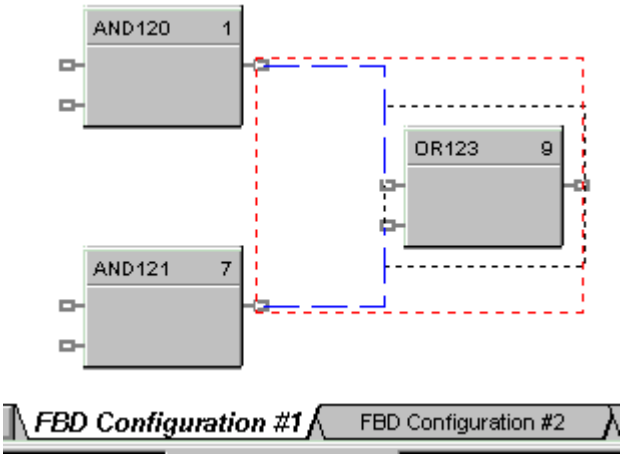
Split dangling soft wires using page connectors (available in configuration revisions 2.x or higher). Select this to restore the pre-cut connections using automatically created page connectors. The function blocks will again be connected not with soft wires but with page connectors.

The last two choices are selectable only if sufficient quantities of signal tags or page connectors remain.

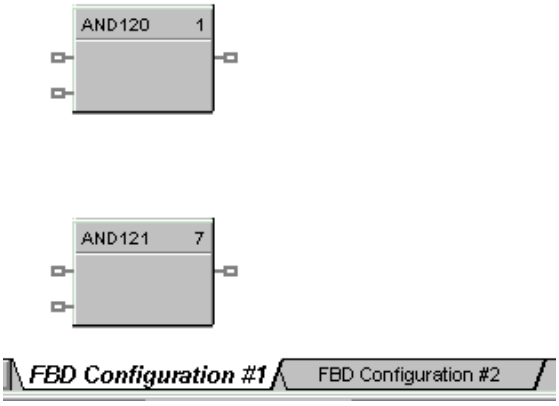
ATTENTION: The automatically created signal tags or page connectors can sometimes overlap or hide the original connectors so check behind them, don't assume the previous connectors were replaced.

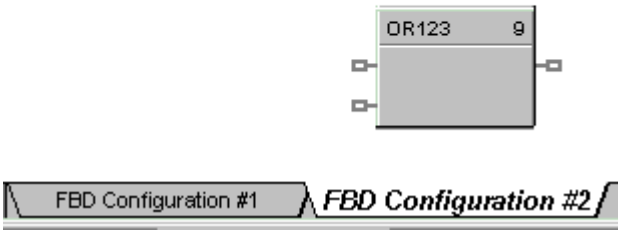
Examples

Before the cut:

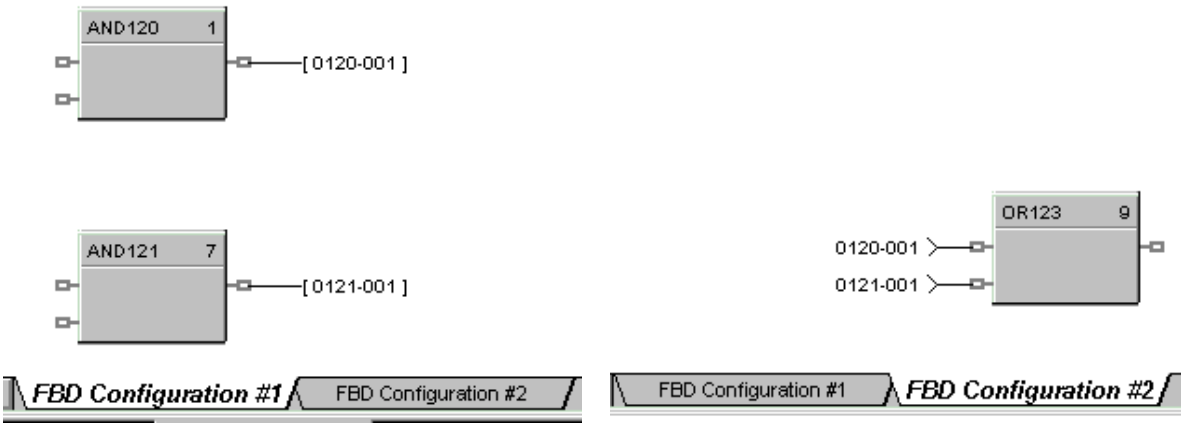


After pasting on a different worksheet and **Delete dangling soft wires**:

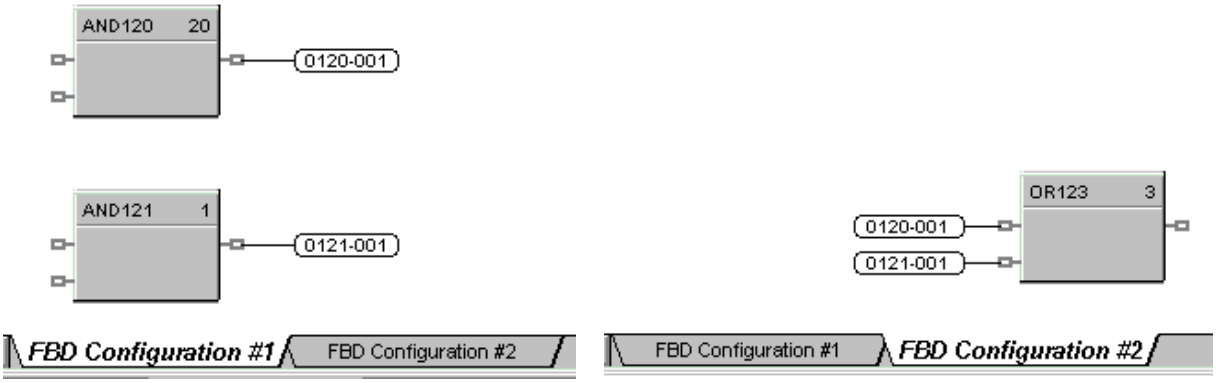




After pasting on a different worksheet and **Split dangling soft wires using signal tags**:



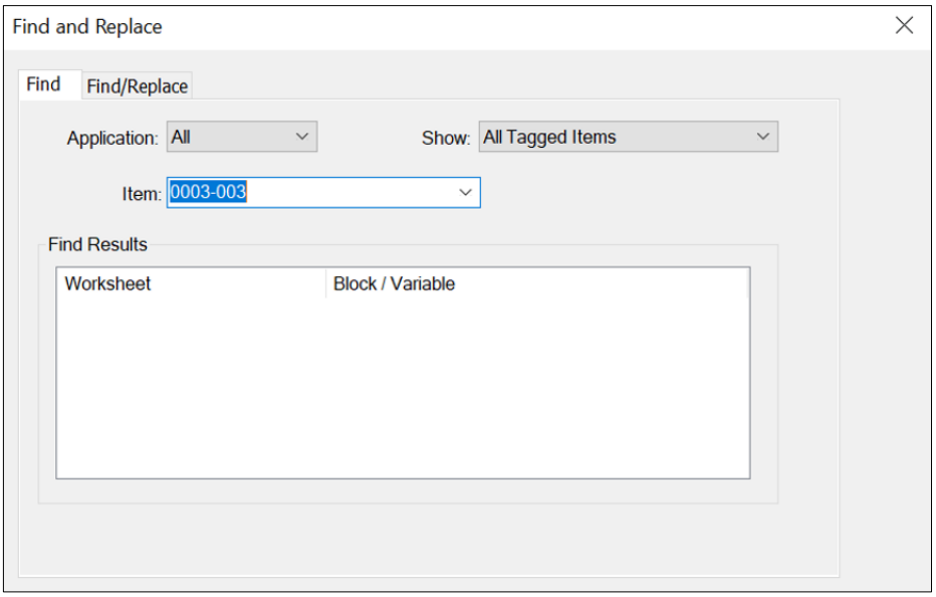
After pasting on a different worksheet and **Split dangling soft wires using page connectors:**



How to Find an Item on the FBD Worksheet

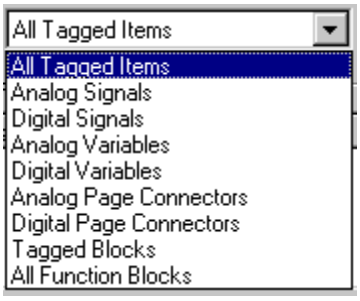
On the FBD worksheet lets you find an item and all places it is used (such as a signal tag used multiple times).

From the Edit menu, select “Find”. Or, right-click a tagged item on the FBD worksheet and select “Find Where Used”. This will open the "Find Item" dialog box.

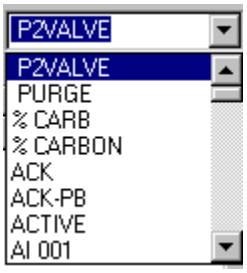


1. From the Application drop-down menu, choose application type (For Safety-enabled configurations only).

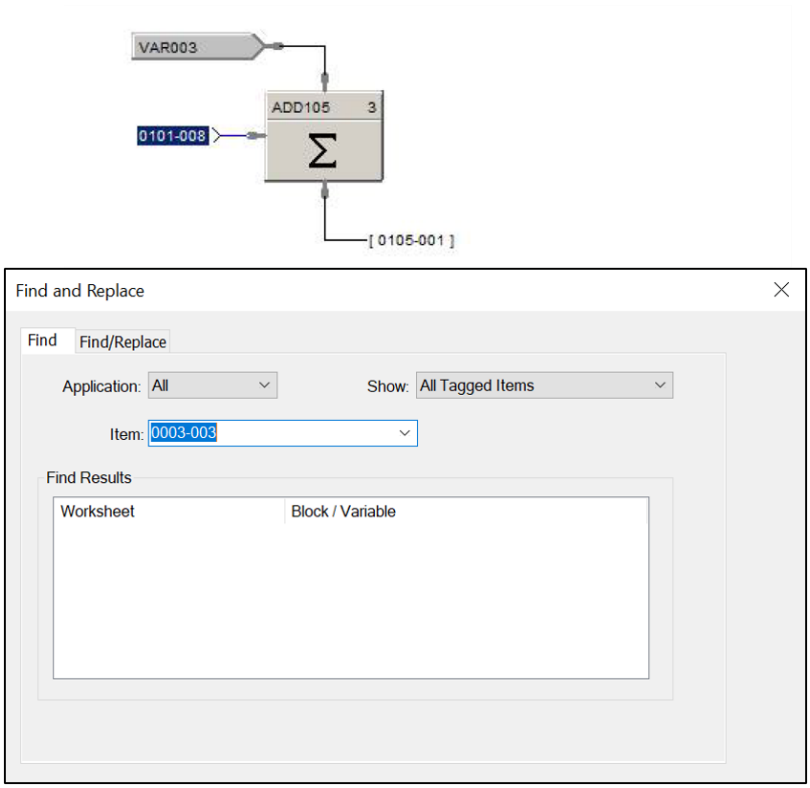
2. From the "Show" drop-down menu, choose an item type



3. From the "Item" drop-down menu, choose an item. If you already right clicked on an item in the FBD worksheet it will be displayed here.



4. The "Find Results" field will indicate the Worksheet where the item is located. Click on the Worksheet name and you will jump to the item on the worksheet.



5. Double click on an item on the worksheet to open the "properties" dialog box. The Tag or Variable Number or Function Block name will appear on the dialog box banner

How To Find and Replace Item on the FDB Worksheet

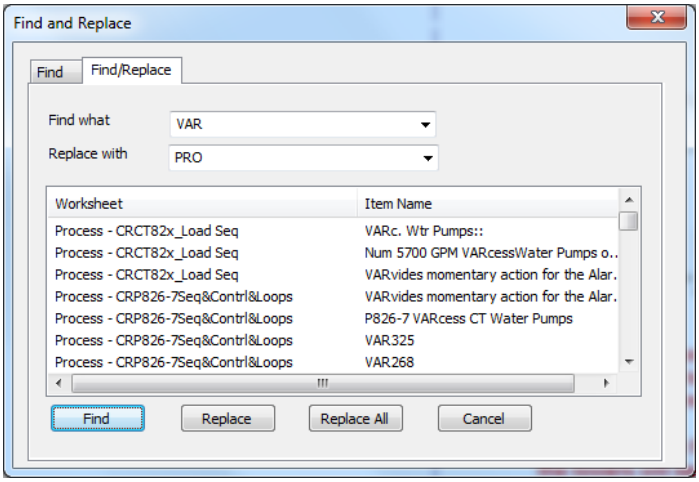
Find/Replace Item (Ctrl+H)

On the FBD worksheet lets you find an item and all places it is used and replace the item names used.

Note: The replace functionality is not applicable for protected worksheets.

From the **Edit** menu, click **Find/Replace Tag**.

6. In the **Find what** box, type the tag name of the variable, signal tag, page connector, or function block.

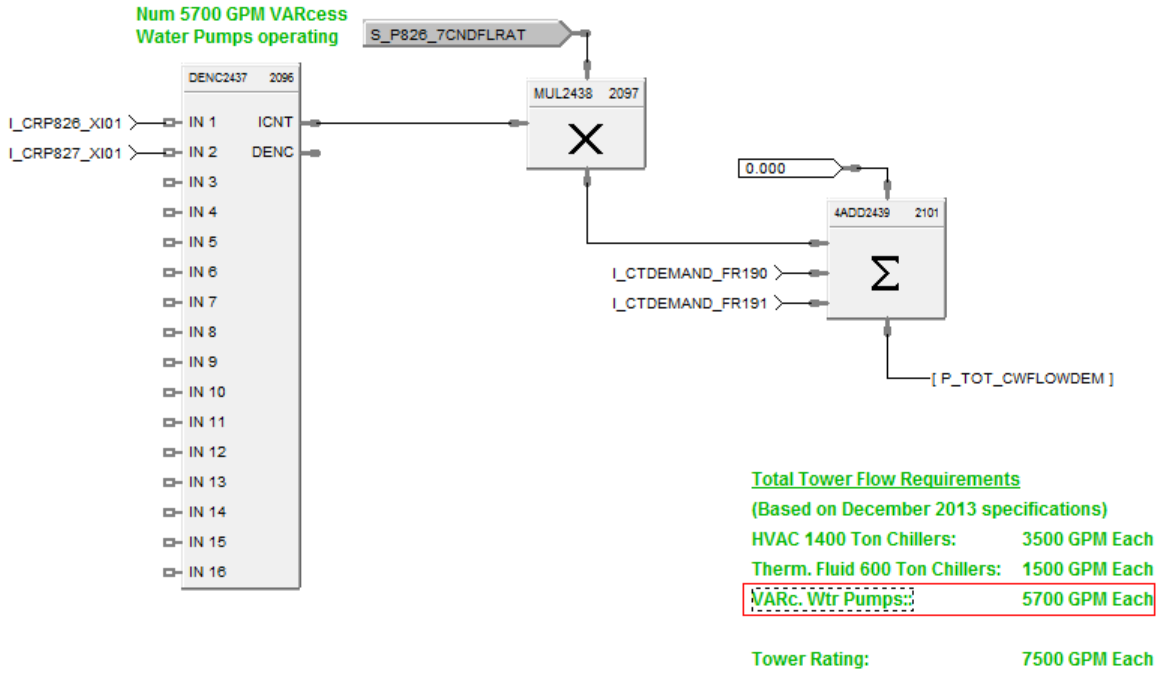


7. Click **Find**. The window displays all places where it is used.
8. In the **Replace with box**, type the new name to be used
9. Do one of the following:
   - **Replace**: Name of the selected item is replaced. Select an item from the list and click replace. The Tag, Variable, or Function Block will be highlighted on the Function Block Diagram.
   - **Replace All**: Name of all items is replaced.

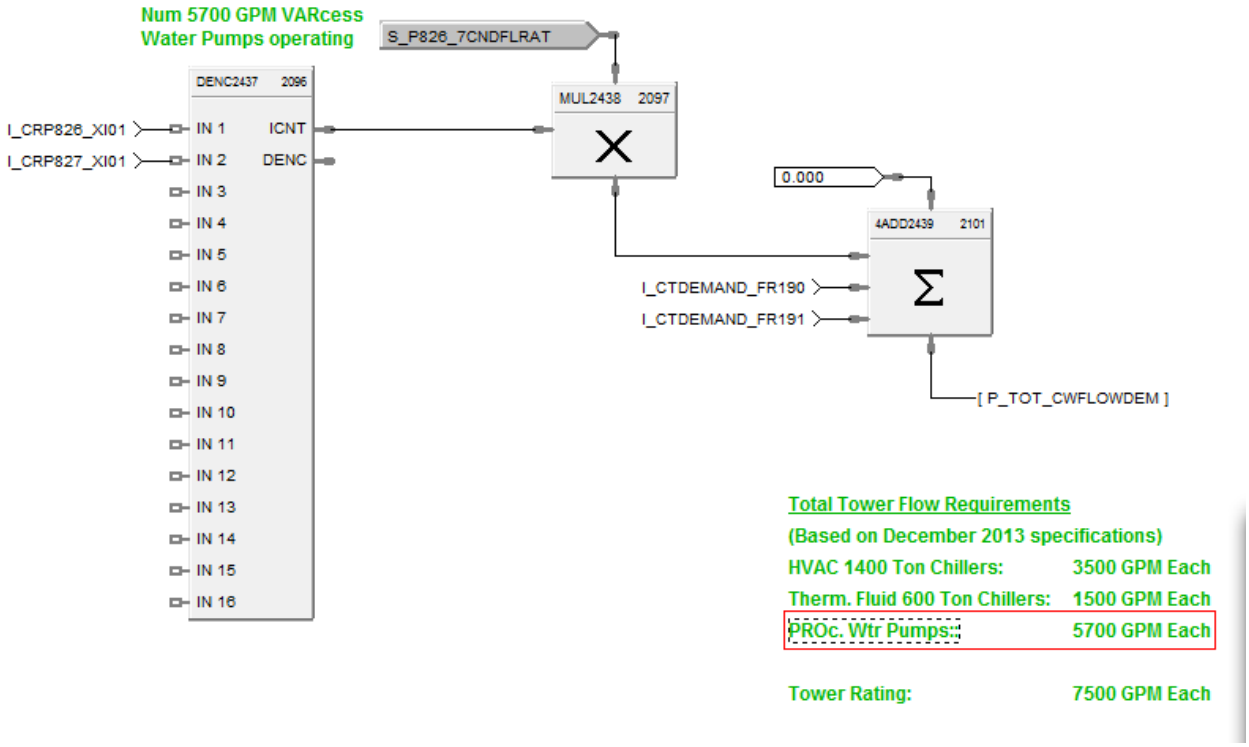
   The new tag name is applied to the selected items.
10. In the following example, the string 'VAR' is replaced with string 'PRO'.

For example,

Before replace:



After replace:



How to Change a FBD's Worksheet Properties

1. Right click on the new Worksheet name in the browser and select "Properties", or
2. Double click on the worksheet tab, or

3. Select the "Properties" icon on the Function Block Diagram Toolbar (3rd from left), or
4. From the Edit menu on the Main Drop-down menus, select " Worksheet Properties".
5. Enter a Title *(worksheet name will appear on the File Browser and worksheet tabs)* and Description *(enhance the Worksheet name with descriptive text)* in the appropriate fields of the dialog box. The descriptive name appears on the FBD Report Printouts. Reference "Print Report"

How to Change the Worksheet Order

1. The Worksheet Order dialog box lists the FBD worksheets as they appear on the tabs at the bottom of the Function Block Worksheet area.
2. In the dialog box, click on the Worksheet name that you want to reorder
3. Change the worksheet order using the Increment/decrement buttons at the top right of the worksheet order dialog box
4. The tabs will be reordered at the bottom of the worksheet area.

How to Delete a FBD Worksheet

1. Right click on the new Worksheet name in the browser and select "Delete Worksheet", or
2. Select the "Delete" icon on the Function Block Diagram Toolbar (2nd from left), or
3. From the Edit menu on the Main Drop-down menus, select " Delete Worksheet". The selected worksheet will be deleted.

How to Add Worksheet Protection

Introduction

The ControlEdge HC900 Control Designer provides an optional configuration Worksheet protection. New files default to "No Protection". Worksheets can be protected on individual basis where all protected worksheets use the same password. A user has limited access to protected worksheets.

Protected Worksheet Type	View Worksheet?	Edit Worksheet?
Controller	YES	NO
Display	YES	NO
Function Blocks	NO	NO
Modbus Map	YES	NO

Protected Worksheets:

- can be **"unlocked"**. Protection is disabled, but not removed from the file. If you save the file, the worksheet protection will be "locked" when the file is reopened.
- can have their **passwords changed**. In order to change a password, you will need to know the current password.
- Can have their **protection "removed"**. Removing the protection is permanent. If you save the file, the worksheet will not be protected when the file is reopened.

Protection Symbols

There are three symbols that could appear on the "Worksheet Protection" tab that indicate the level of protection for the file:

= No protection is in place, worksheets are 'Unlocked"

= Protection exists, and the worksheets are "Unlocked".

= Protection exists, and the worksheets are "Locked".

Protecting a Worksheet When There is No Protection

Step	Action
1	From the "File" menu, select "Properties", then select the "Worksheet Protection " tab.
2	Click on the "Change Protection" button.
3	Click on the box next to the worksheet names you want to protect, then select "DONE" button.
4	Click on the "Lock" button to setup a password.
5	Enter a password for the file in the "New Password" field (up to 14 characters). Important note: *Password shall not have Chinese characters*
6	Re-enter the password in the "Confirm New Password" field.
7	Click "OK".
8	In version 4.4 and greater click “Disable Master Password” if you wish to prevent others from overiding password protection by getting a master password from Honeywell. **IMPORTANT NOTE:** If you forget your password after Disable Master Password has been selected you will not be able to view any protected worksheets.

To Change a Password

Step	Action
1	From the "File" menu, select "Properties", then select the "Worksheet Protection " tab.
2	Click on the "Change Password" button.
3	Enter the current password in the appropriate field.
4	Enter a New Password in the appropriate field. Important note: *Password shall not have Chinese characters*
5	Confirm the new password in the appropriate field.
6	Click "OK".

To Temporarily Unlock a Worksheet

Step	Action
1	From the "File" menu, select "Properties", then select the "Worksheet Protection " tab.
2	Click on the "Unlock" button.
3	Enter the current password in the appropriate field.
4	Click "OK", the worksheets are unprotected **NOTE:** *the "Controller", "Display", and "Function Block" worksheets also have a toolbar button to unlock worksheets.*

To Permanently Remove Worksheet Protection

Step	Action
1	From the "File" menu, select "Properties", then select the "Worksheet Protection " tab.
2	Click on the "Remove Protection" button.
3	Enter the current password in the appropriate field.
4	Click "OK", the worksheets are unprotected.

Protecting a Worksheet When Worksheets Protection is Active

Step	Action
1	From the "File" menu, select "Properties", then select the "Worksheet Protection " tab.
2	"Unlock" the worksheet.
3	Change protection.
4	Select worksheet names, then "DONE".
5	Select "LOCK"

Alarm Group Configuration

opens the **Alarm Group Configuration** dialog box.

You can also select "Alarms" from:
- the Edit Menu on the Main Menu
- the FBD Worksheet by dropping an ALMGP block onto the configuration - when you **do not have** an O/I and **do** need to use Alarm Group logic in the control strategy)

The Alarm Display Tag Group configuration tab provides a drop list of **Alarm** groups. You can configure:

- For controller Rev 4.0 or higher: 30 Alarm Groups of 12 alarm points each for a total of 360 alarm points in the controller.
- For lower revisions: 20 Alarm Groups of 12 alarm points each for a total of 240 alarm points.

Each group contains a set of selected digital signal tags. An Alarm may be any Digital Signal Tag.

All alarms are displayed at the OI.

Each alarm point can be configured to generate an E-Mail Notification.

Procedure

1. Select a Display Group from the drop-down menu. Digital signals will be displayed in the "Selected Tags" field.
2. From the "Selected Tags List" drop-down menu, select the type of tags you wish displayed in the list. The default selection is "ALL".
3. (For Safety-enabled configurations only) From the “Safety Filter” drop-down menu, select the type of tags you wish displayed in the list. The default selection is "ALL".
4. Enter the group title. Use any mix of numbers, letters, and spaces
5. Select a tag then click on **ADD**, the selected signal tag will be placed in the next available position in the "Selected Tags" field,
   OR
   Select a position in the "Selected Tags" field, then click on **INSERT.** The selected signal tag will be placed in the position chosen and the other signal tags will reorder as required.
6. Repeat the selection for up to 12 tags for each group.
7. Select a signal in the "Selected Tags" field and click on **ALARM DETAILS**, and then enter Alarm details in the Dialog Box.
8. Click **OK**.

Alarm Details

Select a tag in the "Selected Tags" area of the Alarm Group Configuration dialog box, then click on "Alarm Details' button. The **Alarm Details** dialog box opens and enables you to enter details for the selected tag.

The block number and output number are listed across the banner. The Tag number and descriptor is listed in field below the banner.

Details include:

Alarm Priority - used for routing alarms to Email (which Email addresses get which alarms)
Each of 3 E-mail address may have any/all alarm priorities assigned to it.

2 - *Low Priority Alarm*
3 - *Medium Priority Alarm*
4 - *High Priority Alarm*
5 - *Emergency Alarm*
(select from the drop-down menu)

E Mail Notification of alarms, by priority, on a point by point basis.
(check the box to allow Email notification*)* The E-mail will be sent:
- if an alarm occurs on a point configured to send E-mail.
- to any/all of the 3 E-mail addresses that have the associated alarm priority assigned.

Detailed Text - appears on the Operator Interface*.*
(enter 2 lines of detailed text -24 characters max for each line*)*

Trigger Direction -
Trigger on ON state means alarm goes ON when triggered by rising edge (the discrete goes off-to-on)
Trigger on OFF state means alarm goes ON when triggered by falling edge (the discrete goes on-to-off)
(click on radio button to select)

Alarm Acknowledge - Group acknowledge

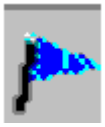
Manual Acknowledge - Can be acknowledged by operator. When a manual acknowledge alarm goes into alarm and then out of alarm without being acknowledged by the operator, it will be indicated as cleared. Use when you want the operator to be able to acknowledge the alarm or see that the alarm was acknowledged and cleared.

Auto Acknowledge -When an auto acknowledge alarm goes into alarm and then out of alarm without being acknowledged by the operator, it will show no indication it was in alarm. Alarm can still be acknowledged by the operator when it is in the alarm state. An

alarm point with this attribute will never indicate "clear" status.
(click on radio button to select*)*

Note: an alarm will always be stored to the O/I Archive list.

Event List Configuration

 on the Operator Panel Worksheet Toolbar opens the **Configure Event List** dialog box.

You can also select "Events" from:
- the Edit Menu on the Main Menu
- the FBD Configuration Toolbar, button

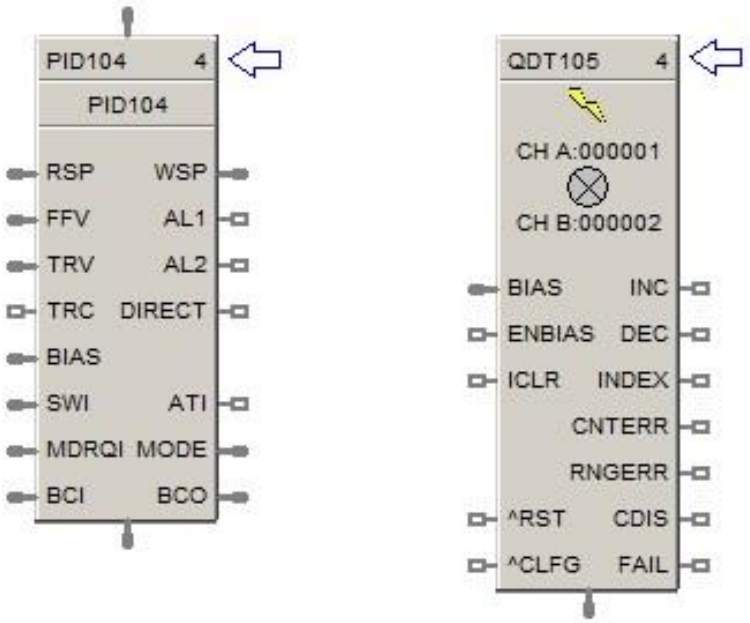
- Up to 64 digital signals can be configured as events.
- The most recent 150 events will be available for display at the Operator Interface
- Events can generate Emails.
- From 150 to 1500 event records can be stored on the Operator Interface archive disk.
- Each event must have at least one of the following destinations:
  Email, OI archive, or OI Display
- You can select the events from a list of **all digital tags**.
- A digital signal may be either an Event or an Alarm, but not both

Procedure

1. Enter a Title for the Event list in the “Title” editbox.
2. From the drop-down menu below the “Title” editbox, select the type of tags you want to display on the tag name list.
3. (For Safety-enabled configurations only) From the “Safety Filter” drop-down menu, select the type of tags you want to display on the tag name list.
4. Click on each tag name you want included in the list.
5. Click on ADD. The selected tag or variable will be placed in the next available position in the "Selected Tags List".
6. Select a tag in the list then, click on "Event Details" button to enter details for the tag selected. Details include:
   E Mail Notification
   Store to O/I Archive List
   Display on O/I
   Trigger Direction for ON or OFF state
7. Click **OK**.

Execution Order

Execution Order is the order in which function blocks are executed in the control strategy. There is a separate execution order for each of the two available scan rates, Normal Scan and Fast Scan. Each function block within a given scan rate is assigned a relative Block Execution Order number. Blocks are executed in increasing order, with blocks having lower execution order numbers being executed before those with higher execution order numbers. The Block Execution Order of each block is shown as a number in the top right-hand corner of the block’s graphic on the function block diagram, as shown below.



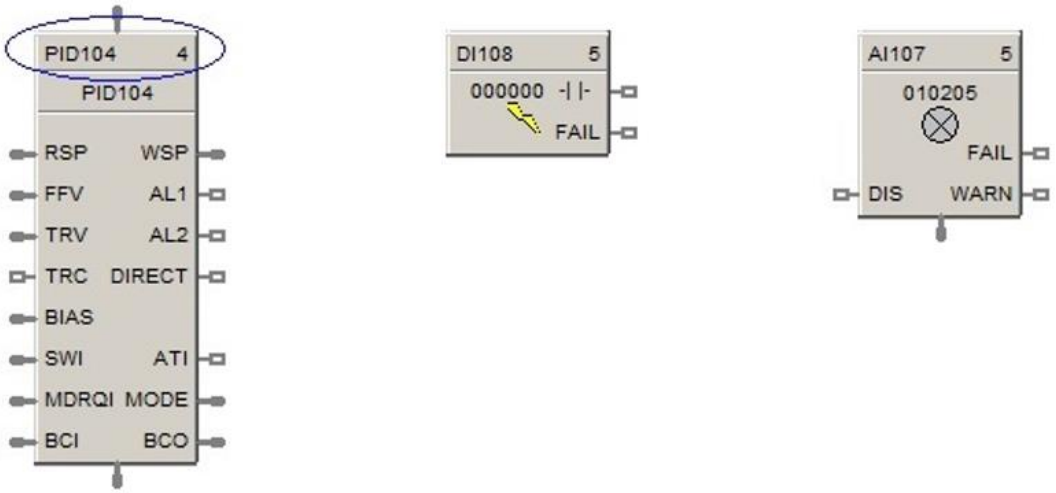
In the diagram above, both function blocks have an execution order of 4. This is allowed because the PID104 block is executing at the Normal Scan rate, whereas the QDT105 block is executing at the Fast Scan rate, as indicated by the **yellow lightning bolt** on the QDT134 graphic.

It should be noted that the Block Execution Order is independent of the Block Number. Both the Block Number and the Block Execution Order are assigned in the sequence in which they are programmed, however, the Block Number must be unique throughout all function blocks, while the Block Execution Order only needs to be unique throughout the function blocks in the same scan rate. The system remembers the last programmed Block Execution Order for both scan rates independently.

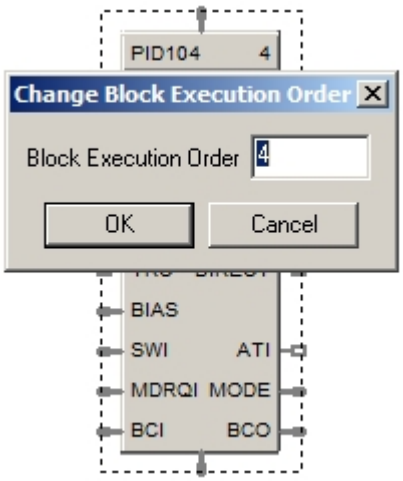
You can override the execution order determined by the system during programming. Block Numbers, on the other hand, cannot be reassigned. There are two ways to change the execution order; by assigning a specific Block Execution Order number to a single function block, or by changing the relative execution order of multiple function blocks.

Assigning a Block Execution Order

To change the Block Execution Order of a specific function block on a function block diagram, double-click in the top portion of the block's graphic where the Block Number and Block Execution Order are displayed (circled in the diagram below).

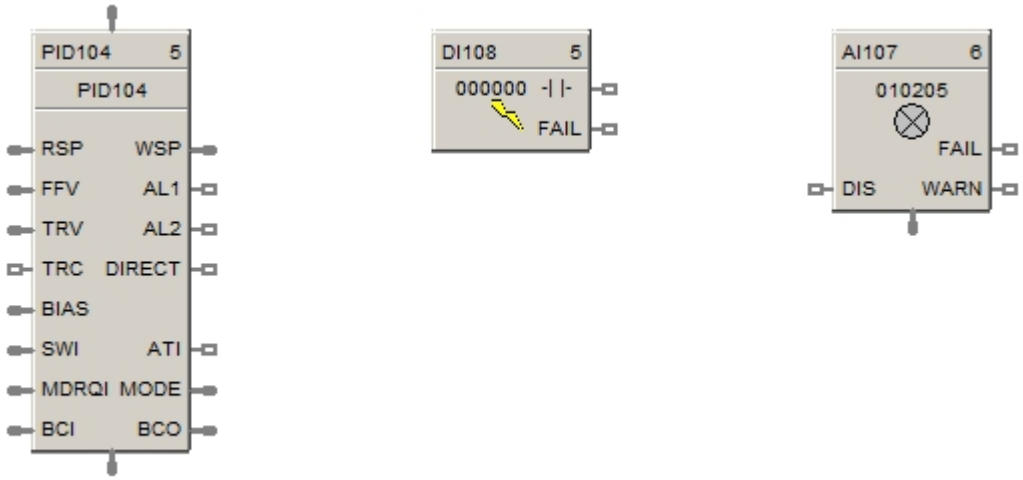


This action will display the Change Block Execution Order dialog on top of the function block graphic as shown below.



The block's execution order can be changed by entering a new number in the entry box and clicking on the OK button. You can increase or decrease the block's execution order to any value from 1 to 2100. If you enter a value outside this range an error message will be displayed.

When you click on the OK button the Block Execution Order of the selected function block is set to the new value. Any other function blocks in the same execution rate that have current execution orders equal to or greater than the new value will have their execution order incremented to retain uniqueness. For example, if the Block Execution Order of the PID104 block shown in the diagrams above is changed to 5, the Block Execution Order of the AI107 block will be incremented to 6, but the Block Execution Order of the DI108 block will remain at 5, as shown below.



When you change a block's execution order in this way, the previous execution order number is not reassigned to another block, but rather it is dropped from the list of used execution order numbers. This can leave gaps in the assigned execution order numbers. A similar situation occurs when a function block is deleted from a diagram. This does not create a problem for block execution, as it is the relative value of the execution order numbers that matter, not the absolute value. It does mean, however, that you can change the Block Execution Order number of a block without actually changing its true execution order if no other function block is assigned a number between the previous and new values.

Changing Relative Execution Order of Multiple Blocks

The relative execution order of one or more function blocks executing at either the Normal Scan or Fast Scan rates may be changed through the Function Block Execution Order dialog. This method has an advantage over the method described above, even for single function blocks, because the absolute values of the assigned execution order numbers does not have to be known and the function blocks from all function block diagrams are displayed together.

The Function Block Execution Order dialog can be accessed in a number of ways as described below. Note that while the same dialog is used to change the execution order of either the Normal Scan or Fast Scan function blocks, there are separate selection methods to pre-populate the dialog's list with the correct function blocks.

Edit Menu

1. Select **Edit** from the main application menu.
2. Select **Block and Tag Order** and activate sub-menu.
3. Select either **Block Execution Order…** or **Fast Block Execution Order…** to launch the Function Block Execution Order dialog.

Function Block Diagram Worksheet Toolbar

1. Click on the icon in the Worksheet Toolbar displayed above any Function Block Diagram Worksheet to activate the drop-down menu.
2. Select either **Block Execution Order…** or **Fast Block Execution Order…** to launch the Function Block Execution Order dialog.

Function Block Diagram Worksheet Context Menu

1. Right-click in any whitespace area of any Function Block Diagram Worksheet to activate the context menu.
2. Select either **Block Execution Order…** or **Fast Block Execution Order…** to launch the Function Block Execution Order dialog.

Function Block Graphic Context Menu

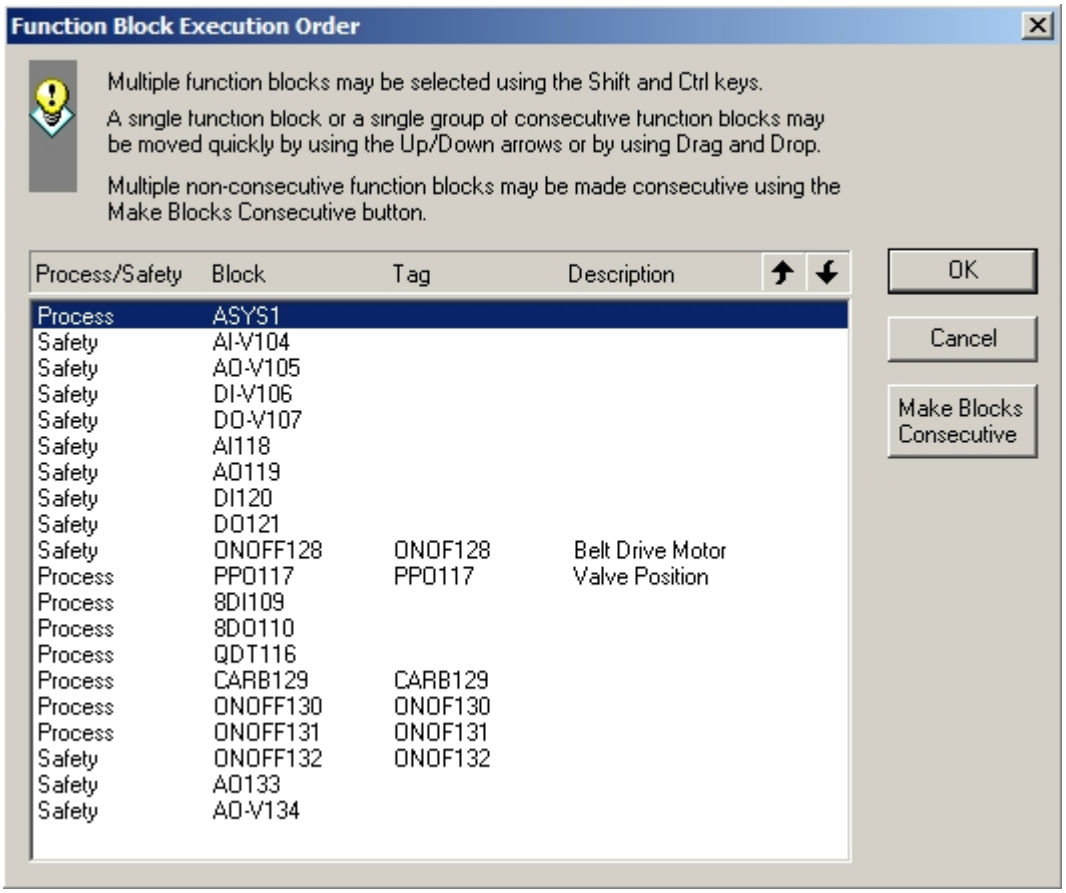
1. Right-click within the body portion of any normal scan or fast scan function block graphic (not the pins) to activate the context menu.
2. Select either **Block Execution Order…** or **Fast Block Execution Order…,** depending on which function block was selected in step 1, to launch the Function Block Execution Order dialog**.**

Worksheet Toolbox Context Menu

1. Click on the Process or Safety tab of the Worksheet Toolbox to display a browser view of the function blocks currently in use.
2. Expand the folder of one of the function block types used in the configuration.
3. Right-click on either the icon or name of any normal scan or fast scan rate function block to activate the context menu.
4. Select either **Block Execution Order…** or **Fast Block Execution Order…,** depending on which function block was selected in step 3, to launch the Function Block Execution Order dialog**.**

When one of the above actions is taken, the Function Block Execution Order dialog box is displayed, as shown below. The list box will be populated with all of the function blocks executing at the selected execution rate, Normal Scan or Fast Scan. If there are more function blocks that can be displayed in the list box a vertical scrollbar will be displayed.

- If the dialog is accessed through the function block graphic context menu or the worksheet toolbox context menu, the corresponding function block will be selected in the dialog.
- If the dialog is accessed through the edit menu, worksheet toolbar or the worksheet context menu and a function block has been selected on an active function block diagram worksheet, that function block will be selected in the dialog.
- Otherwise the first function box in the list will be selected in the dialog.



For controller configurations that support the SIL Safety standard, the function blocks in the Process and Safety segments of the control strategy share the two execution rate systems. As a result, there is no filtering of Process versus Safety function blocks in this dialog, but the location of the function block, either Process or Safety, is shown in the first column. **Note that for non SIL configurations there is no Safety portion, so the Process/Safety column shown in the figure above will not be present.**

The relative position of the function blocks shown in the dialog list box can be selected and manipulated in a number of ways.

Single Function Block:

- Select by clicking on that function block.
- Use the up and down arrows in the list box tile bar to reposition the function block one row at a time.
- Use Drag and Drop by clicking and holding on a block and dragging it to the desired location and releasing the mouse button. Dragging to the top or bottom of the list box bounds will cause the list to scroll if the scrollbar is visible.

Consecutive Function Blocks:

- Select first function block by clicking and then select the last function block while holding down the *Shift* key while clicking.
- Use the up and down arrows in the list box tile bar to reposition the group of function blocks one row at a time.

- Use Drag and Drop by clicking on one of the selected function blocks and holding and dragging it to the desired location and releasing the mouse button. Dragging to the top or bottom of the list box bounds will cause the list to scroll if the scrollbar is visible.

Non-Consecutive Function Blocks:

- Select the first function block or consecutive group of function blocks as indicated above. Add additional function blocks by holding down the *Ctrl* key while clicking.
- Make all of the selected function blocks have a consecutive execution order, starting with the position of the first selected function block, by clicking on the **Make Blocks Consecutive** button.
- **Note that neither the Up and Down arrows in the list box title bar or Drag and Drop work with this selection method.**

When all function blocks have been repositioned, click on the **OK** button to enforce the new execution order, or click on the **Cancel** button to revert back to the existing execution order. When the new execution order is enforced, the new Block Execution Order numbers will be assigned consecutively starting from 1, so any previous gaps in the execution order numbers will be eliminated.

See also "Tag Order"

Event Details

The **Event Details** dialog box enables you to enter details for the tag selected when you configure events. The block number and output number are listed across the banner. The Tag name and tag descriptor is listed in field below the banner.

Events do not have multiple priorities like alarms. They are considered a lower priority than alarms.

Details include:

E Mail Notification of events on a point by point basis. (Check the box to allow Email notification*)* The E-mail will be sent:
- if an event occurs on a point configured to send E-mail.
- to any/all of the 3 E-mail addresses that have events assigned. **Event priorities** are always indicated as "1"

Store to OI Archive List -OI Event File on the data archive disk on an event by event basis

Display on OI - presentation on OI Status line and Event Summary display

Trigger Direction – ON – Event on rising edge (Off-to-on transition)

OFF – Event on falling edge (off-to-on transition).

(click on radio button to select)

E-Mail Notification

opens the **E-Mail Notification** dialog box. It lets you configure up to three E-Mail addresses per controller configuration for Alarm and Event notification.

There are two tabs on the dialog Box.

General Tab

FROM The ***Controller name*** is configured by the builder of the Configuration file [Read Only]

SUBJECT Enter an Event Subject (up to 31 characters)
Enter an Alarm Subject (up to 31 characters)

Note: *Not configuring 'Subject' will cause system to send E-mail with default subject.*

To List Tab -

Enter up to 3 configurable E-Mail addresses (32 characters per address).
For each Email address check the Alarm/Event priorities you want the E-mail address to receive.

Events do not have multiple priorities like alarms because they are considered at a priority lower than all alarms.

Alarm priorities were set during "Alarm Group Configuration" under "Alarm Details"
2 = Low Priority Alarm
3 = Medium Priority Alarm
4 = High Priority Alarms
5 = Emergency Alarm

The priority of an event is always indicated as "1" - (see Event Configuration)

Attention: See "Set Controller Network Parameters" and follow the wizard to set up a SMTP mail server IP Address.

Examples:

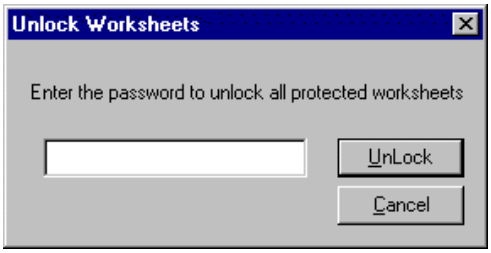
Somebody@somewhere.com receives ***only priority 5 Alarms***
(only the check box for "5" is checked

Aperson@somewhere.com receives ***all Alarms and Events***
(all 5 boxes are checked)

People@somewhere.com receives ***only Events***
(only check box for "1" is checked)

Unlock the Worksheets

opens the "Unlock Worksheets" dialog box.



Enter the password in the field and then, press "UNLOCK".

11. Library Functionality

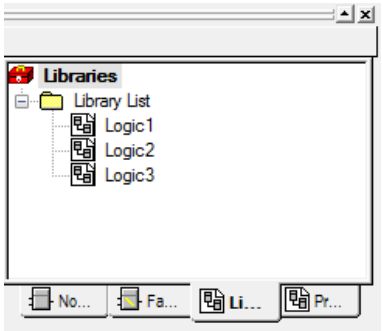
This functionality helps to export a group of the control logic and thereby save to a location. These groups can be imported in the worksheet whenever required. This saves time spent in recreating the control logics again. It is easy to share and reuse by other users via the designer software.

This functionality provides two features:

- Export Library
- Import Library

To export control logic group:

1. Open a cde file.
2. Select a portion of the control logic. To do this, left-click and drag over the area that you want to export. The items under the selected area are highlighted by dotted line.
3. Right-click on the selected area and click **Export Library**.
   *NOTE: Right-click a function block and click **Export Library***.
4. Type a name for the library and click **Save**. The library file is saved with file extension as "dlf". The newly add library is added to the Library pane.



NOTE: Do not delete the library file from the computer. It cannot be recovered.

To import control logic group:

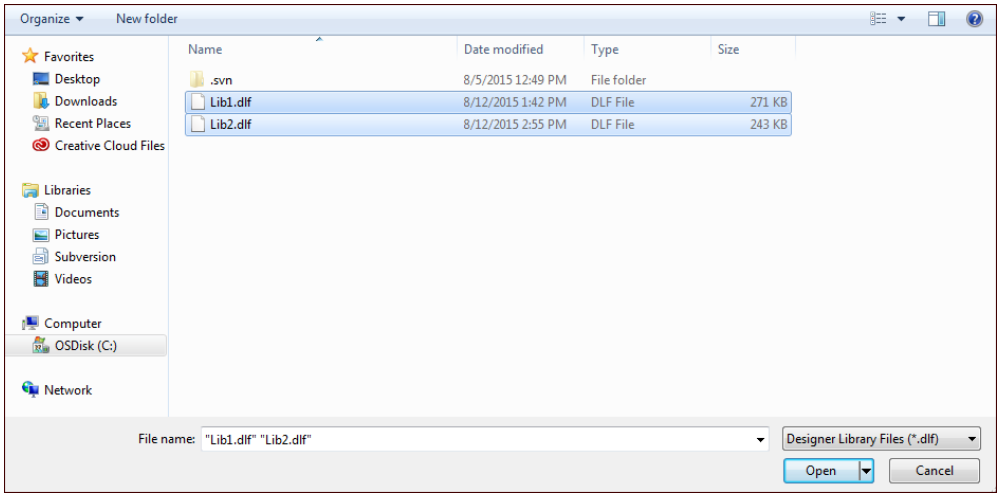
1. Open a cde file.
2. Right-click in the worksheet area and click **Import Library**. Locate the library file and click **Open**. Or Click the Library page and drag a library file to the worksheet.

   The Change Item Name window appears.
3. Click **Apply** to directly copy the library object without any changes. *NOTE: The behavior of paste special functionality changes for certain items*. See Special_cases_of_paste_special_functionality.

To remove library file:

1. Click the **Library** tab.
2. Right-click the library file that you want to remove and click **Remove Library**. This removes the file from the library. However, this file can be recovered as they are not deleted from the local system.

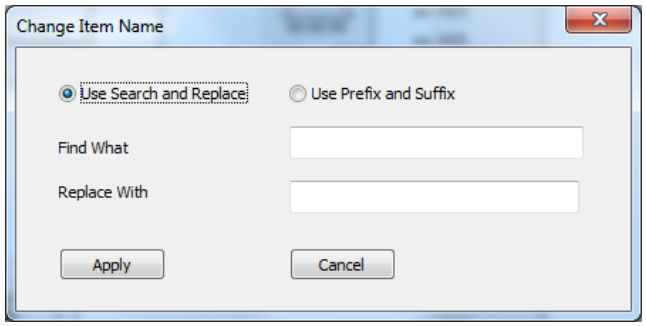
   To add the library files again, right-click **Libraries** and click **Add Library**. Select the file (s) and click **Open**. The files are added to the library.



*NOTE: To select multiple files, hold the **SHIFT** button and select the library files.*

Change Item Name

This window allows finding and replacing any text and adding prefix and suffix to the item names. This helps to maintain uniqueness across the item names.

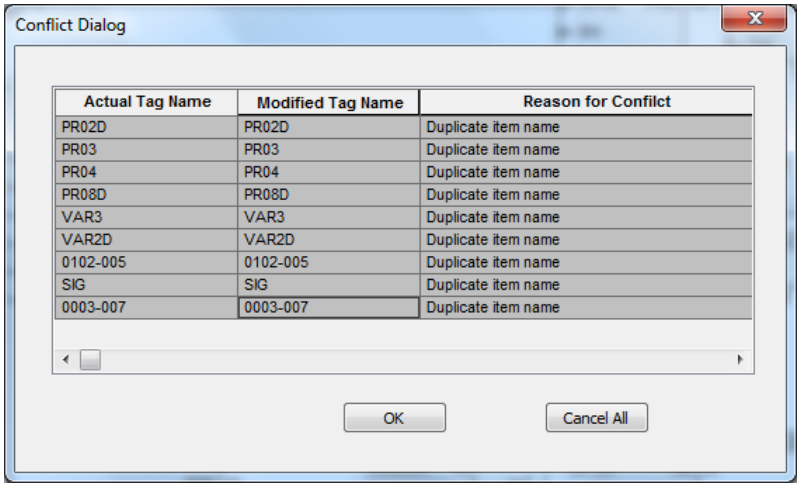


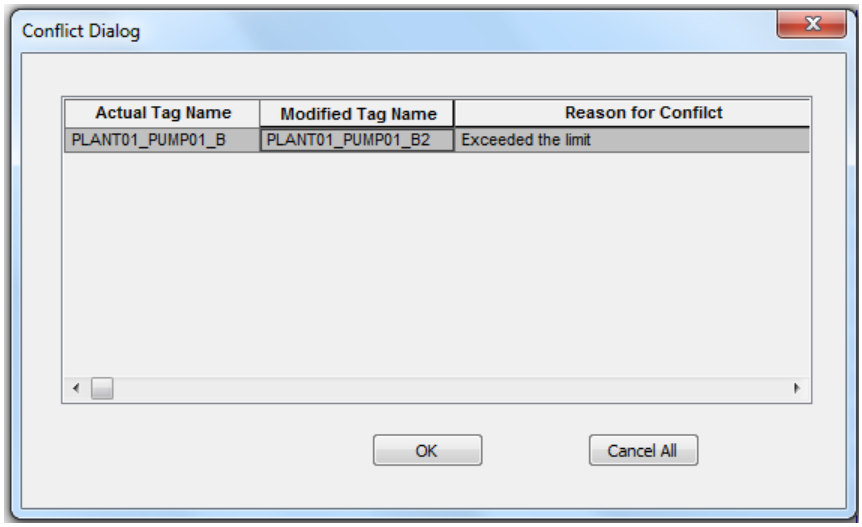
To change the item name:

1. Select one of the following:
    - **Use Search and Replace**: Used to find the tag name of the variable, signal tag, page connector, or function block and replace with a new name.
    - **Use Prefix and Suffix**: Appends the strings as prefix and suffix to the tag name of the variable, signal tag, page connector, or function block and replace with a new name.
2. Click **Apply** to implement the changes.

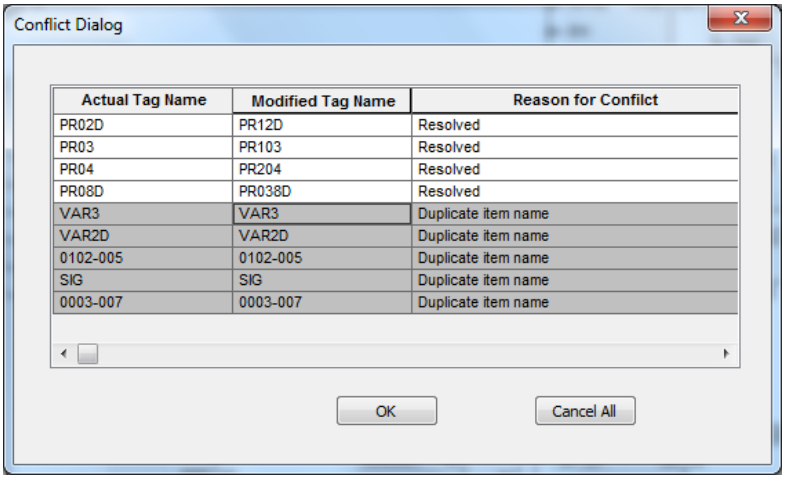
Tag Name Conflicts

There can be conflicts if the names are not unique or if the tag name length exceeds the maximum limit (8 characters for page connectors and 32 characters for other items).





It is mandatory to resolve all the conflicts to continue with the further tasks. The **Actual Tag Name** (read only) column provides the present tag name. The **Reason for Conflict** (read only) column describes the cause for conflict. The **Modified Tag Name** (read/write) column allows you to provide a new tag name. The tool verifies for uniqueness and updates the **Reason for Conflict** column.



Special cases of paste special functionality

The following table provides the result of paste special functionality for certain items.

Item Name	Operation	Result After Paste Special
Write Variable	Copy the write variable and its associated variable.	Linkage between newly created variable and write variable is maintained
	Copies the write variable.	Linkage is lost. That is variable number of write variable shall be zero
Write Constant	Copies the write constant and its associated function block.	Linkage between newly created function block and write constant is maintained.
	Copies the write variable.	Linkage is lost. That is the target block number of write constant shall be zero
Read Constants	Copies the read constants and its associated function block.	Linkage between newly created function block and read constant is maintained.
	Copies the write variable	Linkage is lost. That is block number of read constant is zero.
Write Tune Constant	Copies the write tune constant and its associated function block.	Linkage between newly created function block and write tune constant is maintained.
	Copies the write tune constant.	Linkage is lost. That is the target block number of write tune constant is zero.
Connectors	Creates the signal tag and connector associated to signal tag in the process sheet. Performs cut operation on the connector and performs paste special in the Safety Sheet.	Error message is displayed as connectors of safety sheet should not have the associated signal tags in the process sheet.
	Creates the signal tag and connector associated to page connector in the process sheet Performs cut operation on the connector and performs paste special in the safety sheet.	Error message is displayed as connectors of safety sheet should not have the associated page connectors in the process sheet.

12. Function Blocks Overview

Function Block Definition

A Function Block is a unit of software that performs a set of operations on its *Input Signals* and *Function Block* parameters and produces *Output Signals.* These output signals can be configured as inputs to other blocks, whose output parameters can be configured as inputs to other function blocks, and so on. By configuring and connecting all the desired input signals and function block parameters, you develop control strategies for both analog and digital operations.

A function block may represent a physical input or output, several inputs or outputs, an internal calculation or an internal function such as a PID algorithm. Block numbers 1-100 are reserved for specific status blocks.

Function Block Identification

Each Function Block has a type identification label of up to 5 characters assigned by during configuration. The label is an abbreviation for the operation or algorithm that the block performs and indicates the block number assigned.

Function Block Inputs and Outputs

Inputs

Function Block Inputs must be connected to a signal source. Valid sources to a function block input parameter are:

- Signal Tags
- Variables
- Soft Wires
- Constants
- Page connectors

Inputs enter the block from the top or left-hand side.

Note that unconnected inputs will default to 0 or OFF.

Outputs

Function Block Outputs are signals that reflect the results of a function block's execution.

Outputs can be connected to any number of function block inputs including inputs on the same block, but, they *cannot* be connected to:

- An output of another block,
- A variable or constant,
- An internal system value from system status block.

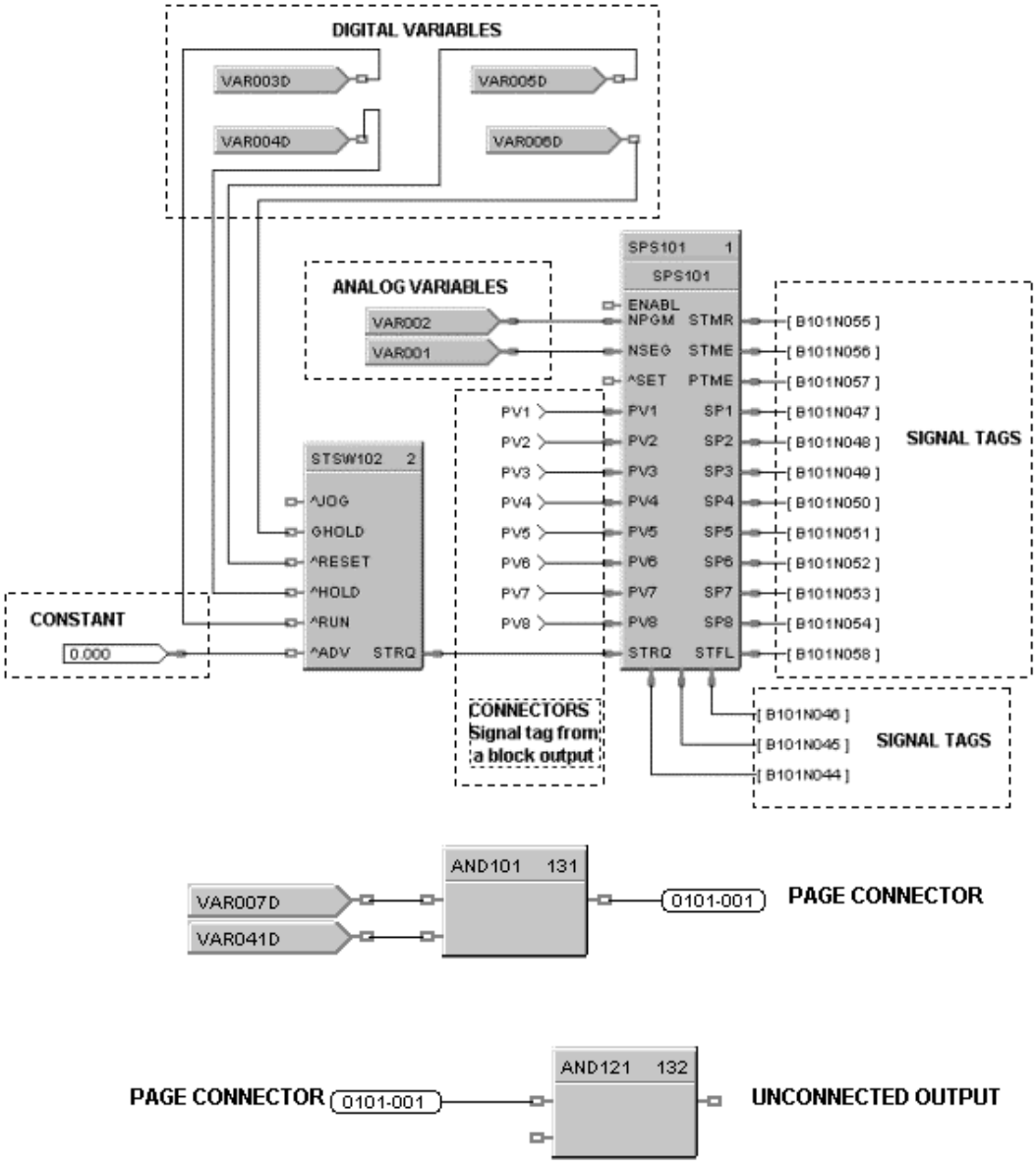
Outputs exit the block as straight lines from the bottom or right-hand side.

Note that unused outputs can be left unconnected.

Attention

As shown on the function block example below, there is a visual distinction between analog and digital pins,

Analog Inputs and Outputs are indicated by a solid pin and Digital Inputs and Outputs are indicated by a hollow pin.



Types of Function Blocks

Function blocks come in three main classes.

Input

These process the physical inputs from the controller. Examples are Analog Input, Digital Input. They are the first stage in the controller's configuration.

Calculations and logic

These process the data from the input blocks and perform arithmetic, logic and sequencing operations. Examples are PID, Setpoint Programmer, AND, Math, etc. They are the middle stage of the controller's configuration.

Output

These process the data from the calculations and logic blocks and are the link with the physical outputs of the controller. The Analog output and Digital output function blocks convert this output information into a voltage or current, which is fed to the corresponding output hardware (such as a current output or relay).

Overview

Function blocks are graphic representations of instrument-like functions

- They are accessible through the Worksheet Toolbox on the Designer Main Window.
- They have inputs and/or outputs for connections to other blocks or functions, as applicable.
- Each function block is assigned a unique number from 101 to 500(CPU C30), 101 to 2100(CPU C50), 101 to 5100 (CPU C70/C70R/C75)

Note: Some blocks have reserved block numbers from 1 to 100

Memory usage

The amount of memory used depends on the type of block. For capacities, File Properties, Statistics.

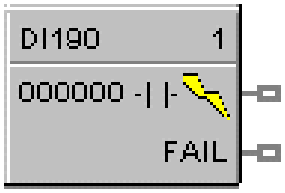
Function Block Attributes

1. Blocks have a rectangular graphic form, which varies in size depending on number of inputs and outputs that the block possesses. The block type determines the type of operation or algorithm that the block performs.
2. Each block has type identification label of up to five characters. The label is an abbreviation for the operation or algorithm that the block performs. Each block has a number to uniquely identify the function block. A few blocks have reserved block numbers.
3. Block numbers from 101 to 500(CPU C30), 101 to 2100(CPU C50), 101 to 5100 (CPU C70/C70R/C75) are assigned in the sequence that they are programmed. This is the Block ID number. During controller operation, control blocks are executed in numerical order; lowest numbered blocks are executed first unless you change the execution order.

4. Loops, Setpoint programmers, Setpoint Schedulers, Sequencers have unique user-assigned tag names. They are used to identify values for operator displays. Note that tag names are automatically displayed in capital letters.
5. Pin labels help identify block's secondary inputs and outputs.
6. Block outputs can be labeled with a "Signal Tag Name (Right click on the Output pin to drop a signal tag symbol). Signal point names are used to display value/state of block output signals on operator displays.
7. Many blocks have configuration parameters to tailor operation to control requirements at hand.
8. Outputs exit block as straight lines from bottom or right-hand side. Outputs can be connected to any number of control block inputs, but, they cannot be connected to:
    - an output of another block,
    - a named variable, or
    - a constant. Note that unused outputs can be left unconnected.
9. Inputs enter block as arrows from top or left-hand side. Inputs can be from:
    - An output of another block (soft wire),
    - A named variable (values that can be changed from the Operator Interface (max-150)) (Right click on Input pin to drop a variable)
    - A connector that references a signal tag or page connector (Right click on Input pin to drop a connector)
    - A constant that references a signal tag (Right click on Input pin to drop a constant) Note that unconnected inputs will default to 0 or OFF.
10. There is a visual distinction between analog and digital pins,
    Analog Inputs and Outputs are indicated by a solid pin and
    Digital Inputs and Outputs are indicated by a hollow pin.
11. A Digital pin without the ^ symbol indicates it is level sensitive. The pin is ON when its source signal is ON, OFF when source signal is OFF.A digital pin with the ^ symbol indicates it is rising edge sensitive. The pin is ON after its source signal changes from OFF to ON. Examples:
    HOLD is level sensitive ^RST is rising edge sensitive
12. Each I/O block corresponds to a physical address in a rack. That address (rack, module, channel) is shown at the top of the block.

Fast Scan Indicator

The Fast Scan Indicator is a yellow lightning bolt that has been placed somewhere on the face of the function block. See the example below.



ATTENTION

For information on update rates for these blocks, refer to the "Fast Scan Function Blocks".

13. Using Function Blocks to Build a Control /Safety Strategy

Before You Start

The Designer software operates on a PC, independently from the controller hardware, until after the configuration is completed and downloaded. For this reason, you must identify the hardware that will be used in the controller so that the configuration constructed will match the intended I/O quantity and location in the controller.

There are two basic methods to begin configuring the controller:

1. Start with the physical I/O requirements of the controller
   Identify the I/O
   Configure the I/O blocks
   Download and test the I/O first, then
   Configure the Control /Safety Strategy, or
2. Start with the Control /Safety Strategy
   Drop the I/O blocks as needed but leave the physical address 0.0.0
   Download and debug the strategy, then
   Configure the physical I/O addresses.

You can use some combination of these 2 methods, the Designer and Controller is flexible and will accommodate either approach.

See "Rack, Module, and Channel Assignments".

General Steps to Build a Control /Safety Strategy

Introduction

Configuration is the process of creating/editing a Control /Safety Strategy, best suited for your application, using Function Blocks, Variables, and Constants; Operator Interface Display assignments, Setpoint Programs, Schedules, Sequencers, and Recipes; Data Storage, Alarm and Event configuration. The configuration is essential to the controller, since it defines your control strategies and operational displays.

Following are the steps of the configuration process as determined by the tasks required.

Develop the Control/Safety Strategy using Function Block Worksheets

Step	Task
1	Select the Function Blocks, Variables, and Constants needed to meet the control /safety strategy requirements.
2	Soft-wire the outputs to the inputs.
3	Assign signal tags to block outputs needed on displays.
4	Enter annotations as needed on the diagram.
5	Configure the function block parameters needed to define the operating characteristics.
6	Configure the Execution Order.
7	Configure Setpoint Profiles, Setpoint Schedules, Sequencers, and Recipes.
8	Configure the Alarms and Events.
9	Save the Configuration File.
10	Download the Configuration File.

Develop the Operator Interface and Data Storage using the Display Worksheet (Legacy controllers V 4.3 and older)

Step	Task
1	Configure the Display Tag Groups.
2	Configure the Alarms and Events.
3	Configure the Display Buttons for the Operator Interface.
4	Configure the Start Up and Message Displays.
5	Configure Operator Interface Settings.
6	Configure Data Storage
7	Save the Configuration File
8	Download a Control Strategy

Notes

You can initiate a print out of your control strategy whenever you want to assist you in configuring.

The above is a general approach to building a control strategy. One of the benefits of this product is its flexibility and integration. You can develop some I/O, Control Displays, then download and repeat.

Adding, Moving, Deleting Function Blocks to a FBD

Adding

Drag and drop a function block symbol in the Worksheet Toolbox tree to the function block diagram. The Function block will appear on the Function Block Diagram for configuration.

Selecting a drawing item

To select a drawing item, either click on it (Shift-Click to add an existing selection) or capture it in a selection net.

Auto-scrolling to select offscreen items

Click and drag the mouse to the window’s edges to automatically scroll to offscreen items.

Manipulating a drawing item

To form a selection net, press the left mouse button on an empty area of the drawing and drag the mouse to form a visible dotted rectangle	
Release the mouse button. Everything entirely within the rectangle is selected and highlighted.	

Drawing Conventions

To delete a selected item, press the DELETE key or right-click on the item and select DELETE.

To ***move*** a selected item, press the left mouse button on an already selected item and drag the selection to the desired location on the function block diagram.

To ***copy*** a selected item, use the CUT, COPY, and PASTE functions on the EDIT menu or Toolbar or right-click on the item and select the desired menu item.

To ***abort*** a move operation, press the ESCAPE key before releasing the mouse.

Function Block Changes

If a function block is ***deleted***, Designer does not re-use the block number.

If a function block is ***added***, Designer uses the highest current block number + 1.

Restrictions:
When a configuration uses the last block number (500 or 2100) and you try to add another block, Designer will prompt you to "de-fragment" the table and recover previously deleted blocks. ***The next configuration download to the controller following the defragmentation process requires a Cold Start.***

Connecting/Disconnecting Blocks

Introduction

A control strategy is created by connecting function blocks to each other -(Softwiring).

Connecting

To connect two blocks, you must softwire a block's output pin to the other block's input pin (or vice versa).

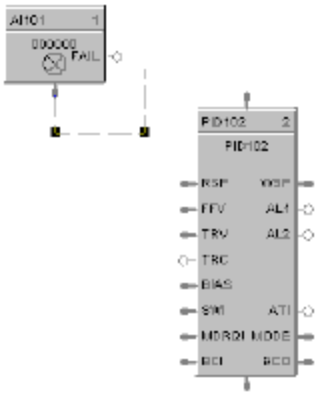
CAUTION

In pre-2.0 configurations, if a function block is (inadvertently) placed on top of another block with pins touching, wires connected to the touching pins may follow the wrong block, when the block again moves. In other words, the connections you see may not be the connections you actually get.

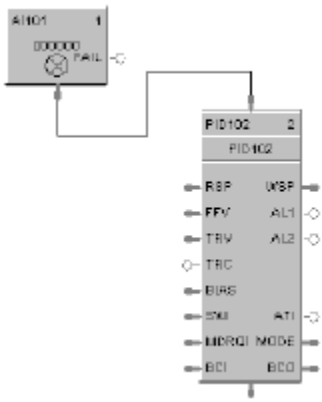
SOLUTION: Place drawing items so their boundaries do not touch or overlap. When moving drawing items groups, release the group over empty diagram space.

The outputs are always on the right or bottom of blocks; inputs are always on the top or left of the blocks.

Double click at the end of a block's output (or input) pin. A single segment wire will adopt a straight or "L" shaped route.



You can click anywhere on the drawing to make a wire vertex and continue to either another vertex or a block pin.



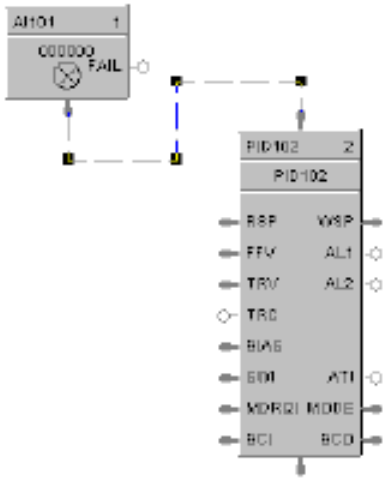
A wire can have up to eight vertices including endpoints.

You can connect two or more wires to the same output pin.

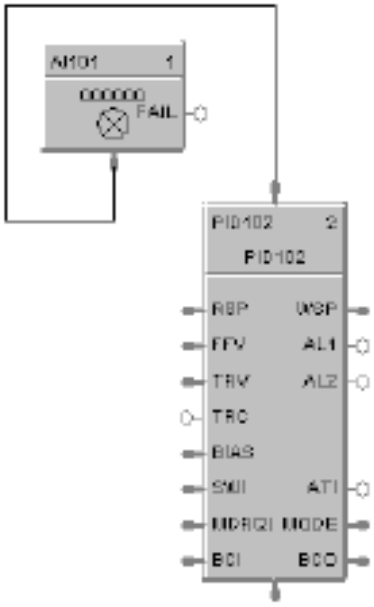
Repositioning

To reposition an existing wire:

Click on the end point of the wire to be repositioned. It will be highlighted in a dotted line showing each vertex.



Click on a vertex and drag into the new position and release



NOTE: A single "L" shaped wire cannot be repositioned. If you must alter the routing, delete the wire and add one with a vertex.

Disconnecting

To disconnect an existing wire:

Click on the end point of the wire to be deleted. The wire is highlighted.

Pull down the "EDIT" menu and select "Delete", or press the DELETE key.

NOTE: A single "L" shaped wire cannot be repositioned. If you must alter the routing, delete the wire and add one with a vertex.

See also

Wire nodes

Adding a Variable

There are two types of variables; Analog and Digital.

Procedure

Right-click on an Input pin and select "Drop Analog Variable" or "Drop Digital Variable" from the dropdown list

OR

From the Worksheet Toolbox group "Other Items", drag and drop the Variable symbol to the function block diagram.

The Variable symbol will appear on the Function Block Diagram for configuration.

Analog Variable

Double click on the symbol to open its properties dialog box. Enter:

Name and Descriptor

Decimal Places (1-5)

Engineering Units

Decimal Places

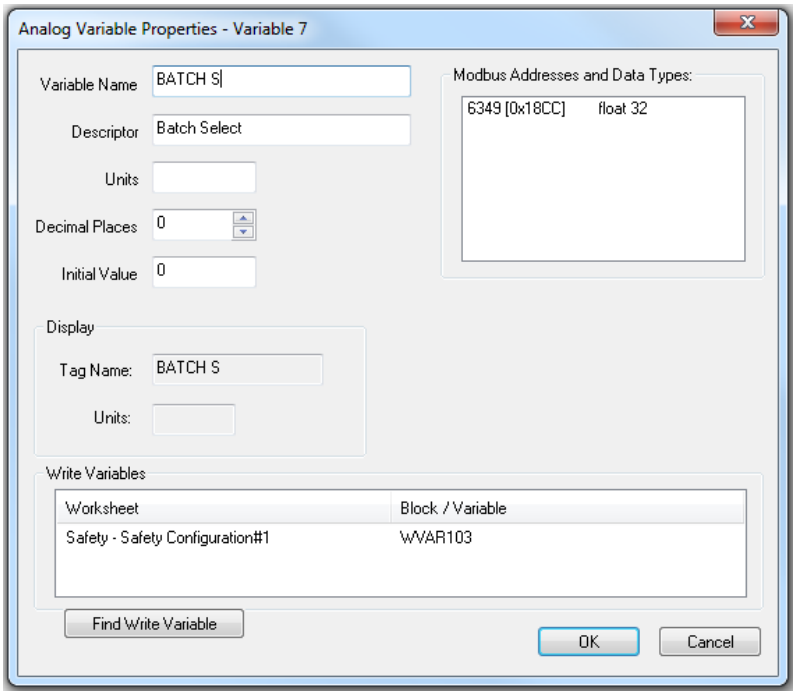
Initial Value

Non-Safety Critical Selection. This must ONLY be enabled for variables that need to be opened to the process worksheet and must be restricted to non-critical safety use.

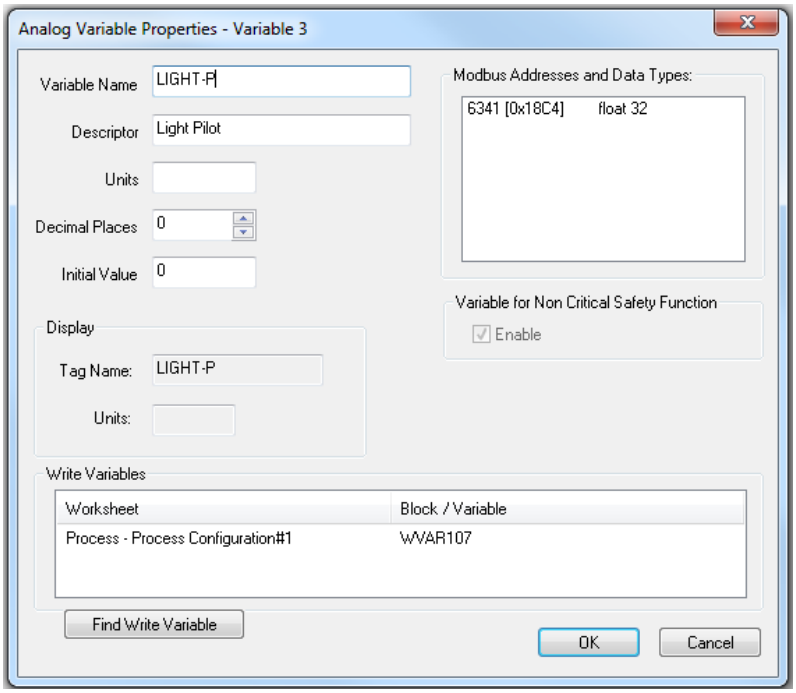
Also displayed is the item's default Modbus address and data type, followed by any user-defined addresses.

WVAR function blocks assigned to the variable are shown in the Write variable window section. when a Write Variable is selected the "Find Write Variable" button changes the worksheet focus locating the WVAR block assigned in the configuration. Further edits can be made if required and the new focus retained by selecting the "OK" button or return to the variable worksheet focus by selecting the "Cancel" button. Variables placed in the safety worksheet can be enabled for non-critical safety functions by checking ENABLE for non-critical safety function check box. Setting this check box allows the variable to be configured in the Process worksheets Write Variable function block. Variables placed on the safety worksheet must be restricted to Non-critical safety functions when enabled for data transfer from the process worksheet. Non-critical safety functions are defined in the safety manual 51-52-25-153.

Note: To maintain Variables to associated WVAR function block during configuration edits WVAR function blocks associated with the variable will default to no assignment when the associated variable has been deleted. The WVAR function block assignment must then be reestablished with the proper variable. Additionally once the WVAR to variable connection is assigned the Enable check box in the Variable configuration window is grayed out; to disable the WVAR function assignment needs to be cleared.



Analog Variable Properties on Process Worksheet



Analog Variable on Safety Worksheet

Digital Variable

Double click on the symbol to open its properties dialog box. Enter:

Tag Name and Descriptor

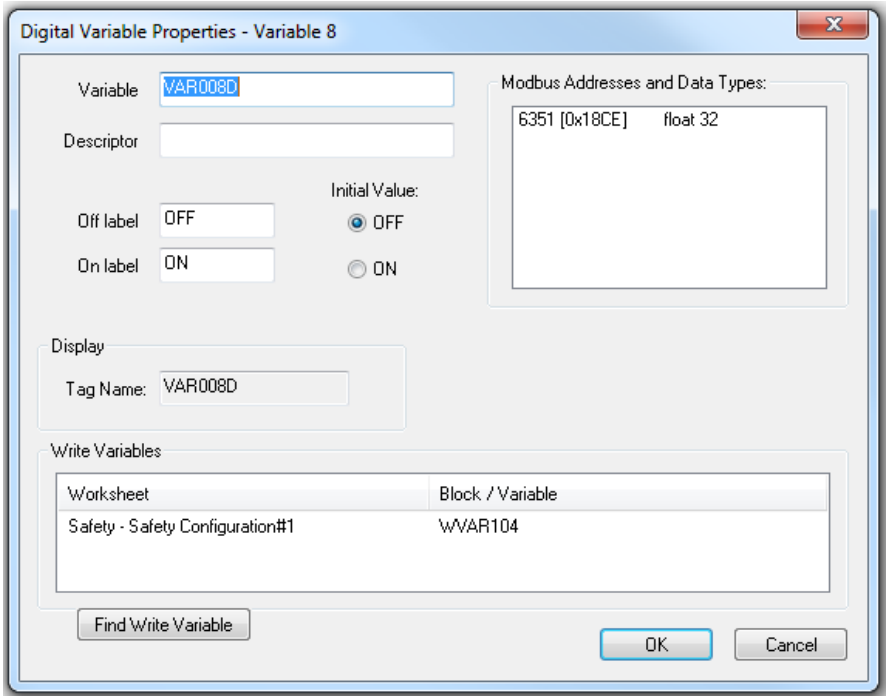
Off Label

On Label

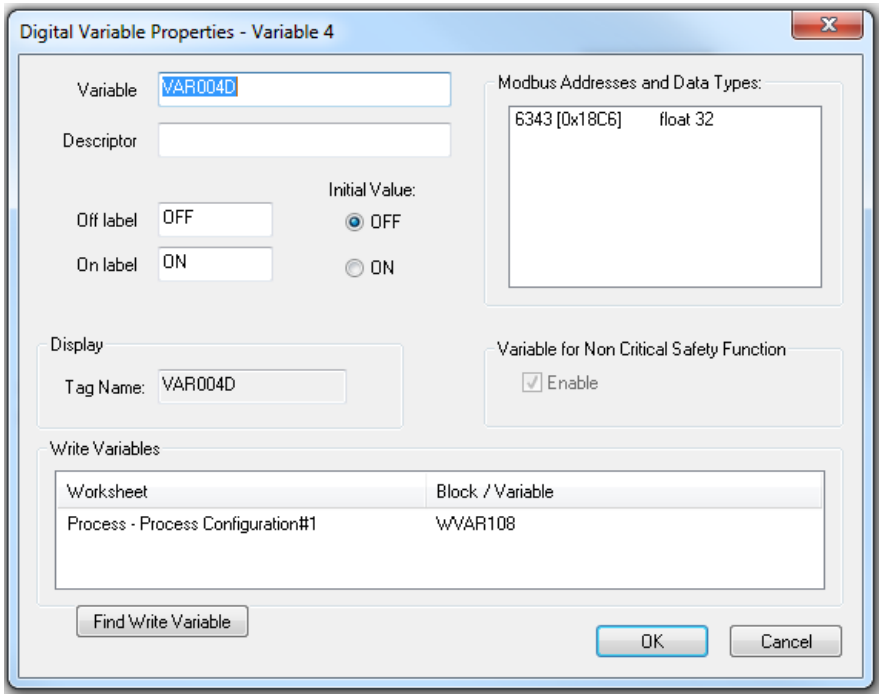
Initial Value (Off or ON)

Non-Safety Critical Selection This must ONLY be enabled for variables that need to be opened to the Process worksheet and restricted to non-critical functions as described in the ControlEdge HC900 Safety Manual 51-52-25-153.

Also displayed is the item's default Modbus address and data type, followed by any user-defined addresses.



Digital Variable Properties on Process Worksheet



Digital Variable on Safety Worksheet

After a WVAR function block has been connected to the variable on the safety worksheet the Enable check box is grayed out so the connection cannot be broken. To break the connect remover the assignment from the associated WVAR function block(s).

Adding a Numeric Constant

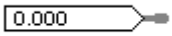
Procedure

Right-click on an Input pin and select "Drop Constant" from the drop-down list

OR

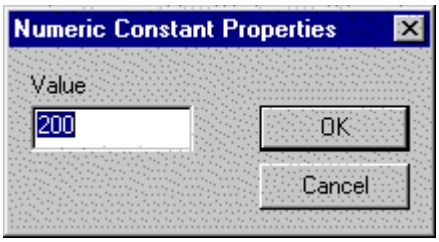
From the Worksheet Toolbox group "Other Items", drag and drop the Numeric Constant symbol to the function block diagram.

The Constant symbol will appear on the Function Block Diagram for configuration.



Numeric Constant **symbol**

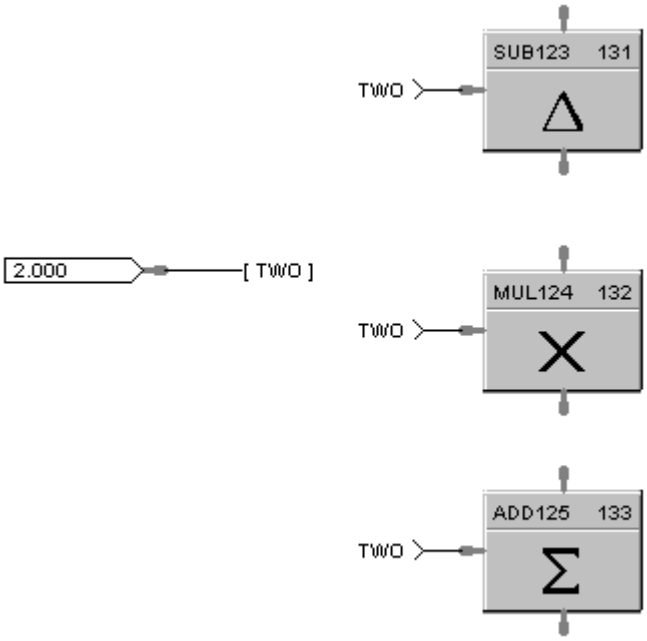
Double click on the symbol to open its dialog box. Enter Numeric Constant value.



Click "OK".

Hint

To save the number of numeric constants used when a given constant is used more than once, connect a signal tag to the output pin of the constant and use a connector object as the input pins of the appropriate blocks.



Adding a Connector

Procedure

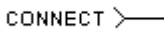
Right-click on an Input pin and select "Connector" from the drop-down list

OR

From the Worksheet Toolbox group "Other Items", drag and drop the Connector symbol to the function block diagram.

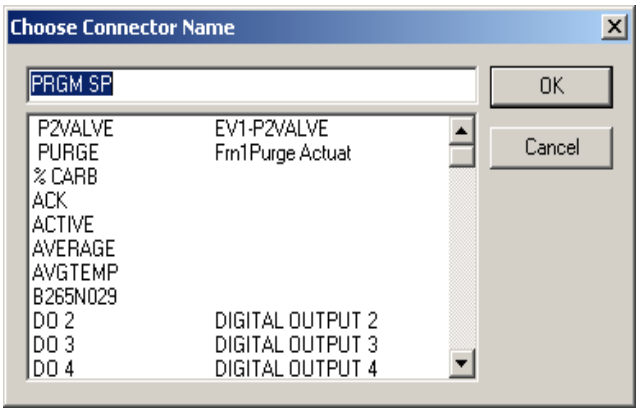
The Connector symbol will appear on the Function Block Diagram for configuration.

Connector **symbol**



Double click on the symbol to open its dialog box. Enter:

Connector Name



Click "OK".

Variables

A variable is a named diagram item, capable of holding a single analog or digital value. The value can be connected to function block inputs with a softwire. The value can be changed through any of the following:

- Entry at the Operator Interface
- Loaded through a recipe
  Either at the operator interface or programmed in the control strategy using a recipe load block.
- Over a communications link from a peer controller or from a supervisor host.
- Variables on the safety worksheet may only be changed in the RUN/Program operation mode unless enabled as non-critical safety function. Safety variables that are enabled may then be updated with writes to the associated WVAR function block on the process worksheet.

Wire Nodes

Note: The Wire Node feature is available only in configurations for ControlEdge HC900 C30/C50 revision 2.0x and higher.

Introduction

A wire node lets you distribute an output signal to multiple input pins. The wire node has 4 pins; any one pin can be connected to an output signal (this action defines the pin as the input pin of the wire node and the pin is marked with an arrow head), the other three pins of the wire node are then automatically defined as output pins and can be connected to input pins of function blocks or other wire nodes. Note that multiple soft wires can be connected to each of the three output pins of the wire node, so you can distribute an output signal to more than three input pins on function blocks or other wire nodes using just one wire node. Also note that you can wire an input connector to the input pin of a wire node. This input connector can refer to either a signal tag or a page connector. This is useful if you want to distribute a signal on one page or worksheet to multiple places on another page or worksheet."

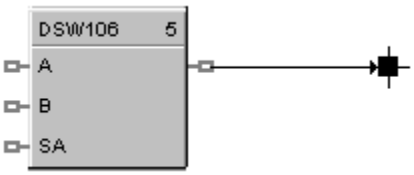
Procedure

Right-click on white space in your function block diagram and select "Drop Other Items…, Wire Node"

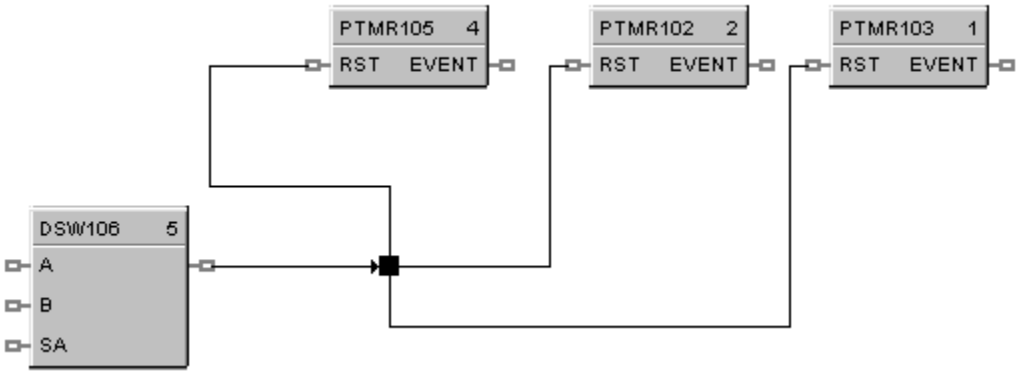
OR

From the Worksheet Toolbox group "**Other Items**", drag and drop the Wire Node symbol to a blank spot on the controller configuration.

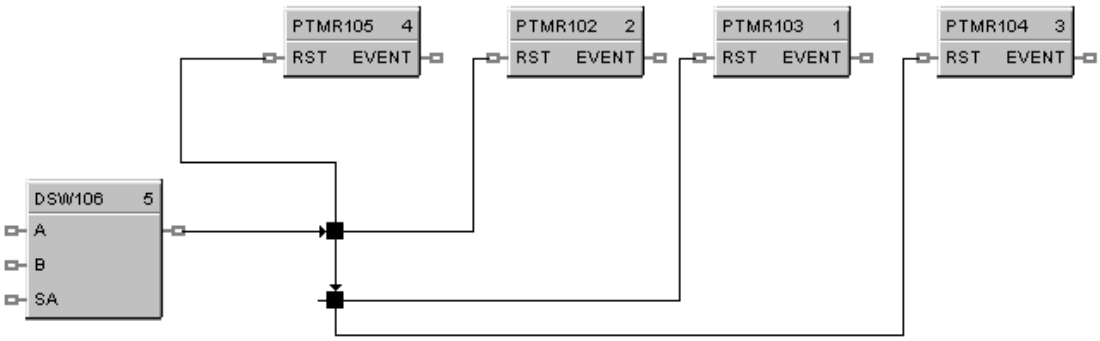
Double-click any pin on the wire node, then click on the output signal you want. You can also double-click on the output signal first and then click on any pin on the wire node. An arrow appears showing logic flow direction. You can connect the input pin of a wire node to an output signal of a block, variable, signal connector, or numeric constant but not to a signal tag or page connector.



Double-click on any remaining wire node pin, then click on the desired input pin to complete the connection. Repeat for the remaining wire node pins.



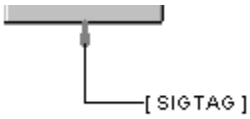
If you need an output signal to go to more than 3 inputs, use additional wire nodes. You may use any number of output pins of a wire node.



Loop-backs are allowed.

You can drag a wire node without breaking its connections.

Signal Tags



Introduction

Signal tags are users assigned names that can be associated with the output of any item. They can be:

- Assigned to displays
- Used to connect discontinuous wires to other block inputs using connectors in the same or in another FBD Worksheet.
- Assigned to Data Storage
- Used for Peer-to-Peer communication between multiple-networked controllers using Modbus communications.
- To identify important block output pins for monitoring.

Procedure

Right-click on an Output pin and select "Signal Tag". Drops the signal tag down and automatically connects it to the pin. Skip to Step 4.

OR

From the Worksheet Toolbox "**Other Items**", drag and drop the Signal Tag symbol to the controller configuration

OR

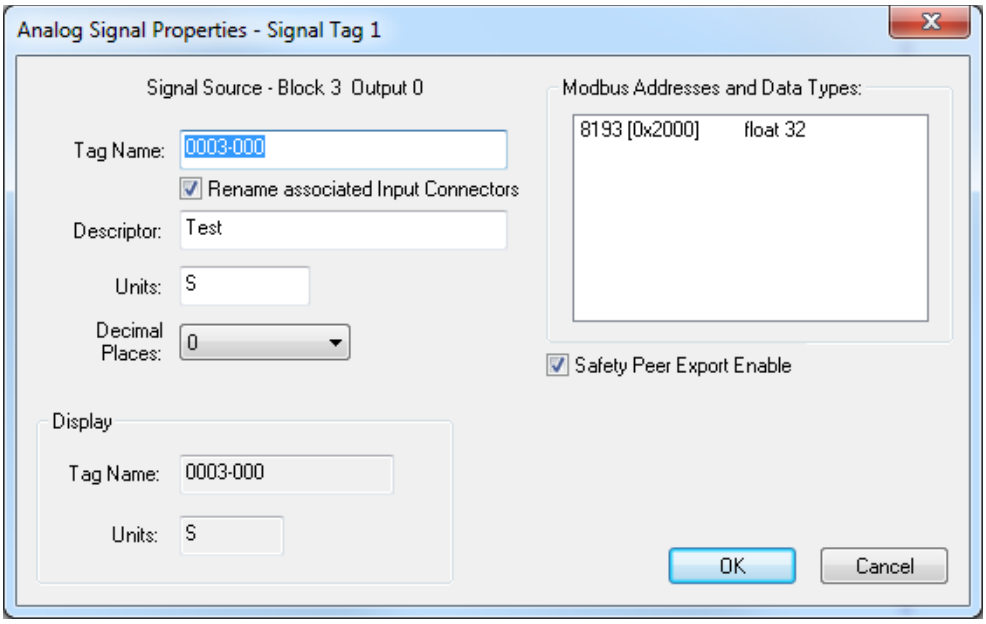
Right-click on white space in your function block diagram and select "Drop Other Items…, Signal Tag".

The Signal Tag symbol will appear on the Controller configuration and **the cursor will change to the softwire cursor**.
Attention: *You cannot drop a signal tag directly onto an output pin. Drop it away from the pin, then softwire it to the pin. Once it is connected, you can move the signal tag to any location.*

Place the crosshairs on the output pin and click to connect the tag to the output (dotted Line). You can add vertices like a softwire.

Double click on the tag name area to display the signal properties dialog box.

Analog Signal Tag

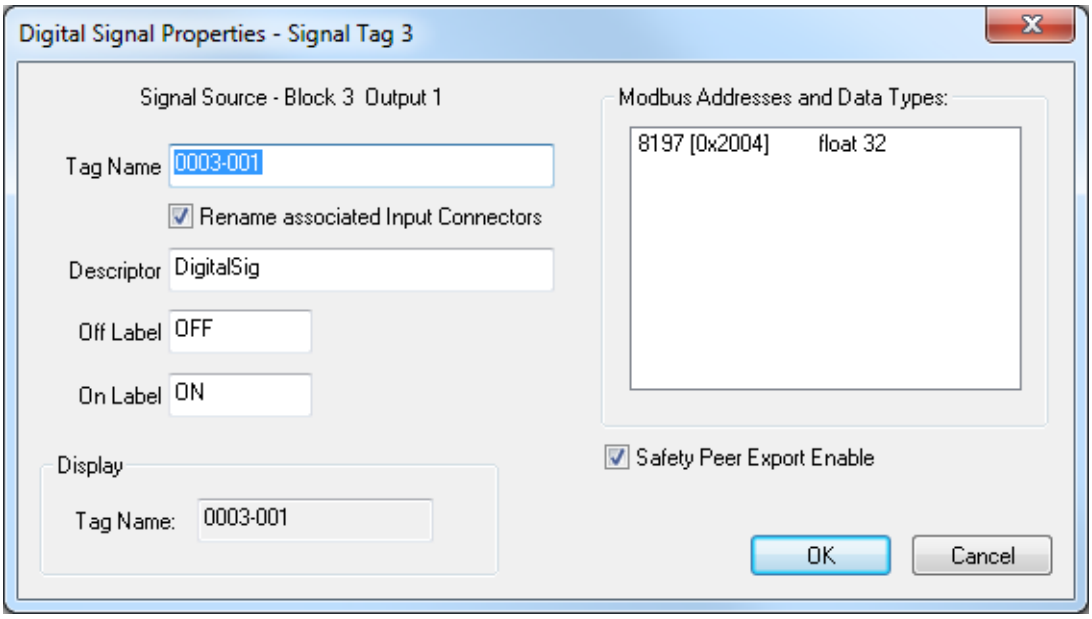


Enter:

- Tag Name
- Descriptor
- Select Decimal Place [0-5]
  or select exponential notation (i.e. display Trend Points Logarithmically)
- Engineering Units
- Safety Peer Export Enable - Selecting the check box will make the signal to be safety peer export enabled and gets added in to the configuration xml file. This xml can be used in the ANAIMP block of another controller configuration to import the signal tag for safety peer communication

Also displayed is the item's default Modbus address and data type, followed by any user-defined addresses.

Digital Signal Tag



Enter:

- Tag Name
- Descriptor
- Off Label

On Label

Also displayed is the item's default Modbus address and data type, followed by any user-defined addresses

- Safety Peer Export Enable - Selecting the check box will make the signal to be safety peer export enabled and gets added in to the configuration xml file. This xml can be used in the DIGIMP block of another controller configuration to import the signal tag for safety peer communication

An input signal tag connector can be changed to another signal tag connector or to a page connector. Double-click on the assigned input connector to see a selection of different signal tags or page connectors.

Page Connectors

Note: The Page Connector feature is available only in configurations for ControlEdge HC900 C30/C50 revision 2.0x and higher.

Introduction

A Page Connector lets you connect a signal from a worksheet page to another page and across worksheets. Page connectors are similar to signal tags except they do not appear in any signal tag lists and are not accessible via Modbus. They are tags but they have no descriptors, decimal places, or alarm/event notification properties. You can rename them.

Page connectors can be monitored. The Watch Summary window has a tab for page connectors.

Procedure

Right-click on white space in your function block diagram and select "Drop Other Items…, Page Connector",

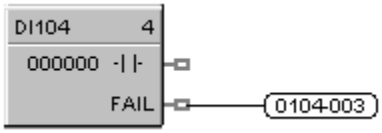
OR

From the Worksheet Toolbox group "**Other Items**", drag and drop the Page Connector symbol to a blank spot on the controller configuration.

OR

Right-click on a function block output pin. Drops the page connector down and automatically connects it to the pin. Skip to Step 3.

Click any output pin of any function block to make a connection. (An output pin can have multiple signal tags and/or page connectors attached to it.) The output page connector appears with a default number.



Drop a connector . Use any of the following methods.

Right click on the white space of a function block worksheet,

OR

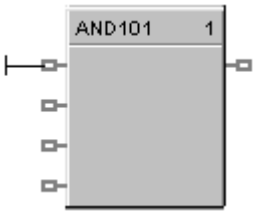
Right click on a function block input pin

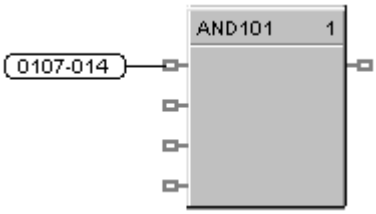
OR

Drag and drop the connector from the Worksheet Toolbox.

Double-click on the connector. A list of signal tags or page connectors is shown. Display all page connectors and pick one to assign to the input. When you pick one the unconnected input connector changes to an input page connector .

Double click on the page connector tag name area to view or change the page connector properties:





Analog Page Connector Properties

- Tag Name
- Engineering Units

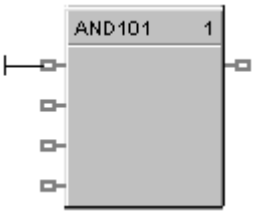
Digital Page Connector Properties

- Tag Name
- Off Label
- On Label

Page connector tag names must be unique.

An input page connector can be changed to another page connector or to a signal tag connector. Double-click on the assigned input connector to see a selection of different signal tags or page connectors.

If you change the name of an output page connector you break the connection to any connected input page connectors. Input and output page connector names must match exactly to be a valid connection. Unconnected input page connectors are displayed as



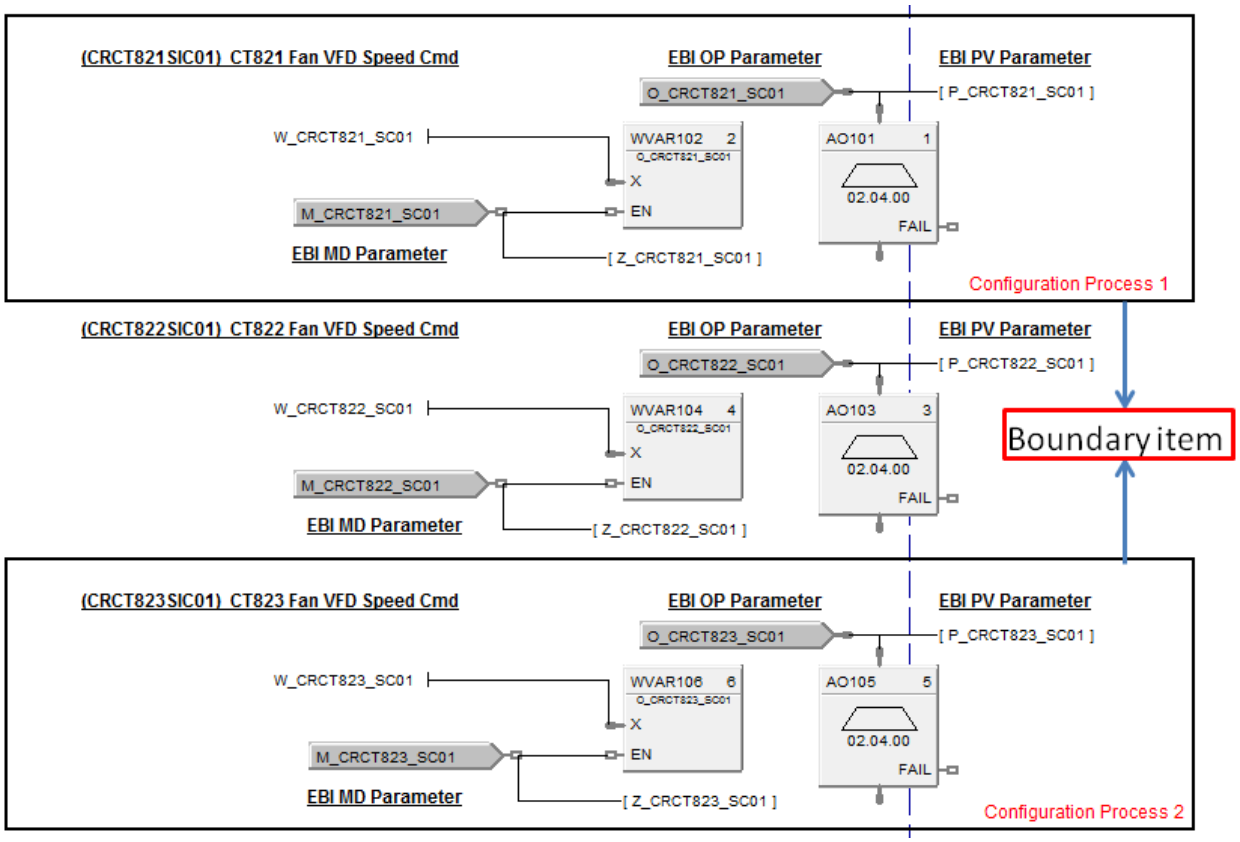
.

Boundary Item

This is part of the Other Items category.

Helps to create modular groupings in the control logic for a better understanding of the functionality. Drag the Boundary Item to the worksheet and logically group the logics.

Alternatively, right-click on the worksheet and go to **Drop other items** > **Boundary Item**.



Text String

This is part of the Other Items category.

Introduction

You have the option to enter descriptive data on the Function Block Diagram. Any entered data has no effect on the operation of the Controller.

Procedure to Enter a Text String.

Step	Action
1	From the Worksheet Toolbox group “Other Items”, use the left Mouse button to click on the T (text) symbol, hold the button down, drag the symbol to the function block diagram and release the mouse button. The “Modify Text” dialog box will appear on the Function Block Diagram.
2	Select a Font size (6, 10, 12, 16 pt) Select a Color (black, blue, red, green) Select **Bold**, *Italics*, or underline or ***all three*** You can change the default font characteristics for Text Annotations. See "Changing the Default Annotations Attributes"
3	Key in the desired text in the field, then click OK. You can use carriage returns for multiple lines. The text will appear on the diagram in a dotted-line box.
4	Click and hold the cursor in the box and move the text string to the desired location.
5	To enter another text string, repeat the above steps.

Editing Text

To edit existing text, double click the text. The “Modify Text” dialog box will reopen. You can delete text or cut, copy, and paste text from one “Modify Text” dialog box to another. Use the ‘right’ mouse button menu while the mouse cursor is in the edit box.

Changing the Default Annotation Attributes

You can change the default font characteristics for Text Annotations. These include

- Font Size
- Color
- Bold/italic/underline Settings

Configuration Procedure

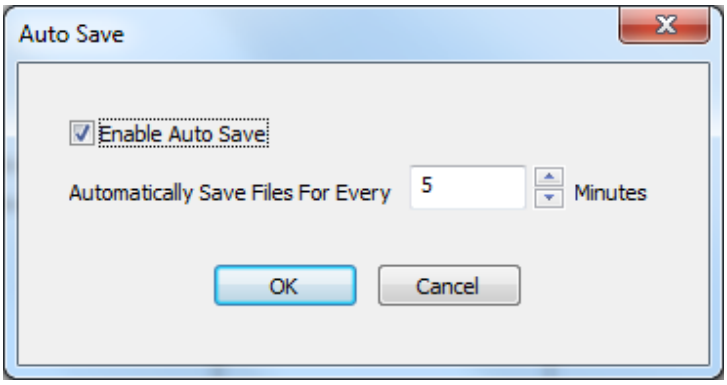
1. From the "Edit" menu, select "Options".
2. Select " Default Annotation Attributes". The "Default Text Attributes" dialog box opens.
3. Select a ***font size*** from the dropdown menu (6,10,12,or 16 points)
4. Select a ***color*** from the drop-down menu. (black, red, green, or blue)
5. Click on a button to select ***Bold***, ***Italics***, or ***Underline***, or all three.
6. Click **OK** to save the selections for default text annotations

Auto Save Functionality

This feature is used for saving the file automatically at regular intervals without having to choose File > Save option. This functionality is available only for cde files.

To auto save the file:

1. Open the cde file that you want.
2. On the **Options** menu, click **Auto Save**. The **Auto Save** window appears.
3. Select **Enable Auto Save**.
4. In the **Automatically Saves File For Every** text box type a time (in minutes).
5. Click **OK**. (Min value: 5 minutes; Max value: 120 minutes).



NOTE: This value is retained and applied when the designer tool is opened next time.

14. Conventions

Drag and Drop

To add a function block to a controller configuration, select the desired block from the menu tree. Press and hold the left mouse button and drag the block over to the diagram on the right-hand side of the screen. Position the block and then release the left mouse button to drop the item into place.

Accessing Context Sensitive Help

While in a Controller configuration, click the **right** mouse button to allow access to Topic Help, Monitor functions, Cut, Copy, Paste functions and Properties Dialog Boxes.

Right Mouse Click

See page **29.**

15. How to Configure Function Block Parameters

Accessing Block Details

Overview

After function blocks are placed on the function block diagram, they can be configured

Most dialog boxes are simple dialog boxes that contain the assigned block number and execution order of the block.

Some dialog boxes contain various parameters and options that are configured based on the particular type of function block. For example: I/O blocks contain Rack, Module, and Channel addresses and function block configuration parameters. Certain function blocks contain a Modbus address.

Tabbed dialog boxes will be used for the most complicated blocks (for example, PID) to organize the data for you.

Procedure

1. To access Block Properties, double click on the selected function block and the corresponding dialog box(es) will be displayed.
2. The dialog box(es) display(s) all parameters having to do with the selected function block.
3. Enter a physical address if applicable.
4. Enter any Tag Names
5. Enter all parameters on each tab, if present.
6. When all the changes are entered, click OK to enter, or CANCEL.
7. While in a Controller configuration, click the right mouse button to allow access to Topic Help, Monitor functions, Properties Dialog Boxes, and Cut, Copy, and Paste functions. Some function blocks let you customize their Modbus address.

Function Block Address

Addresses identify physical connection points for field wiring to Input/Output modules.

Assign a unique address to each I/O block. See page **5.**

User Assigned Tag Names

Some blocks have unique, user-assigned tag names.

They are used to identify values for operator displays.

When configuring displays you will be able to select from a list of tag name groups that you have assigned. (See "Configure Tag Order")

Enter a Name in the "Tag Name" field.

Tag names are automatically displayed on the block in capital letters

Function Block Parameters

All Function Block Parameters are values that influence the function block's execution.

To enter a parameter:

1. Click the cursor on the desired parameter field to highlight it.
2. Key in the desired value, select from any drop-down menus, or select a radio button, if necessary.
3. Click **OK** when configuration is complete.

This page has been intentionally left blank

16. Function Block Diagrams

Overview

Function Block diagrams let you build your control /safety strategy graphically right on the Designer Window. It provides a full complement of SAMA-style symbols that we call Function Blocks that can be "softwired" to each other. It also includes signal tag generation capability for resident control data that can be linked to displays and other software programs.

Function Block Diagram Rules

1. Do not place Function Block icons over another or overlap pins.
2. A pin output may be soft-wired to any number of inputs of other blocks.
3. You may change direction for soft-wiring with a left mouse click (up to 6 direction changes).
4. You may use "Signal tags" and "Connectors" to substitute for soft-wired connections and for reference across diagram pages (right click on the input or output pins).
5. You may move a block or group of blocks by selecting blocks or "boxing a group of blocks".
6. You may cross soft-wires.
7. You can cut, copy, or paste (from File menu or Right-click on the diagram) one or more blocks by selecting or "boxing" within an application or between active applications (allows function block libraries to be stored).

Saving A Configuration File

To Save an Existing File

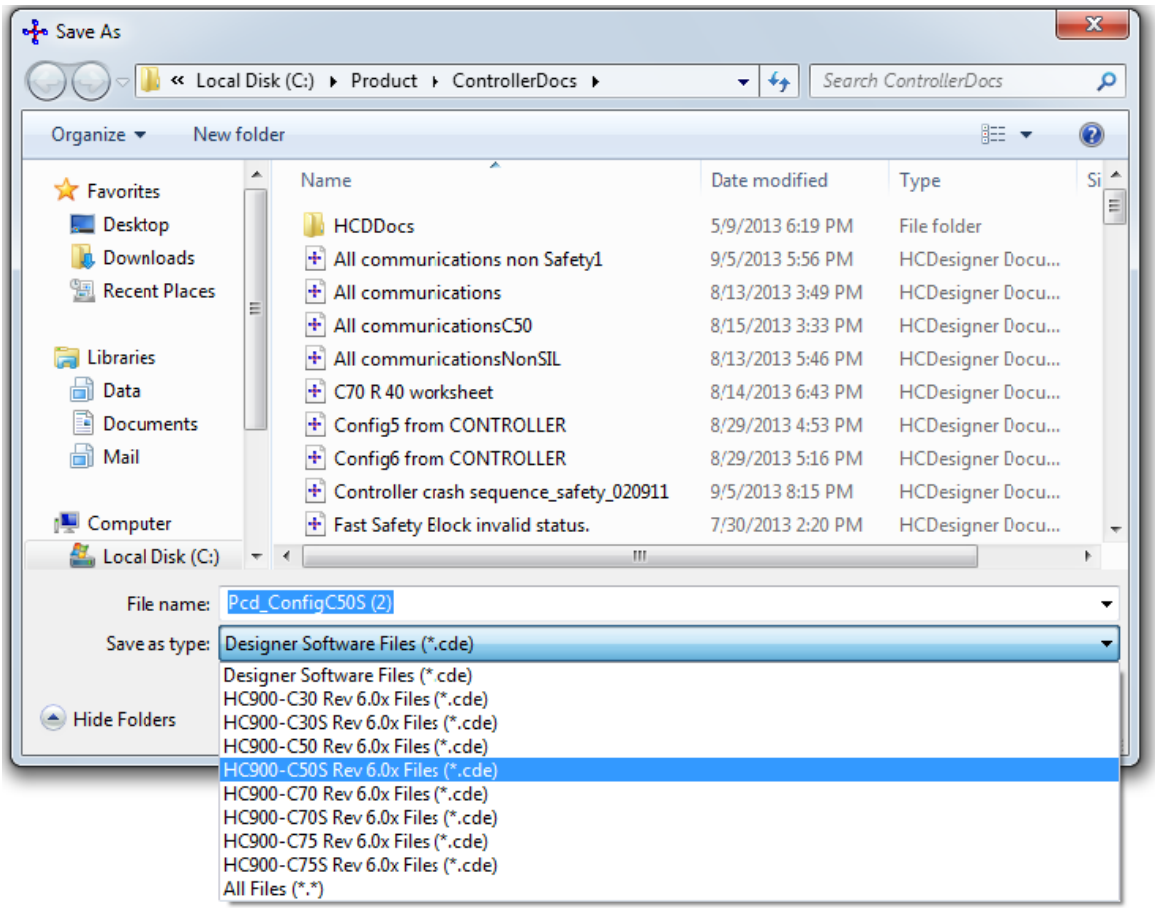
1. Select "SAVE" from the "FILE" menu or from the Main Toolbar

   If there **are no** unconnected inputs that need to be set to OFF or 0, the data is saved automatically.

   If there **are** unconnected inputs that have not been previously set to OFF or 0, The Designer will notify you that there are unconnected inputs and ask if you want to see a list of unconnected inputs.
2. Click "Yes" to view the summary of unconnected inputs.
3. Click "Log File" to save the list to a text file, if desired.

To Save a New File or Save the File as a New Name

1. Select "SAVE AS" from the "FILE" menu. The "Save As" dialog box will open.



2. Type in the new file name in that field.
3. From the drop-down menu in the "Save as Type" field, select the configuration type depending on the controller you have.
4. If there **are no** unconnected inputs that need to be set to OFF or 0, the data is saved automatically.
5. If there **are** unconnected inputs that have not been previously set to OFF or 0, The Designer will notify you that there are unconnected inputs and ask if you want to see a list of unconnected inputs.
6. Click "Yes" to view the summary of unconnected inputs.
7. Click "Log File" to save the list to a text file, if desired.

Important Note: “Save As” feature on protected files (read protection or worksheet protection) from older version to version 6.3 or later is not supported. User need to remove the protection before save as to 6.3 or later version.

17. Utilities Worksheet

Overview

This **Utility Worksheet** has three areas that let you perform a variety of tasks for maintaining the ControlEdge HC900 Controller and setting up your PC's Communications Ports.

Controller Utility Functions

The upper part of the Utilities Worksheet contains the Controller Utility Functions. It has list of Icons that will launch dialog boxes for the following utilities:

- Diagnostics
- Uploads
- Downloads (Configuration, Controller Firmware, Scanner Firmware)
- Set Controller Serial Port
- Calibrate Modules
- Set Controller Mode
- Set Controller's Network Parameters
- Set Controller Time
- Data Storage Utility
- Back Up Controller Information or Restore Controller Information
- Manually Write Database to Flash

Current PC to Controller Connection Settings

- Displays Comm Port and Address information. Let's you select a Port and Controller Network Address from the drop-down menus.
- Allows you do a Loopback to check the communications connections.
- Allows you view and reset the communications statistics.
- Allows you to Dial/hang up the modem.

PC Port Setup

Let's you set up a Network Port and up to 8 Comm Ports or Modems.

Controller Utility Functions

The upper part of the Utilities Worksheet contains the Controller Utilities Functions. It has list of Icons that will launch dialog boxes for the following utilities:

ICON	FUNCTION	REFERENCE
	Controller Diagnostics*	Select from drop down menu: (options are only available in Monitor Mode) Controller Diagnostics. See page **217** Rack Diagnostics – see page **227** Controller Ports Diagnostics – see page **236** Modbus Port Diagnostics Modbus Host (Serial) Port Diagnostics – see page **249** Modbus/TCP Initiator Port Diagnostics – see page **252** Forced Blocks – see page **200** Redundancy … Redundancy System – see page **280** Redundancy Link - see page **281** Lead CPU – see page **282** Reserve CPU – see page **286** Scanner 2 Link – see page **287**
	Upload from Controller*	Configuration Upload transfers a configuration **FROM** the controller **TO** the PC. See page **37.**

ICON	FUNCTION	REFERENCE
	Download to Controller*	Downloads a saved configuration, controller firmware, or scanner firmware, IO firmware from **FROM** the PC **TO** the controller. See page **38** and page **41.**
	Set Controller Port**	Menu selection lets you Set Protocol for controller's configuration ports.
	Calibrate Controller **	Click to open the ***Calibrate*** dialog box. Four Tabs on the Dialog Box: ***AI Channel*** **-** see "Calibrate AI Channel". ***CJ Temp*** **-** see "Calibrate CJ Temp". ***AO Channel*** **-** see "Calibrate AO Channel". **PPO Block** – see "PPO Block Calibration "
	Set Controller Mode**	Click to open the Set Controller Mode dialog box. Read the current mode, select a new mode, then write the new mode to the controller.
	Set Controller Network Parameters*	A Wizard interface guides you through connecting to a controller in order to view and edit the controller's network parameters In order to change the controller's network parameters, the controller must be in PROGRAM mode.
	Set Controller Time**	Click to open the Set Controller Time dialog box.
	Data Storage Utility	(Available only for software revision Rev 4.4 and earlier.) Click to open the Data Storage Utility dialog box. Select a Removable Disk Drive Group Number and Trend group number. Press "Initialize" to prepare the disk for storage.
	Back Up Controller Information	Backs up controller's configuration and port settings. See Back Up Controller Information.
	Restore Controller Information	This button visible for open backup files only. See Restore Controller Information.
	Manually Write Database to Flash	See Manually Write Database to Flash.

**** These functions prompt you to select a PC port to which to connect.***

***** These functions communicate to a controller by using the PC Port displayed in " Current PC to Controller Connection Settings".***

Uploading a File from the Controller

See page **37.**

Download a File to the Controller

See page **38** and page **41.**

Set Controller Serial Ports

Use this feature to set the RS232 (legacy controllers) and RS485 ports protocol.

has two tabs—Serial S1 (RS232) and Serial S2 (RS485)—each with the following settings.

Honeywell ELN: Default protocol

Modbus RTU Host: Select to set controller up as a master.

Modbus RTU Host - Advanced: Provides enhanced data throughput for applications where the ControlEdge HC900 is being used in conjunction with a “Modbus-to-fieldbus” gateway device. See page **139** for details.

Modbus RTU Device: Select to set controller up as a device.

Device Type:

Multidrop--select when using more than one device on the selected PC port.

Point to point--select for one device

Modem--select when using a modem between the modbus host and device.

Device Address: Enter 1-247, or 255.

Modbus Device Double Register Format: Each IEEE 32-bit floating point number requires two consecutive registers (four bytes, MSB=4, LSB=1 in byte order below) starting with the register defined as the starting register for the information. The stuffing order of the bytes into the two registers differs among Modbus hosts. To provide compatibility, the Double register format is configurable. Selections are:

FPB Floating Point Big Endian Format Byte order - 4, 3, 2, 1 (Default)

FP LB Floating Point Little Endian with byte-swapped Byte order - 2, 1, 4, 3

FP BB Floating Point Big Endian with byte-swapped Byte order - 3, 4, 1, 2

FP L Floating Point Little Endian Format Byte order - 1, 2, 3, 4

Port Enable: Enables or disables port.

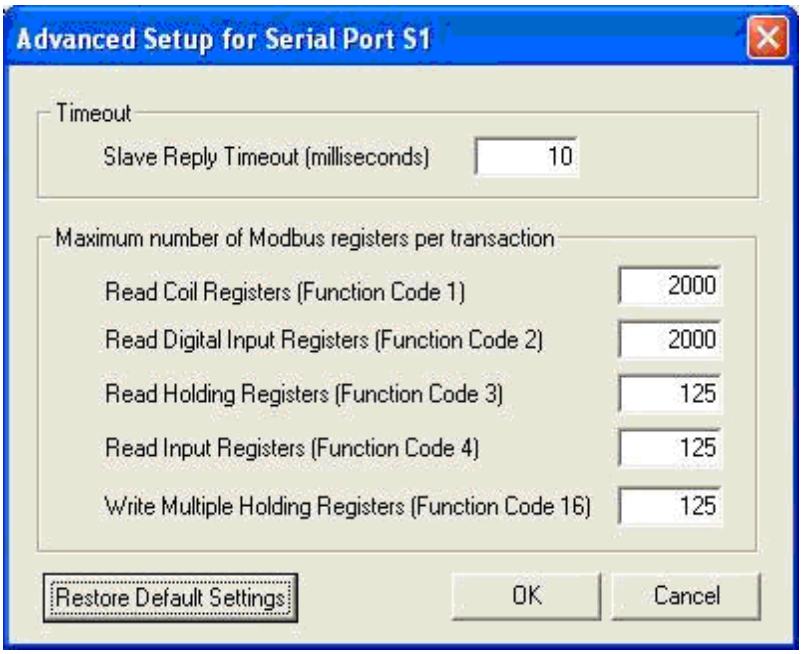
Speed (bps): Select Baud rate. All modbus devices on the same PC port must be the same.

Modbus parity: Odd or even. All modbus devices must be the same.

Modbus stop bits: 1 or 2. All modbus devices must be the same.

Set – Activates settings. If you changed the controller's Baud Rate via a PC RS232 Comm Port, your PC will no longer communicate with the controller. In this case, you are prompted to detect the controller's Baud Rate. This feature will synchronize the PC's Comm Port with the controller and set the PC Baud Rate to the correct Baud Rate.

Modbus RTU Host - Advanced Setup



Overview

The Modbus RTU Host Advanced protocol provides enhanced data throughput for applications where the ControlEdge HC900 is being used in conjunction with a “Modbus-to-fieldbus” gateway device. In these applications the gateway acts as a Modbus device to the ControlEdge HC900 controller. The Modbus data is connected into the ControlEdge HC900 control strategy using the Modbus Read, Modbus Write, and Modbus Device function blocks.

In order to achieve the enhanced data throughput, the ControlEdge HC900 communicates with the gateway using large packets of contiguous Modbus register addresses. This packetization technique allows the ControlEdge HC900 to exchange data with the gateway at rates up to the analog cycle rate of the controller (depending on the operating characteristics of the gateway device). The packet sizes can be adjusted to match the specifications of the gateway modbus device.

Differences from standard Modbus RTU

There are several important ways in which the Advanced protocol differs from the standard Modbus RTU Host protocol:

1. Under the Advanced protocol the Modbus register data is written to the modbus device during every Modbus Host scan cycle. This behavior is different than the standard Modbus RTU Host protocol, where the data is written only when the modbus device block’s Enable pin is ON.

2. The Enable pins on the Modbus function blocks do not control when the register data is written to the modbus device. Instead, they control the value that is written to the block. For example, if a Modbus function block has the value 10 on its Write pin and the Enable pin is ON, then a value of 10 is written to the modbus device. If the Enable pin is changed to OFF, the ControlEdge HC900 controller will continue to write a value of 10 to the modbus device once every Modbus Host scan cycle. If the value on the Write pin is changed to 100 while the Enable pin is OFF, the controller will continue to write a value of 10 to the modbus device. The next time the Enable pin is changed to ON, the controller will write the value 100 to the modbus device.

3. Modbus Register write operations are performed using Modbus Function Code 16 (Preset Multiple Write). The number of registers written in a single transaction is based on the Advanced Setup settings for the serial port.

4. If there are “gaps” in the Modbus register addresses referenced within the ControlEdge HC900 configuration, the controller will write a value of zero to the “undefined” registers. For example, if Modbus Registers 1 and 10 are assigned to Modbus function blocks but Registers 2 through 9 are not, the controller will write zeroes to Registers 2 through 9.

The Advanced protocol can be used in any Modbus Host application that can accommodate these differences.

Factors affecting scan time

Using the Advanced protocol, the ControlEdge HC900 controller can potentially scan all of the Modbus registers on the serial link at a rate that is equal to the analog cycle time. The actual scan time for any given application is affected by the following factors.

1. Characteristics of the modbus device (e.g., the maximum baud rate, the message turn around time, support for Modbus packets, the maximum allowable packet size, etc.).

2. Configuration of the Modbus device blocks.

3. Programmed baud rate of the serial port.

The Modbus Host scan time is adjusted automatically by the ControlEdge HC900 at run-time; no user intervention required. The actual scan time of the link is displayed on the Modbus Communication Diagnostics display in Monitor Mode.

Configurable parameters

The parameters on this dialog can be used to match the behavior of the Advanced protocol to the characteristics of the modbus devices on the link. Please consult the documentation for your modbus device to determine the best settings for your application. In general, the best overall performance of the Modbus Host Advanced link can typically be achieved by using the largest possible packet sizes.

Device Reply Timeout (milliseconds)

This parameter defines the Modbus message turnaround time for the link. It has a range of 10ms to 255ms. This parameter should be set to handle the modbus device that has the worse case turnaround time on the link. If there are modbus devices with turnaround times that are longer than 255ms, then the standard Modbus RTU Host protocol must be used.

Maximum Number of Modbus registers per transaction

Read Coil Registers (Function Code 1)

This parameter determines the maximum number of coil registers that can be read from the modbus devices in a single transaction.

Read Digital Input Registers (Function Code 2)

This parameter determines the maximum number of digital input registers that can be read from the modbus devices in a single transaction.

Read Holding Registers (Function Code 3)

This parameter determines the maximum number of holding registers that can be read from the modbus devices in a single transaction.

Read Input Registers (Function Code 4)

This parameter determines the maximum number of input registers that can be read from the modbus devices in a single transaction.

Write Multiple Holding Registers (Function Code 16)

This parameter determines the number of registers that will be written to the modbus devices in a single transaction. Note: if there are gaps in the Modbus register addresses referenced within the ControlEdge HC900 configuration, the controller will write a value of zero to the undefined address. For example, if Modbus Registers 1 and 10 are assigned to Modbus function blocks but Registers 2 and 9 are not, the controller will write zeroes to Registers 2 and 9.

Restore Default Settings

This button allows you to restore the original default settings for the Advanced Setup parameters.

Note: you must click the Set button on the Set Protocol dialog to activate any changes that are made on this dialog.

Calibrate Controller

See page **158.**

Set Controller Mode

Set Controller Mode lets you set the controller mode. It can only be set when the controller's mode switch is in the center "Run Mode" position.

ATTENTION: If the controller's mode switch is in one of the "Locked" positions, the mode cannot be changed from this position. It can be changed only by changing the position of the switch.

opens the **Set Controller Mode** dialog box. Follow the steps on the dialog box

1. Select a new mode - RUN, PROGRAM, or OFFLINE
2. Write the new mode to the controller. Press "Set New Mode" button
   Program to Run takes some time. An Indicator on the dialog box shows the progress.

Set Controller Network Parameters

opens the "**Controller Identification Setup Wizard**" dialog box.

You can select a serial port or the Ethernet port over which the network parameters will be read/written.

The controller must be in PROGRAM mode to set the Network Parameters.

There are set up options on the wizard. The option you choose depends on how you are connected to a controller and what current knowledge you have of that controller.

Important: *before configuring your controller to work on a corporate LAN, consult with your Network Administrator regarding any corporate networking policies*.

Follow the Wizard instruction to set:

- ***Network Name***

User assigned name - can be different from controller name (16-character ASCII name. It is not part of configuration.)

It is required to uniquely define a Peer group if multiple processes, each with its set of peer controllers, are on the same physical cable. The controller binds the "Network name: Controller name" to the IP address of each of its peers at run-time.

Important note:

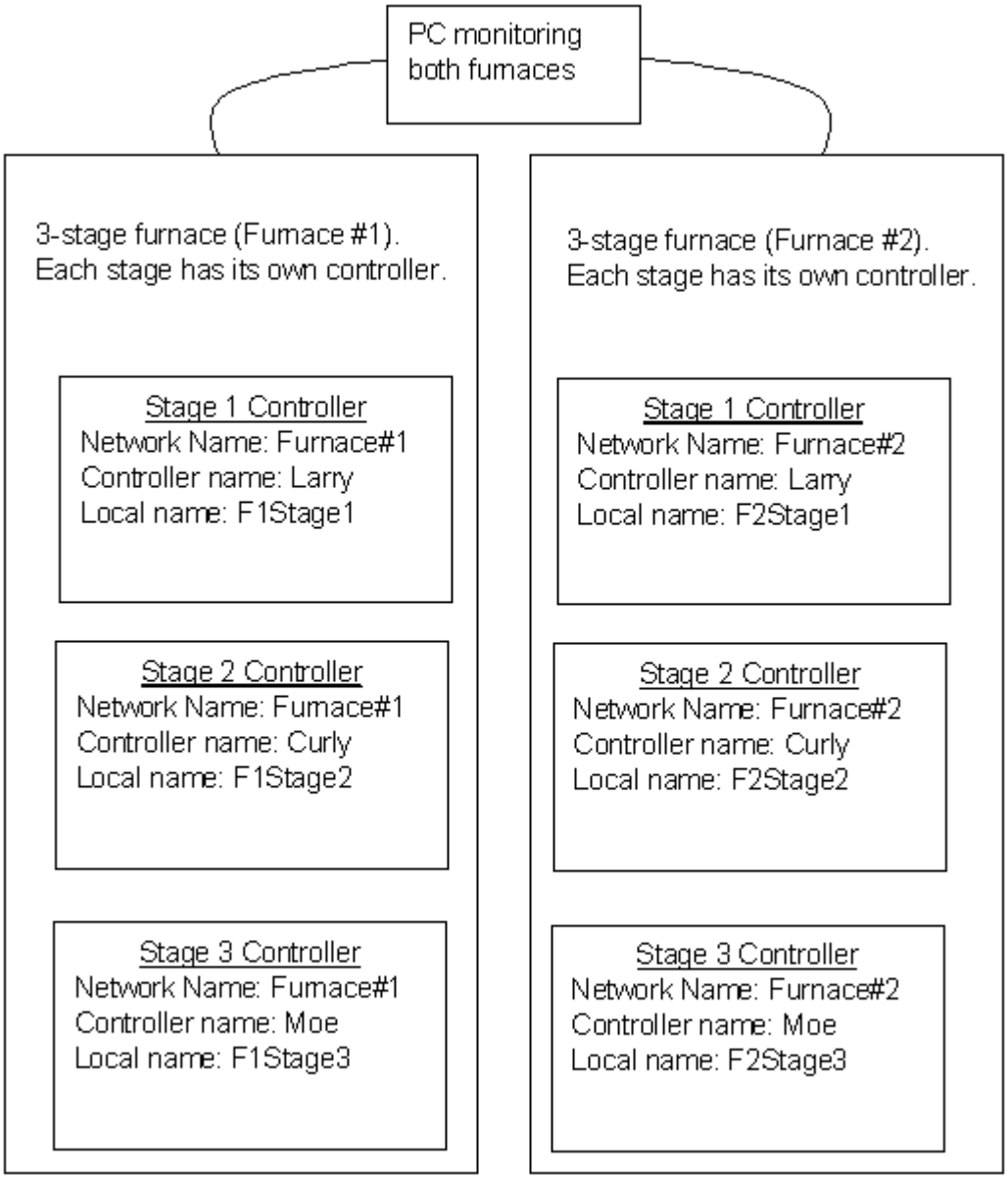
- *Network name shall not have Chinese characters.*
- *Changing Network Name requires a Cold-Start.*

- ***Local Name*** (alias)
  User assigned 16-character ASCII name [can be different from controller name]
  It is not part of the configuration.
  See Controller Identification for more info on names.
- ***Modbus TCP Double Register format***
  Each IEEE 32-bit floating point number requires two consecutive registers (four bytes, MSB=4, LSB=1 in byte order below) starting with the register defined as the starting register for the information. The stuffing order of the bytes into the two registers differs among Modbus hosts. To provide compatibility, the Double register format is configurable. Selections are:
  FP B Floating Point Big Endian Format Byte order - 4, 3, 2, 1 (Default)
  FP LB Floating Point Little Endian with byte-swapped Byte order - 2, 1, 4, 3
  FP BB Floating Point Big Endian with byte-swapped Byte order - 3, 4, 1, 2
  FP L Floating Point Little Endian Format Byte order - 1, 2, 3, 4
- ***Enable HART IP Interface***
  Check “Enable HART IT Interface” to allow Asset management systems (FDM) to communicate with the HC900 controller. If it is unchecked then, HART data from devices can not be pulled to FDM.
  Port Number – Port Number of HART-IP interface is user-configurable and the default port number is 5094. The end user may change the port number based on the firewall configuration. (From HCDesigner > Utilities > Set Controller Network Parameters).
  Restrict Server IP Address - To restrict HART-IP interface access to a specific FDM server.
- ***IP Address***
  Controller Internet Protocol Address - Guaranteed unique address, assigned by the Internet Corporation of America for Assigned Names and Numbers (ICANN) IP Address includes four "Octets" (eight bits, translating to integers from 0 to 255, separated by periods). The manufacture default IP Address is 192.168.1.254.
  Note: C70/ C75: E1 & E2 must be on different Subnets.
- ***Subnet Mask***
  Subnet Mask defines the ***netid*** (Network ID) and the ***hostid*** (Host ID) parts of an IP Address. The ***netid*** uniquely identifies a network, and the ***hostid*** uniquely identifies a computer on the network.
  The Subnet Mask can be used to partition the Network into sub-networks, using parts of the ***hostid*** to define new ***netids***, or more correctly ***subnetids***.
  Portioning a network in this way enables switches and routers to use the subnetids to reduce collision domains and to promote security.
  Note:
  * C70/ C75: E1 & E2 must be on Subnet Mask of 255.255.255.0
  * Internet Protocol Rules do not permit following IP Addresses
  0.x.x.x
  127.x.x.x
  128.0.x.x
  191.255.x.x
  192.0.0.x
  223.255.255.x
  224.x.x.x - 255.x.x.x
- ***Gateway IP Address***
  Used to forward packets to other networks and subnets. The Network Administrator typically provides this address.

- ***Email Server***
  Outgoing Mail (SMTP) server IP Address: If the controller is configured for E-mail notification, enter the IP Address of the (SMTP) E-mail server.

Controller Identification

The figure below shows how to uniquely identify multiple controllers on a network. Notice the controller names can be the same in both furnaces (Larry, Curly, Moe), but within the same network name they must be unique. To further distinguish controllers, use unique network names (Furnace #1 and Furnace #2). Network name: Controller name are bound to the IP address of each controller. Finally, use a local name (alias) to identify each controller to the end user. This local name is a convenient name such as for displays on the PC, it is not referred to for actual communication.



Set Controller Time

opens the ***Set Controller Time*** dialog box. Screens differ depending on the version of HC Designer.

Version 4.0 and earlier

This window lets you set your controller's date and time.

Note: Use of Daylight Saving or Network Time Server requires Version 4.1.

Group	Item	Description	Action
PC Time	**Current Date** **Current Time** **Time Zone**	Indicates PC's date, time and time zone.	Read Only.
Controller Time	**Current Date** **Current Time**	Shows Controller's current date and time This is updated when you click on Set Controller Time button below.	Read only.
Select method for writing Time and Date to the Controller	**Set to PC Time**	PC's date and time, indicated here, will be used by controller.	Click radio button to select.
	Manually Override Time	Date and time entered here will be used by controller.	Click radio button and enter desired date and time.
	Set Controller Time	Writes PC or manual Date and Time to the controller. Current Controller Time (top of window) will be updated. A status message confirms the update.	Click to set time.

Version 4.1 and later

There are two tabs in this window.

Time and Date tab - Lets you set controller time to the PC time and assign a time zone to the controller.

Network Time Server and DST tab - Lets you assign a Network Time Server that periodically synchronizes the controller time. Let you specify when controller time changes to Daylight Saving.

Version 4.1 Time and Date tab

Group	Item	Description	Action
Current PC Time	**Current Date** **Current Time** **Time Zone**	Indicates PC's date, time and time zone, including Standard or Daylight Saving.	Read Only.
Current Controller Time	**Current Date** **Current Time** **Time Zone**	Shows Controller's current date, time and time zone. Note: Daylight Saving, if applicable, is not shown unless Controller is in RUN mode.	Read only.
Set Controller Time and Date	**Date** **Time**	PC's date and time, indicated here, will be used by controller.	Read only.
	Use Controller Time Zone	Time zone entered here will be used by controller.	Click to select. Enter desired Time Zone.
	Use PC's Time Zone	Time zone displayed here will be used by controller.	Read only. Click to select.
	Set Controller Time	Click to write the above Date, Time and Time Zone to the controller. Current Controller Time (top of window) will be updated. A status message confirms the update.	Click to select.

Version 4.1 Network Time Server and DST tab

Use this tab to

- assign a Network Time Server that periodically synchronizes the controller time,
- specify when controller time changes to Daylight Saving.

Group	Item	Description	Action
Network Time Server	**Enabled** **Disabled**	Disabled - controller's time will not be synchronized with a network time server. Enabled - controller's time will be periodically synchronized to a network time server in Greenwich Mean Time. Different time zone or Daylight Saving must be configured separately. Disable or enable will take effect when you click on Write Time Server Settings to Controller.	Click to select.
Time Server IP Addresses	**Primary** **Secondary**	Primary - primary time server's IP address. Secondary - secondary time server address as a backup in case the primary can't be accessed.	Enter addresses. If using one server only, enter the same address as the primary.
Write Time Server Settings to Controller		Writes time server settings (enable or disable) to controller. Status will confirm the completed write. This button does not update the controller time, it just enables the connection. To see the current controller time, go to the Time and Date tab. Important: Network time servers use Greenwich Mean Time. Go to the Time and Date tab and set the time zone for your controller.	Click to write to the controller.
Daylight Saving Mode	**Adjust Clock for Daylight Saving Changes**	Let's you select one of the three Daylight Saving methods below.	Check box to enable one of the following options.
	Use DSTI Pin on Time and Date Function Block	Controller time will be in Daylight Saving when DSTI pin on the Time and Date function block is ON. Time will be in Standard when pin is OFF.	Click to select.
	One Year	Controller time will change to Daylight Saving, then to Standard, on the dates and times specified for a single year.	Click to select. Enter dates ad times. Begin Daylight Saving Time setting must be earlier than Begin Standard Time setting.
	Every Year	Controller time will change to Daylight Saving, then to Standard, on the weekdays and times specified for every year.	Click to select. Enter dates and times. Last will be either 4th or 5th week, whichever is last.

Data Storage Utility

Note: This section does not apply to the 900 Control Station.

opens the **Data Storage Disk Initialization Utility** dialog box.

It is used to initialize ZIP disks offline. (It takes a long time to initialize a disk on the Operator Interface)

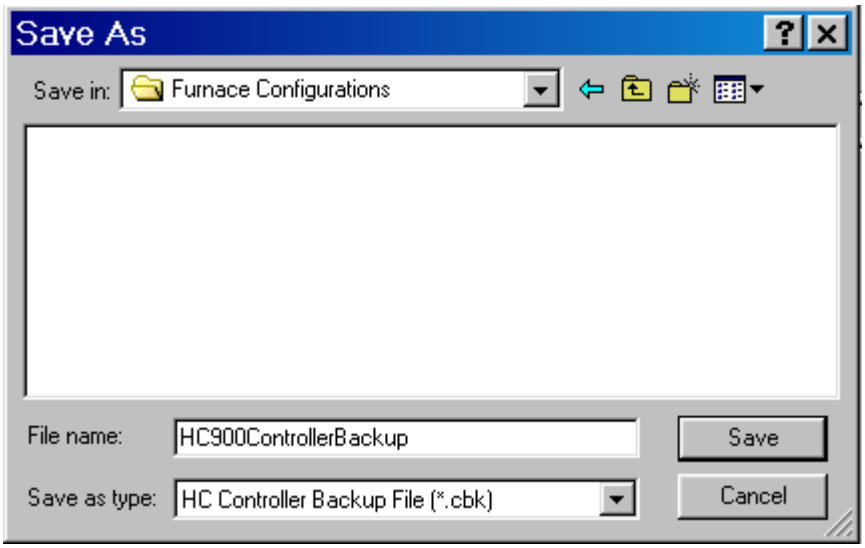
Pre-initializing ZIP Diskette

Step	Action
1	Insert the 100MB Zip disk into your PC drive.
2	Select the Data Storage Utility Icon on the Utilities toolbar.
3	The dialog box appears.
4	Select a Drive Letter from the drop-down menu to specify the drive on your PC.
5	Select the number of Trend Groups that the Operator Interface will need from the drop down menu.
6	Click on Pre-initialize to prepare the disk for storage.
7	Exit DSU.
8	Remove disk, insert it into the operator Interface, and initialize it. See Initializing Disk under this section entitled "Data Storage Operation".

Back Up Controller Information

Saves a controller's active configuration as a backup file with .cbk extension. Similar to saving an uploaded configuration except that in addition to the configuration the port settings are saved. Versions 4.1 and up save time settings (time zone, DST, NTS IP addresses).

You are prompted to specify the comm. link settings for the controller to be backed up. Backup files are read-only; to edit you must save as .cde.



Restore Controller Information

This button is visible for currently open backup files (.cbk).

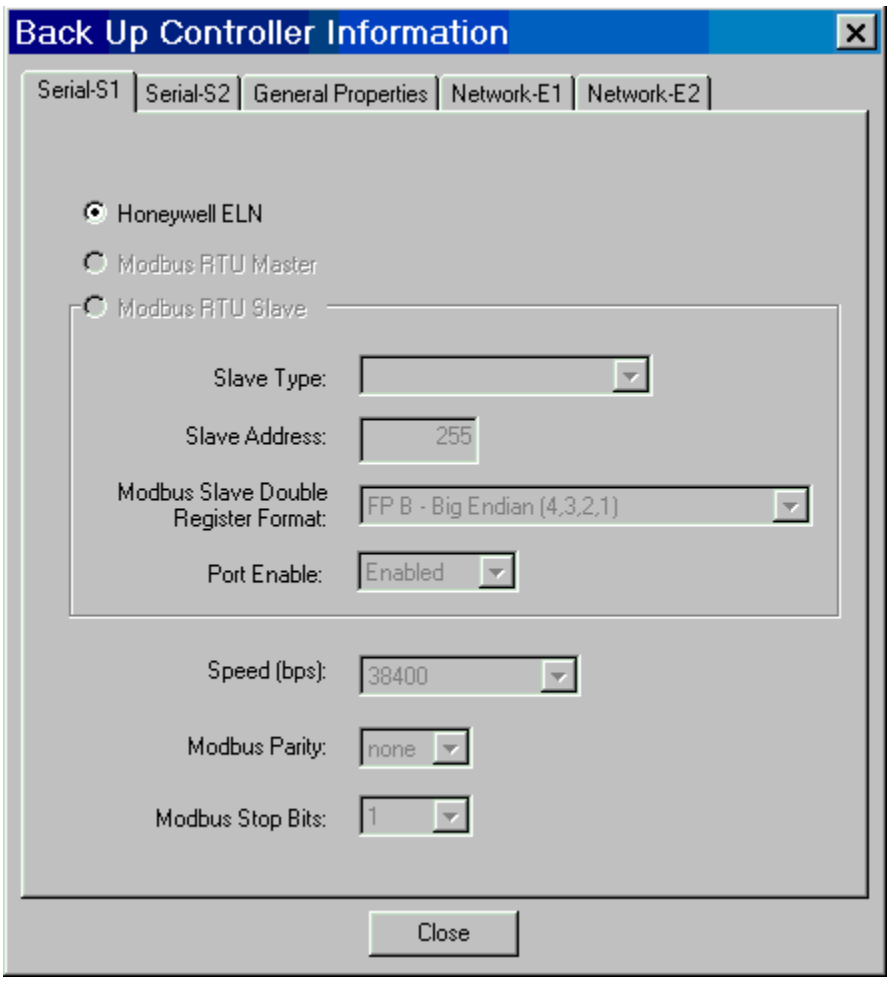
Choices:

Back Up Controller

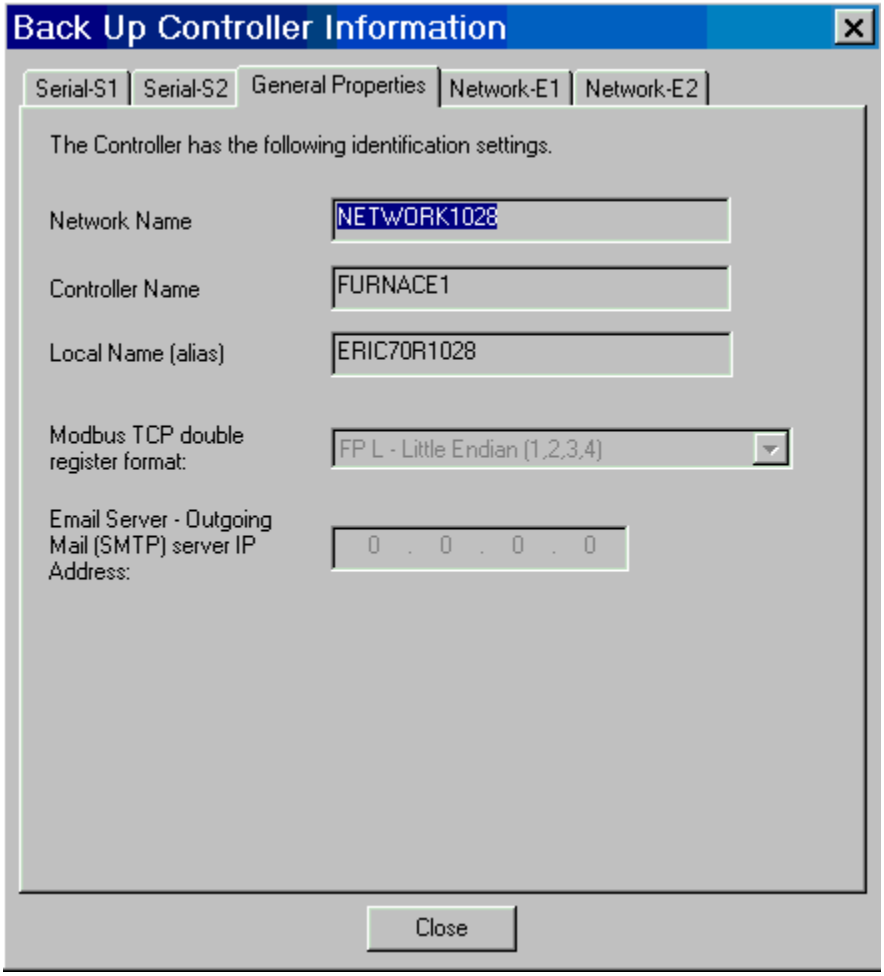
Restore Controller – Same as doing a download to controller except port settings are also downloaded. Controller must be in Program Lock Mode

View Port Settings – Shows all port settings in the backup file.

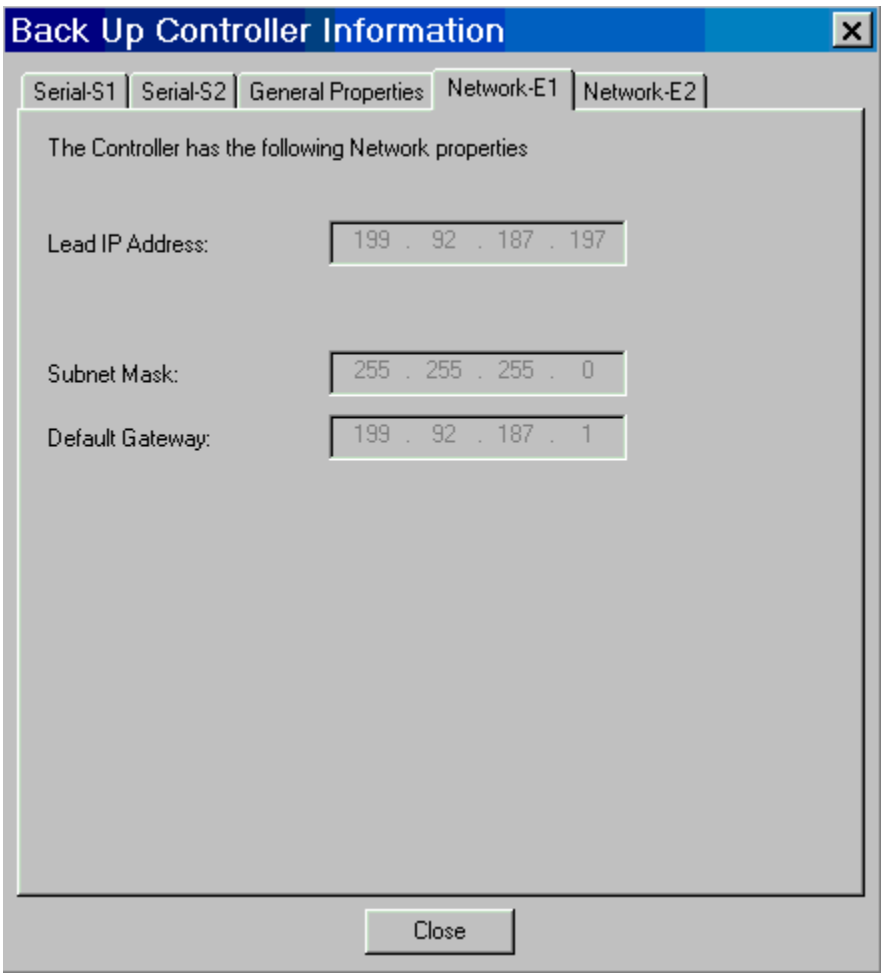
Serial S1/Serial S2 ports:



General properties:



Network E1, Network E2 ports:



Manually Write Database to Flash

Causes the configuration and user settings of a C70R/C75 CPU to be written (saved) to the controller's FLASH memory. User settings include, for example, PID tuning parameters, PP Output calibrations and changes to recipes (setpoint profiles, sequences, schedules). These settings are normally saved in battery-backed RAM, but if there is a power failure and the battery dies, these settings would be lost. By allowing an on-demand write of the database to FLASH, these settings will be retained and available immediately upon power-up.

If using redundant CPUs (C70R/C75) the database is saved to the FLASH of both Lead and Reserve controllers.

Configure Modbus/Peer Write Access

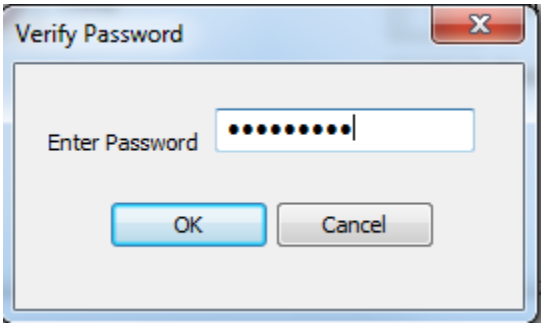
This feature is used for enabling the controller to allow only selected devices to write to the controller. The IP addresses of other controllers or Modbus TCP devices are entered to enable or disable the write operation. From version 6.3 and greater, this feature also provides the network interface selection for safety Peer Communication for SIL variants.

IMPORTANT: This feature is available in ControlEdge HC900 controllers from revision 6.1 and later.

- **MODBUS TCP List**: List of devices (Modbus TCP Host devices) that can perform Modbus write operation on the ControlEdge HC900 controller.
- **Peer-to-Peer List**: List of devices (ControlEdge HC900 peer controllers) that can perform peer write operation on the ControlEdge HC900 controller.

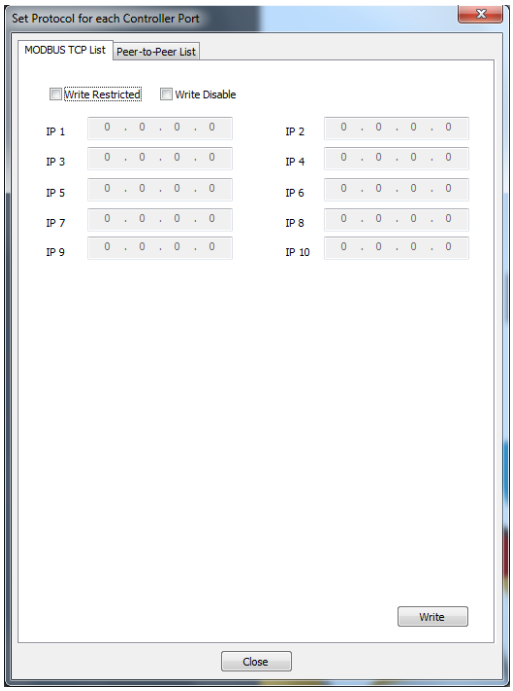
IMPORTANT: *While accessing this feature the tool prompts for a password if the controller is password protected.*

See Password Configuration.



To configure Modbus/Peer write access:

1. Click the **Utilities** tab.
2. Connect to the controller by providing the network details. See Current_PC_to_Controller_Connection_Settings.
3. Click **Configure Modbus/Peer Write Access**. The Set Protocol for each Controller Port window appears.

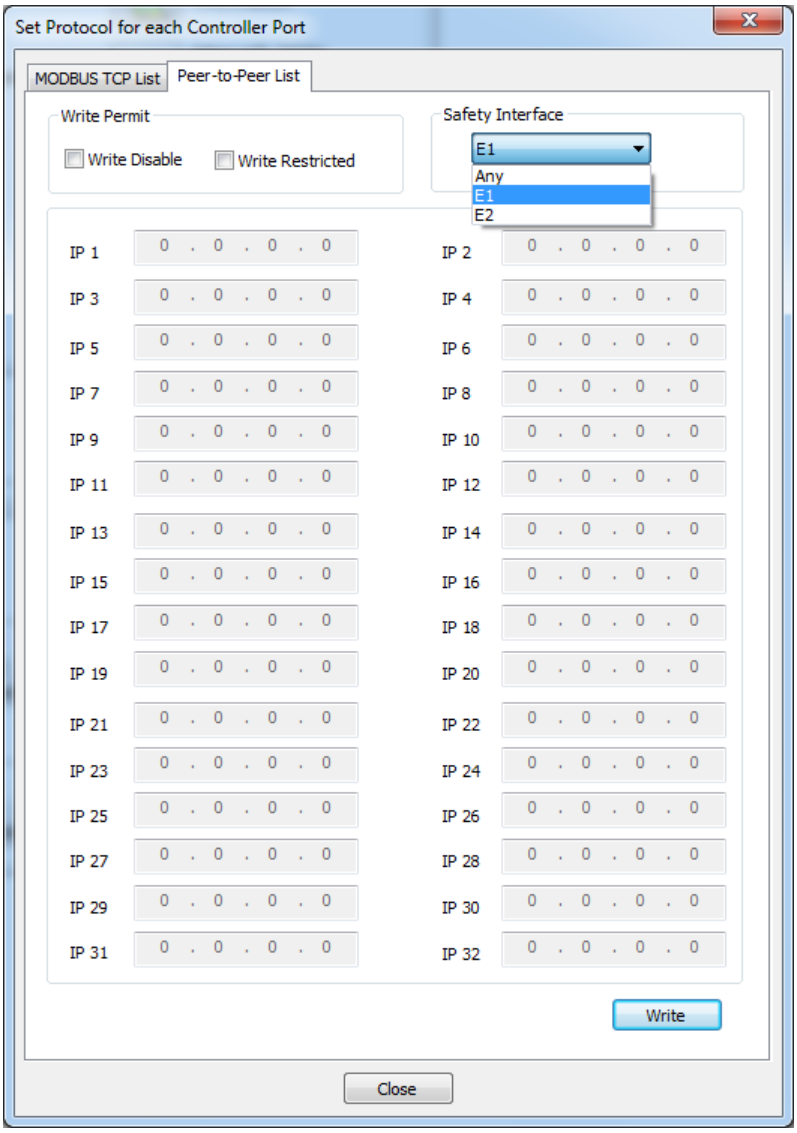


4. Click the **MODBUS TCP List** tab or the **Peer-to-Peer List** tab and select one of the following:
   - **Write Restricted**: Allows only the devices in the list to write to the controller.
   - **Write Disabled**: Denies write operation from all external devices.
5. Type the IP addresses of the devices.
6. Click **Write**. The settings are transferred to the controller.

NOTE: *Any device can read the values from the controller irrespective of the selections.*

Network Interface selection for safety peer communication

1. Click the Peer-to-Peer List tab as shown below



2. Select option from the “Safety Interface” section.
   a. Select “Any” to allow Safety peer communication on both “Ethernet Port 1” and “Ethernet Port 2”, i.e. the subscriber allows safety peer communication thru import signals (SAFPDE, ANAIMP & DIGIMP function blocks) from the peer controllers (publishers) appear on both networks.
   b. Select “E1” to allow Safety Peer communication only on Ethernet Port 1.
   c. Select “E2” to allow Safety Peer communication only on Ethernet Port 2.

   Note1: Network Selection option is available only on SIL variants.

   Note2: Safety interface selection for C30S & C50S is fixed and defaulted to “E1”.

   Note3: Safety interface selection for C70S & C75S is defaulted to “Any”

   Note4: “Peer Write” is not allowed thru safety peer communication

3. Click **Write.** The settings are transferred to the controller.

Password Configuration

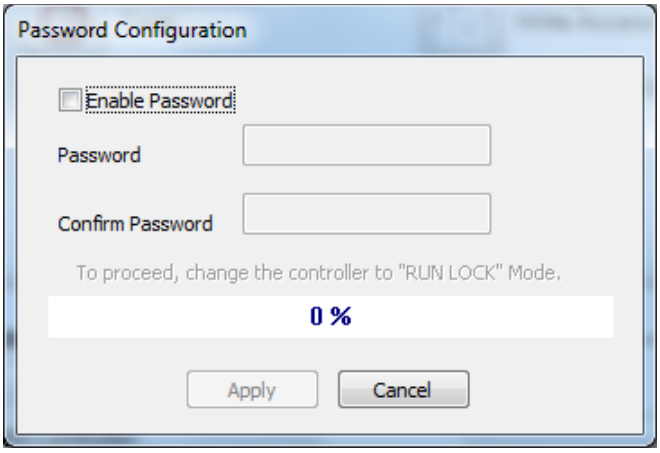
This feature protects the controller from unauthorized users accessing the controller. It allows the user to set a password for the controller. This password must be provided while accessing the controller utility functions. By default, the controller is not protected with password.

IMPORTANT:

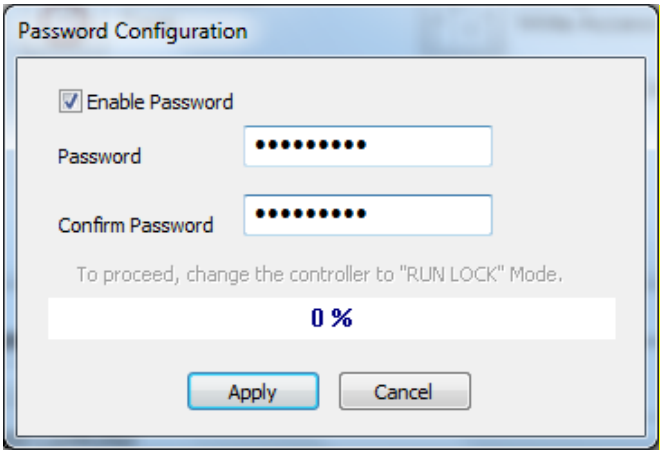
- *Password can be set only when the mode switch on the controller is set to the "Run/Pgm Mode" position.*
- *Password shall not have mandarin characters*

To enable the controller password:

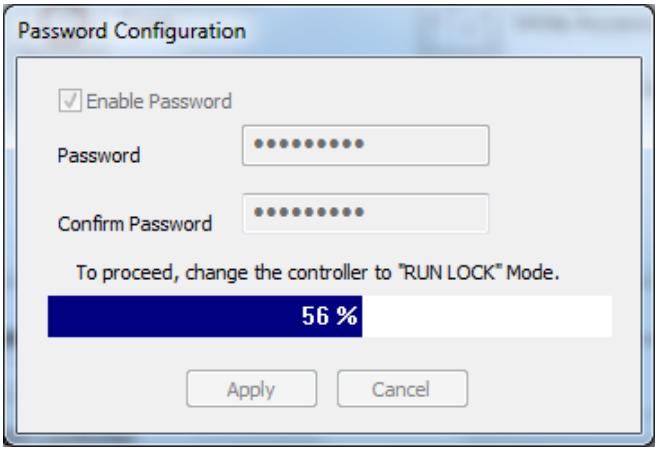
1. Click the **Utilities** tab.
2. Connect to the controller by providing the network details. See Current_PC_to_Controller_Connection_Settings.
3. Click the **Password Configuration** button. The **Password Configuration** window appears.



4. Select **Enable Password**.



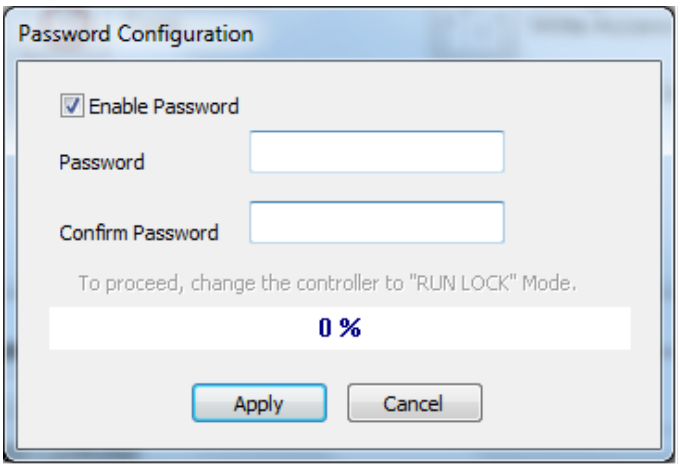
5. Type a password in the text boxes. ***NOTE****: The password must contain a minimum of 8 characters and not exceed 32 characters.*
6. Set the controller to "Run/Pgm" mode.
7. Click **Apply**.



8. Change the controller mode to "Run Lock" mode. This step must be performed within 3 minutes. The password is enabled.

To disable the password:

1. Click the **Utilities** tab.
2. Connect to the controller by providing the network details. See Current_PC_to_Controller_Connection_Settings.
3. Click the **Password Configuration** tab. The **Password Configuration** window appears.



4. Clear **Enable Password**.
5. Set the controller to "Run/Pgm" mode.
6. Click **Apply**.
7. Change the controller mode to "Run Lock" mode to disable the password. The tool provides 3 minutes to perform this step. The password is disabled.

IMPORTANT:

- *It is recommended to secure the physical access of the controller key switch for preventing unauthorized controller password modifications.*
- *It is recommended to change the controller password after every 90 days.*

Diagnostics

has menu selections on a drop-down menu. It lets you select from a list of diagnostic windows for various controller connections.

The controller must be in "Monitor" mode. Select Monitor Mode from the Monitor menu or click on the Monitor mode icon on the Main toolbar.

Controller Diagnostics - displays controller status and diagnostic parameters.

Rack Diagnostics - displays the "Rack Diagnostic Summary" dialog box. Information is for Rack, I/O expansion (except C30 CPU), and Module diagnostics.

Controller Ports Diagnostics - select a port from the drop-down list.

- Serial Port S1
- Serial Port S2
- Network Port
- Expansion Rack Port (except C30 CPU)
- Host Connections
- Peer-to-Peer connections

Modbus Host Port Diagnostics - displays status of the Modbus Host port S1 (RS232) or S2 (RS485), if so configured.

Forced Blocks.- displays a list of Function Blocks, by block ID, that have a forced output pin.

Redundancy – select from the drop-down list:

- Redundancy System
- Redundancy Link
- Lead CPU
- Reserve CPU
- Scanner 2 Link

Calibrate Modules

Overview

The controller I/O modules are factory calibrated to 0.1% accuracy. But, if greater accuracy is required, you can calibrate the **AI and AO modules** using the Process Control Utilities on-line connected to the controller.

You can also calibrate the **Position Proportional Output block**. The calibration of the PPO block is similar to that of the AI and AO except that the calibration values are stored as part of the block's configuration, not on the AI card itself.

opens the ***Calibrate Modules*** dialog box.

There are four tabs on the Dialog Box:

AI Channel - see "Calibrate AI Channel".

CJ Temp - see "Calibrate CJ Temp".

AO Channel - see "Calibrate AO Channel".

PPO Block – see "Calibrate Position Proportional Output "

Calibrate AI Channel

The Calibrate AI Channel tab allows you to calibrate the selected AI to ensure that the 0 and 100% values selected during configuration is actually correct.

ATTENTION: *You should not access the Utilities Calibrate Controller Analog I/O display while the OI calibration display is being displayed, or vice versa. Calibration can't be done as long as both displays are shown; user must exit either display to do a calibration.*

To calibrate an AI Channel:

1. Enter a Rack #, Module #, and Channel #.
2. Click on Select Input. The program will then poll the controller to see if the selected AI exists.
3. The Cal 0% button is now available. Connect a reference supply to the input pins of the AI.
   The reference supply must have the following characteristics:

T/C, mV, Volts Inputs:	1 microvolt resolution
Ohms, RTD Inputs:	0.1 Ohm resolution
4-20mA inputs:	4 microamp resolution

4. Set the reference supply to the reference value shown. (The reference value is displayed below the Instrument Status section.) Click on "Cal 0%" to calibrate the low end of the AI.
5. The Instrument Status section of the dialog will display the results of the calibration.
6. If the 0% calibration was successful, the 100% button is now available. Set the reference supply to the reference value shown. Click on "Cal 100%" to calibrate the high end of the AI.
7. If the Cal 100% calibration was successful, the Save Cal button is then available. Click on "Save Cal" to save the current set of calibrations for the selected AI.
8. If either calibration fails,
   the *Instrument Status* section will display an AI Calibration Failed message - Check connections
   The *Reference section* will display a wrong Rack, Module, and channel - reenter Addresses.
9. Click on Close.

Note: Click on "Restore Factory Calibration" button to do same.

NOTE: *Refer to the Calibration section in the ControlEdge HC900 Installation and User Guide for additional Hardware details.*

Calibrate CJ Temp

The Calibrate CJ Temperature tab allows you to ensure the Cold Junction calibration is correct.

To calibrate a CJ Temperature:

1. Enter a Rack #, Module #, and Channel #.
2. At CJ Temperature, enter the actual ambient temperature (measured at the AI pins).
3. Click on Select CJ Input. The program will then poll the controller to see if the selected AI exists. If the AI is found the Cal CJ button will then be available.
4. Click on the Cal CJ button to initiate the calibration. The status of the calibration is displayed in the Instrument Status section of the dialog. If the calibration is successful, the Save Cal button will be available.
5. Click on the Save Cal button to save the current CJ calibration.
6. If the calibration fails, a message will be displayed in the Instrument status section.
7. Click on Close to close dialog.

Note: Click on "Restore Factory Calibration" button to do same.

NOTE: *Refer to the Calibration section in the ControlEdge HC900 Installation and User Guide for additional Hardware details.*

Calibrate AO Channel

The Calibrate AO Channel option allows you to calibrate the selected AO to ensure that the 0 and 100% values selected during configuration are actually correct.

ATTENTION: *You should not access the Utilities Calibrate Controller Analog I/O display while the OI calibration display is being displayed, or vice versa. Calibration can't be done as long as both displays are shown; user must exit either display to do a calibration.*

To calibrate an AO Channel:

1. Enter a Rack #, Module #, and Channel #.
2. Click on Select Output. The program will then poll the controller to see if the selected AO exists.
3. The Cal 0% button is now available. Measure the actual output of the AO at the terminal block with a meter and enter the measurement into 0% Measured. Click on Cal 0% button to calibrate the 0% measurement. The reference value is displayed below the Instrument Status section.
4. The Instrument Status section of the dialog will display the results of the test.
5. If the 0% calibration was successful, the 100% button is now available. Measure the actual output of the AO at the terminal block with a meter and enter the measurement into 100% Measured. Click on Cal 100% button to calibrate the 100% measurement.
6. If the Cal 100% was successful, the Save Cal button is then available. Click on Save Cal in order to save the current set of calibrations for the selected AO.
7. If either of the tests fail, the Instrument Status section will display an AO Calibration Failed message.
8. Click on Close.

Note: Click on "Restore Factory Calibration" button to do same.

NOTE: *Refer to the Calibration section in the ControlEdge HC900 Installation and User Guide for additional Hardware details.*

Restore Factory Calibration

To restore the Factory Calibration:

1. Click on the Restore Factory Calibration button on the dialog box. The Restore Factory Calibration dialog is displayed.
2. Enter the Rack, Module, and Channel number for the desired calibration.
3. Click on Restore to initiate the task. The status of the restore will be displayed in the Instrument Status section of the dialog.
4. Click on Close to close the dialog when the restore is complete.

PPO Block Calibration

Introduction

The Calibrate PPO Block tab allows you to calibrate the selected Position Proportional Output Block to ensure that the 0% and 100% Motor Positions are actually correct and to measure the true motor speed.

The calibration of the PPO Block is similar to that of the AI and AO. However, the calibration values are stored as part of the PPO block's configuration data; not on the AI card itself.
To retain these calibrated values, upload and save the configuration to disk.

The procedure is to move the motor first to its 0% position, wait until the position feedback signal has stabilized, and capture the 0% feedback value.

A similar procedure is done next for the motor's 100% position,

The third step is to measure the true motor speed by moving the motor a fixed period of time, measuring the position feedback delta, and computing a motor speed from this data.

The final step is to save the values in the block's configuration data. All previous calibration values will be overwritten.

Calibration Procedures

There are three methods for calibrating the PPO block. Click on one of the modes shown below for instructions.

AUTO – Controller positions the motor and captures the positions.

SEMI-AUTO – Controller positions the motor and the user captures the positions.

HAND – User positions the motor by hand and captures the positions.

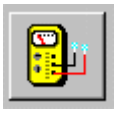
Auto Calibration Procedure

Controller automatically positions the motor and captures the positions.

NOTE: Put the controller in "Offline" or "Program" mode in order to perform calibration.

1. Select the **Utilities tab** at the bottom of the Main Window

2. Under the "Controller Utility Functions", select the **"Calibrate Controller"** icon.

   The "Calibrate" dialog box will open.
3. Select the **"PPO Block" tab** at the top of the dialog box.
4. In the "Calibration Block" field, drop-down the list of PPO blocks and **select one**.
5. Under "Calibration Mode", select the **"AUTO" radio button**.
6. Under "Calibration Procedure", press **"Start"**.

Result:

- The "Start" button is disabled and the Status indication at the top of the dialog box will change to indicate that the motor is moving to its 0% position.
  The "Feedback Value" area on the dialog will indicate movement and direction of the motor.
  The Progress Bar will indicate progress (Time Remaining) for this step.
- The status will change to indicate that the motor is at its 0% position.
  The status will change to indicate that the 0% position has been captured.
- The status will change to indicate that the motor is moving to its 100% position and the feedback area will indicate movement and direction of the motor.
  The progress bar will indicate progress (Time Remaining) for this step.
- The status will change to indicate that the motor is at its 100% position.
  The status will change to indicate that the 100% position has been captured.
- The status will change to indicate that the motor is currently undergoing speed calibration.
  The feedback area will indicate movement and direction of the motor.
  The progress bar will indicate progress (Time Remaining) for this step.
- The status will change to indicate that the PPO Calibration has been saved.

A message box appears indicating that the calibration is complete.
Three choices will also appear. **Select one.**

Press F2 to Position Motor at 0%
Press F3 to Position Motor at 100%
Press F4 to Leave Motor at Current Position

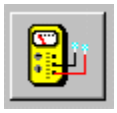
Semi-Auto Calibration Procedure

Controller automatically positions the motor and the user captures the positions

NOTE: Put the controller in "Offline" or "Program" mode in order to perform calibration.

1. Select the **Utilities tab** at the bottom of the Main Window.

2. Under the "Controller Utility Functions", select the **"Calibrate Controller" icon**



The "Calibrate" dialog box will open.

3. Select the **"PPO Block" tab** at the top of the dialog box.
4. In the "Calibration Block" field, drop-down the list of PPO blocks and **select one**.
5. Under "Calibration Mode", select the **"SEMI-AUTO**" radio button.
6. Under "Calibration Procedure", press **"Start**".
   The "Start" button is disabled and the Status indication at the top of the dialog box will change to indicate that the motor is moving to its 0% position.
   The "Feedback Value" area on the dialog will indicate movement and direction of the motor.
   The Progress Bar will indicate progress (Time Remaining) for this step.
   The status will change to indicate that the motor is at its 0% position.
7. Click the **Cal 0% button**, then the status will change to indicate that the 0% position has been captured.
   The status will change to indicate that the motor is moving to its 100% position.
   The feedback area will indicate movement and direction of the motor.
   The progress bar will indicate progress (Time Remaining) for this step.
   The status will change to indicate that the motor is at its 100% position.
8. Click the **Cal 100% button**, then the status will change to indicate that the 100% position has been captured.
9. Click the **Cal Speed button**.
   A dialog box will appear warning that the speed calibration will move the motor.
   Press "OK" to start or **"Cancel"** to abort.
   The status will change to indicate that the motor is currently undergoing speed calibration.
   The feedback area will indicate movement and direction of the motor.
   The progress bar will indicate progress (Time Remaining) for this step.
10. Click the **Save Cal button**.
    A dialog box will appear that confirms the Motor Calibration Values.
    Press "OK" to save the values or **"Cancel"** to abort.
    The status will change to READY and indicate that the PPO Calibration has been saved.

A message box appears indicating that the calibration is complete.
Three choices will also appear. **Select one**.

Press F2 to Position Motor at 0%
Press F3 to Position Motor at 100%
Press F4 to Leave Motor at Current Position

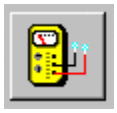
Hand Calibration Procedure

User positions the motor by hand and captures the positions.

NOTE: Put the controller in "Offline" or "Program" mode in order to perform calibration.

1. Select the **Utilities tab** at the bottom of the Main Window.

2. Under the "Controller Utility Functions", select the **"Calibrate Controller" icon**.

   The "Calibrate" dialog box will open.
3. Select the **"PPO Block" tab** at the top of the dialog box.
4. In the "Calibration Block" field, drop-down the list of PPO blocks and **select one**.
5. Under "Calibration Mode", select the **"HAND"** radio button.
6. Under "Calibration Procedure", press **"Start**".
   The "Start" button is disabled and the Cal 0% button is enabled.
7. Move the motor **by hand to its 0% position**.
   The feedback area will indicate movement and direction of the motor when it is moving.
8. When ready, click the **Cal 0% button** and the 0% position of the motor is captured as indicated in the status.
9. Move the motor **by hand to its 100% position**.
   The feedback area will indicate movement and direction of the motor when it is moving.
10. When ready, click the **Cal 100% button** and the 100% position of the motor is captured as indicated in the status.
11. Click **the Cal Speed button**
    A dialog box will appear warning that the speed calibration will move the motor.
    Press "OK" to start or **"Cancel"** to abort.
    The status will change to indicate that the motor is currently undergoing speed calibration.
    The feedback area will indicate movement and direction of the motor.
    The progress bar will indicate progress (Time Remaining)
11. Click **the Save Cal button**.
    A dialog box will appear that confirms the Motor Calibration Values.
    Press "OK" to save the values or **"Cancel"** to abort.
    The status will change to READY and indicate that the PPO Calibration has been saved.

A message box appears indicating that the calibration is complete.

18. Set Point Programming

Terms and Definitions

Term	Definition
Auxiliary Analog Value	In addition to the main ramp and soak output value, a second analog value is available for each step of the profile. This output is a fixed soak value, which may be used to provide a setpoint value for a secondary control loop in the process. An example would be a ramp and soak temperature program combined with pressure setpoints for each step of the profile.
Cycles	A portion of a profile or the entire program may be repeated up to 100 times or indefinitely as specified in the program **Cycles** count value.
Engineering Units	You must assign a descriptor consisting of up to 4 keyboard characters for the engineering units that the setpoint value represents. For example, **GPM** for gallons per minute, **NPS** for number per second, **RPM** for revolutions per minute, and **DEGF** for degrees Fahrenheit.
Guaranteed Hold Soak Limits	Limits High and Low (above and below the Setpoint value) can be configured in selected engineering units. If the PV is outside of configured limits just prior to entering the Soak segment, the soak timer will not be permitted to start. It will start when the PV is within the High and Low limits. Once the soak timer has started and then the PV goes outside of configured limits, the soak timer will halt. It will remain halted until the PV is again within the configured limits. A Guaranteed Hold High or Low limit setting of 0.00 is equal to no limit at all.
Number of Segments	Segments are timed ramp and soak subdivisions of a setpoint program. Consecutive ramps and soaks are allowed. The last segment must be a soak.
Power Loss	A **recovery ramp rate value** is provided in the event of a power loss while a program is running. The ramp rate value is used to return the process to the last operating setpoint prior to power loss. A power OFF digital input and separate timing block will abort the running program if power loss has been OFF for more than a specified time period. If Restart pin is connected, must enter a value into Profile Restart Rate. If left = 0 profile will not proceed.
Program	The term "Program" is used to identify the process for selecting and entering the individual ramp and soak segment data for a Setpoint Program function block (SPP) needed to generate a required setpoint versus time **profile** (also called a program).
Program Name	During configuration you must assign a name (descriptive reference) consisting of from 1 to 8 letters or numbers without spaces. Thus, a name can be a combination of letters and numbers. Note that lowercase letters are automatically converted to uppercase.
Program Number	This number is assigned when the software or the Operator Interface creates the profile. The program number is assigned in the "Setpoint Profile Pool" and is shown on the "Edit Setpoint Profile" dialog box.
Ramp Segments	A ramp segment is a starting setpoint and the time or rate to reach the setpoint of the following segment. Typically, segment #1 will be a ramp. Ramp time is determined in either: **TIME***—Hours or Minutes Range = 0.00 hr. to 999.99 hr. / 0.00 min. to 999.99 min. OR **RATE***—EU/MIN or EU/HR Range = 0 to 999.99 *This selection of time or rate is made when you configure properties. Make this selection before entering any Ramp during Profile Edit. NOTE: When Ramp unit is configured for TIME, entering "0" will imply an immediate step change in setpoint to the next soak.
Running a Profile	Setpoint profiles may be **started, held, advanced, jogged** to a predefined segment or reset from the operator interface or by digital inputs to the block. Programs may be started from a pre-

Term	Definition
	selected segment number.
Segment	A segment is a ramp or soak function which together make up a Setpoint Profile.
Segment Events	You can configure 1 to 16 segment events to turn ON or OFF at the beginning of each segment. Segment events are digital switches that provide ON/OFF outputs through an SPEV control block. **When a segment event is turned ON, it remains ON until the end of the segment at which time it is turned OFF unless it is configured to turn ON in the next segment**. Note that segment events are not interrupted by soak time delays when the process variable is outside the guaranteed soak band. Events turn ON as soon as the previous segment is completed even if the process variable has not reached the soak setpoint. When the program completes, the events are held at current value until the programmer is returned to the ready state.
Setpoint Guarantee	There is a setpoint guarantee function provided that holds the program if a PV exceeds a predefined deviation from setpoint. Selections allow setpoint guarantee to be active for all segments, soak segments only, or for specified segments. Up to 3 Process Variables may be configured as inputs to the block for setpoint guarantee.
Setpoint Value	A setpoint value set for **Ramp** (starting Setpoint value) and Soak(soak setpoint value)segments
Soak Segments	A soak segment is a combination of soak setpoint (value) and soak duration (time). The last segment **must** be a Soak. The soak setpoint range value must be within the setpoint high and low range limits in engineering units. SOAK TIME is the duration of the soak and is determined in: **TIME***—Hours or Minutes Range = 0.00 hr. to 999.99 hr. / 0.00 min. to 999.99 min. *This selection is made when you configure properties.
Synchronizing Programs	Two setpoint programs operating on the same time base can be synchronized using the Synchronize (SYNC) function block. This block automatically starts the second program when the first program is started and maintains synchronization when either program is place in hold.

What is a Setpoint Program?

A Setpoint Program is really a **setpoint versus time profile** that establishes the setpoint values and how they are to vary with time.

Each setpoint profile consists of segments. Each segment of the profile may be a ramp or a soak except the last step that must be a soak.

In addition to the main ramp and soak output value, a second analog value (Aux. Output) is available for each step of the program. This output is a fixed soak value that may be used to provide a setpoint value for a secondary control loop in the process. An example would be a ramp and soak temperature program combined with pressure setpoints for each step of the program.

Each segment can turn on segment events to provide ON/OFF signals through a Setpoint Program Events (SPEV) control block that is used in conjunction with an SPP block.

Each Profile carries its own unique number and a name for identification. (The names are descriptive references [aliases] and uniqueness is not enforced.) Unique names are recommended to avoid operator confusion).

Using the software, you can set the setpoint values, soak times, guaranteed soak band, ramp rates, and event action for individual setpoint profiles in configuration and access the information through the Setpoint profile display in the operator interface. This means that an operator can adjust individual ramp and soak segment settings during operation, but the general profile configuration, including number and name, is under configuration control.

However, any changes made through the SPP Operate display to a program that is running in an SPP block will **not** be written as changes in the program configuration.

Setpoint Program Configuration Overview

Introduction

Setpoint Program (Profile) configuration provides a quick and easy way to create, edit, and save up to 99 different ramp/soak (setpoint) profiles for the Setpoint Programmer (SPP) control blocks in the configuration. An operator can interact with the configured profiles through the Setpoint Program Operate display at the operator interface or operation can be directed through integral actions connected by Softwiring functions.

Configuration Functions

Basic functions that you will use to configure a Setpoint Profile.

- Create/Edit Setpoint Profile - Under File-New or File-Open you can access the Profile Editor to create or edit a setpoint profile.
- Setpoint Profile Pool - The SP Profile Pool lets you add or delete a profile on a list of configured profiles. Through two menus on the dialog box you can set the properties for each profile and set up or edit the information for each segment that make up a profile.
- Setpoint Profile Properties - Setpoint Profile Properties is information for the profile that is entered on five specific tabs. It includes Text, General, Loop/Jog, and Start/Restart.
- Setpoint Profile Setup (EDIT) - Setpoint Profile Setup or Edit consists of configuring each segment of the profile and assigning the ramps and soaks and associated information (Values, Time, Auxiliary output, Guaranteed Hold, and Events) in the order required to complete your SP program.

19. Setpoint Schedulers

Setpoint Scheduler Overview

Setpoint Scheduler blocks may be configured for multi-setpoint control. Comprising the suite is a Master block (SPS), Auxiliary Setpoint block (SPSA), Event Decoder block (SPEV), State Switch Block (STSW), and State Flags block (STFL).

The Master block supports ramp or soak outputs operating on a common time base. It accepts one PV for each setpoint. Setpoint guarantee is provided for the master (SPS) block setpoints with a single symmetrical value for each setpoint output.

You can assign a Failsafe value for each setpoint.

The Auxiliary block supports soak only outputs.

The Event block supports event outputs.

A single schedule may include segments and auxiliary block data. The schedules are stored in the controller's memory.

Setpoint Schedules offer the same operating modes and digital controls as setpoint programs.

On-line editing of a running schedule is supported through dedicated operator interface displays

Setpoint Guarantee

Setpoint guarantee is provided for the master block setpoints with a single symmetrical value for each setpoint output. Actions for the guarantee soak may be set on a per segment basis for OFF, high setpoint deviation, low setpoint deviation or both high and low setpoint deviations.

Segments

Each segment of the Setpoint Scheduler allows entry of a next segment recycle location. This function allows unlimited recycle nesting and continuous recycle operation. A jog function allows a single jump to a designated segment number through a digital input to the State Switch block.

Labels

Main Output Labels
Eight character labels and four character engineering units are provided for each Setpoint plus a decimal point selection.
Auxiliary Output Labels
Eight character labels and four character engineering units are provided for each Setpoint plus a decimal point selection
Event Labels
Eight character labels are also provided for the Digital Event block.

Assigning these labels first will aid you in the setpoint schedule configuration process. These labels will appear in the configuration dialog boxes.

Setpoint Schedule Overview

Introduction

Setpoint Schedule configuration provides a quick and easy way to create, edit, and save up to 20 different Setpoint Schedules for the Setpoint Scheduler (SPS) control blocks in the configuration. An operator can interact with the configured schedules through the Setpoint Program Operate display at the operator interface or operation can be directed through integral actions connected by Softwiring functions.

Setpoint Scheduler Display Configuration

ATTENTION

Before you proceed with the Setpoint Schedule assign the appropriate labels for the Setpoint Scheduler displays.

Assigning these labels first will aid you in the schedule configuration process.
See Setpoint Scheduler Function Block configuration.
These labels will appear in the configuration dialog boxes.

Configuration Functions

Basic functions that you will use to configure a Setpoint Schedule.

- Create/edit Setpoint Schedule - Under File-New or File-Open you can access the Schedule Editor to create or edit a setpoint schedule.
- Setpoint Schedule Pool - The SP Schedule Pool lets you add or delete a schedule on a list of configured schedules. Through this dialog box you will set the properties for each schedule and set up or edit the information for each segment that make up a schedule.
- Setpoint Schedule Properties - Setpoint Schedule Properties is information for the schedule that a Label, a Jog Segment, Time Units, and Guaranteed Hold Limits for each of the eight setpoints.
- Setup/Edit Setpoint Schedule - Setpoint Schedule Setup or Edit consists of configuring each segment of the schedule and assigning starting values for all eight Setpoints of the segment and the Guaranteed Hold Type for each. You can also set up to 16 events for each segment. Time Units, Recycle Segment, and Recycle Counts selections are included on this dialog box.
- You can also assign values to all eight Auxiliary Outputs for each segment by clicking on each “Aux” button on the dialog box.

20. Sequencers

What is Sequence Control?

The need to control a sequence of operation is a very common control requirement in industrial equipment today. Sequence control can be a very rigid series of inter-related events used to start-up or shut-down a unit process, or it can be a series of timed and process measurement dependent events that are executed to produce a final product.

Sequences can be very simple with only timed or cascaded events that occur regardless of process feedback, or they can be very complex with multiple nested default sequences programmed to occur only if process feedback indicates a need to take alternate actions.

When sequence control is used to produce final product, sequence variations are often required to allow the same equipment to be used to produce multiple types of product. In these applications the sequence is often partitioned into logical units to allow operators and supervisors to monitor the progress of the process using familiar terminology. Heat-up, cool-down, filling, venting, mixing and other similar terms are often used to describe the particular phase the control equipment is executing.

Variations in the product being processed can require changes to the sequence where particular phases are bypassed, duplicated or executed in an alternate manner.

When all of these requirements are combined in a single control specification, developing a suitable control strategy can be a demanding and sophisticated endeavor.

Sequence Configuration Overview

The sequencer function block controls the output statuses of up to 16 digital outputs and one auxiliary analog output. Each combination of outputs represents a state of the sequence such as Heat, Mix, or Cool, for example. The function block supports up to 50 states e.g. PURGE, FILL, HEAT, etc.

The sequence contains up to 64 steps. Each step enables a state, allowing for a state to be designated for several steps.

A pool of 20 sequences, up to 64 steps each, may be stored in controller memory for quick recall and assignment to any of the 4 sequencers.

Each state supports two of digital events as inputs that can designate the end of the associated step.

Time in seconds or minutes, a manual advance, or a digital event can be used to terminate a sequencer step and cause the sequence to advance.

The operational sequence for the steps is retained in a separate sequence file in the memory pool of the controller that may be selected on-demand through a user interface or via a recipe (variables).

Configuration Functions

Basic functions that you will use to configure a Sequence.

Sequence Editor

Create/Edit a Sequence under the File-New or File-Open menus. Accesses the Sequence Editor.

Sequence Pool

When you select "Sequences" from the Recipe menu, the "Sequence Pool" dialog box will be displayed. Through this display, you will add a new sequence or delete an existing one and also enter the properties function and the "Edit Sequence" function to set up each sequence.

Sequence Properties

Sequence Properties is information for the sequencer: Label, Description, a Jog Step, and Time Units.

Sequence Setup (EDIT)

Sequence Setup or Edit consists of configuring each step of the Sequence with a State Number and Name, Time In Step, Time Next Step, Event 1 Next Step, Event 2 Next Step, Advance next step, and an Auxiliary value.

21. Recipes

Recipe Overview

Multiple meanings of "recipe"

Loop control users apply the word "recipe" differently in different contexts. There is no industry standard for the word's meaning. In a broader sense, a recipe is any collection of data specific to a process setup that can be downloaded into and then run as part of controller's function block configuration. The following are recipe types:

Recipe (Variables)

Set Point Profile

Set Point Schedule

Sequence

Notice the first recipe type is also called a recipe. The two uses of the word "recipe" can get confusing. In this narrower sense, a recipe is a collection of data—specifically, variables. To distinguish it from the broader meaning HC Designer calls it **"recipe (variables)"**.

To one user a recipe is a collection of variables; to another user a recipe is a set point profile; to another user a recipe is a set point schedule; to another it's a sequence. These different uses of the word "recipe" are all ok as long as you understand they are all recipes in the broader sense.

A recipe needs a configuration for context

A recipe by itself is ineffective; it must be associated with a specific controller configuration to give it context. Therefore, when creating or opening a recipe you must specify for which configuration the recipe applies to. Set Point Profiles are excluded from this requirement.

Recipe type	How linked to configuration
Recipe	Variable tag names
Setpoint Profile	Not linked to configuration
Setpoint Schedule	Event labels
Sequence	State Name, Event Signal #1, Event Signal # 2

Compatibility

It is up to you to understand how your recipes will work with your configurations. For example, when you download a recipe (variables) (.rcp) to a controller, the recipe's variables, sequential order and their values might make sense in one controller configuration but not another.

Recipe locations

Once created, a recipe can reside in several places. Be aware that having multiple copies of a recipe can cause mix-ups. For example, suppose you've created a recipe (any type) called COOKIES. It can reside in the following places.

COOKIES saved as a separate recipe file to disk or floppy. Recipe files can be added to a recipe pool. (See Recipe file types.)

COOKIES in the recipe pool of a configuration saved to disk as a .CDE file.

COOKIES in the recipe pool of a currently open configuration in the software. (See Recipes menu)

COOKIES in the recipe pool of your controller's running configuration. Here it is available to be loaded into the controller's function block configuration.

COOKIES actively loaded and running in your controller's function blocks.

This example applies to all recipe types (recipe (variables), schedules, sequences, profiles).

Recipe file types

After creating a recipe or editing one in the recipe pool, you can save a recipe to disk using the following extensions (assigned automatically).

Recipe (variables): .RCP

Set Point Profile: .PRF

Set Point Schedule: .SCH

Sequence: .SEQ

When part of a configuration's recipe pool, a recipe is not saved as a separate file but is saved in a "slot" in the pool as part of the configuration (.CDE). Any recipe can be accessed in the configuration's recipe pools and saved as its own recipe file if desired.

Recipes Menu

Accesses all recipe pools. To learn about the different recipe types read Recipe Overview.

Menu Selection	Function
Allocate Recipe Memory	Allocates the controller's memory for the four recipe types. This is the number of recipes that can be stored in the controller's four recipe pools. Recipes in these pools can be loaded and run by Recipe Selection Blocks, Programmers, Schedulers, and Sequencers. As recipe memory usage increases, less memory is available for other parts of your configuration (such as function blocks).
Recipes (Variables)…	A recipe (variables) is a list of Variables with settings that define the ingredients needed to make a product or run a particular batch. This selection opens the Recipe Pool dialog box and allows viewing, adding, editing, and printing of Recipe details. You can save the selected recipe item to a file; open a recipe file and insert it into the pool; and download the selected recipe item to a controller's recipe pool.
Setpoint Profiles…	Setpoint Program (Profile) configuration provides a quick and easy way to create, edit, and save different ramp/soak (setpoint) profiles for the Setpoint Programmer (SPP) control blocks in the configuration. This selection opens the Setpoint Profile Pool dialog box and allows viewing, adding, editing, and printing of Setpoint Profile details. You can save the selected SPP item to a file; open a SPP file and insert it into the pool; and download the selected SPP item to a controller's Setpoint Profiles pool.
Setpoint Schedules…	Setpoint Schedule configuration provides a quick and easy way to create, edit, and save different Setpoint Schedules for the Setpoint Scheduler (SPS) control blocks in the configuration. This selection opens the Setpoint Schedule Pool dialog box and allows viewing, adding, editing, and printing of Setpoint Schedules details. You can save the selected SPS item to a file; open a SPS file and insert it into the pool; and download the selected SPS item to a controller's Setpoint Schedule pool.
Sequences…	Sequence configuration provides a series of inter-related events used to start-up or shut-down a unit process, or a series of timed and process measurement dependent events that are executed to produce a final product. This selection opens the Sequence Pool dialog box and allows viewing, adding, editing, and printing of Sequence details. You can save the selected SEQ item to a file; open a SEQ file and insert it into the pool; and download the selected SEQ item to a controller's Sequence pool.

22. Recipe (Variables)

Introduction

Each recipe consists of Variables, and carries its own unique recipe number and name for identification. (The names are descriptive references [aliases] and uniqueness is not enforced. Unique names are recommended to avoid operator confusion). The selected Variables were assigned during the Function Block Diagram Configuration.

It is possible to edit the setting of any recipe Variables through the Recipe Setup display at the operator interface. This means that an operator can adjust individual ingredient amounts in the recipe; but the ingredients (item's Variable Name), the order of the ingredients, and the recipe's number and name are under configuration control.

The recipe variable list is configured using the Designer application. An operator will be able to change individual item values through the Operator Interface.

For automatic loading of a setpoint profile in addition to other variables, a variable representing a profile number may be included in the recipe. This would also apply to a schedule or sequence number.

Recipe Attributes

A recipe is a list of Variables with settings that define the ingredients needed to make a product or run a particular batch. The items represent Analog and/or Digital Points that were assigned in the Function Block Configuration and are identified by their Variable Names. Recipes have these basic attributes:

Recipe Number - A unique number must be assigned for each recipe that is configured. Numbers can be assigned in any sequence with gaps between numbers, but no two recipes can be given the same number.

Recipe Name - A descriptive name must be assigned consisting of letters or numbers with no spaces. Thus, a name can be any combination of letters and numbers without spaces. Note that lowercase letters are automatically converted to uppercase letters.

Recipe Variables - A list of Variables can be compiled for each recipe. A valid Variable and desired setting must be specified for each recipe item.

Adjustable Settings - The setting for an analog point can be any appropriate value from–99999 to 99999, and a digital point can be set in its ON or OFF state. It is possible to edit/change any recipe item/Variable Name setting through the "Edit Recipe" Setup dialog box during configuration.

Recipe (Variables) Configuration

Overview

A recipe is a list of Variables with settings that define the ingredients needed to make a product or run a particular batch. The items represent Analog and/or Digital Points that are assigned in the Function Block Configuration and are identified by their Variable Names.

Configuration Functions

Basic functions that you will use to configure a Recipe:

Recipe Editor

Create/Edit a Recipe under the File-New or
File-Open menus. Accesses the Recipe Editor.

Recipe Pool

When you select "Recipes" from the Recipe menu, the "Recipe Pool " dialog box will be displayed. Through this display, you will add a new recipe or delete an existing one and also enter the properties function and the "Edit Recipe" function to set up each recipe.

Recipe Properties

The Recipe Properties is merely a name assigned to the recipe, which will be added to the pool. You can also include a descriptor.

Recipe Setup (EDIT)

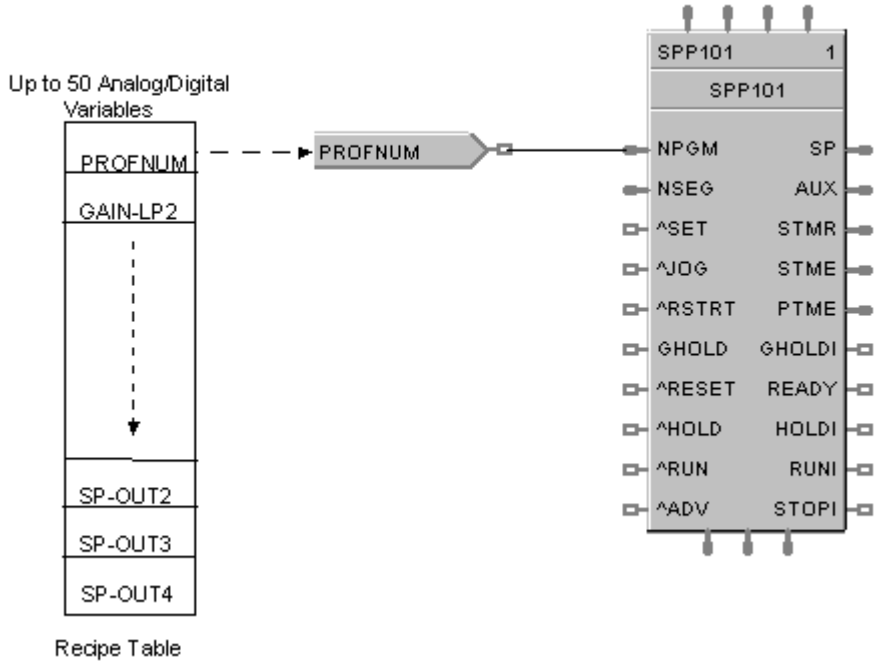
Recipe Set Up or Edit consists of selecting Variable names, assigning an analog value or digital state, and adding them to a list of Recipe items.

Using Recipes to Download Setpoint Profiles

Recipes can be given a 16-character name and shown on the Recipe Menu display for user selection (accessed through the Main Menu selections of the Operator Interface).

A Recipe can automatically load a stored profile number for use by a specific Set Point Programmer. To do this connect an Analog Variable to the NPGM pin of the Set Point Programmer block given a name such as PROFNUM (see figure below). This Variable is added to the variable list for a recipe and given a number corresponding to the profile number to be loaded. Upon selection and loading of the recipe at the Operator Interface, the programmer will also load the profile number listed in the recipe. The operation of the programmer to run this profile is from the standard Set Point Programmer display.

As an example, for a selection of a SP Profile number 2, the entries into the Edit Recipe dialog box would be
VARIABLE NAME = PROFNUM VALUE = 2



Create/Edit Recipe (Variables) File

Creates/edits a group of variables to be saved as a file (.RCP). File can be downloaded to the recipe pool. A recipe in the pool can later be edited or loaded into the controller's active configuration. The file assumes that the variables are in a certain order in the configuration. Make sure that this order is preserved when loading into a controller's active configuration. Changes to variables via deletions, renaming, or re-directing may affect the recipe content.

Step/Item	**Action/Description**
Select File, Open.	Let's you choose an .RCP file to edit. After selecting file the Recipe Editor appears.
OR	
Select File, New.	"Choose a new file type" box appears.
Select Recipes tab.	Recipe types appear.
Select Recipes (Variables).	The Recipe Editor appears.
THEN	
Select a Reference Configuration.	A recipe must have a configuration to give it context. Select an open configuration from the pull-down list. If none available, select Open Configuration to open one. The configuration will open. Click back to Recipe Editor and select the reference configuration.
Name and Description	Identify the recipe.
Variable Tag List	Lists all variable tags in the reference configuration. Click on a tag and click Add to add it to the recipe.
Recipe Items Name Value	Lists all variables in the recipe. Name of variable Value/state of variable. If analog variable, enter a value in the value field. If digital variable, select ON or OFF.
Delete	Deletes selected item from recipe.
Print	Prints the recipe
Save	Saves the recipe as .RCP file.
Download	Downloads recipe to the controller's recipe pool where it can be edited or loaded into the controller's active configuration.

Recipe Pool

Introduction

This is the recipe (variables) pool. The Recipe Pool lets you add or delete a Recipe on a list of configured Recipes and also enter the "Properties" function and the "Edit Recipe " function to set up each recipe.

Configuration

When you select "Recipes (Variables)" from the Recipes menu, the "Recipe Pool" dialog box will be displayed. From left to right the icons are:

ADD a Recipe:
Put cursor on an empty pool line and select the **NEW** Icon. The "Recipe Properties" dialog box will open.

EDIT the Properties of an Existing Profile:
Select the **Worksheet Properties** Icon. The "Recipe properties" dialog box will open.

EDIT a Recipe:
Select the **Edit Recipe** Icon. The "Edit Recipe" dialog box will appear.

COPY and PASTE:
Select a recipe from the pool window, then select the **Copy** Icon. Select another location in the pool window, then select the **Paste** Icon. The copied recipe will be inserted into the location selected.

DELETE a Recipe:
Click on a recipe name and then click on the **Delete** icon.

PRINT a Recipe:
Click on a recipe name and then select the **Print** icon. The "Print" dialog box will appear.
Select OK.
A recipe report will be printed with all the information entered on the "Recipe Properties" dialog box. [Variable, Description, Value or State]

SAVE a Recipe:
To save a recipe as a .rcp file, click on a recipe name and then select the Save icon. The "Save As" dialog box will appear.

OPEN a Recipe:
To open a previously saved .rcp file and insert it into the pool, click on the Open icon.

DOWNLOAD a Recipe:
To download a recipe to the controller’s recipe pool, click on the Download icon.

Setup/Edit a Recipe in Pool

The "Edit Recipes" dialog box lets you set up or edit a recipe listed in the "Recipe Pool."

Make sure you have clicked on "Properties " and have given that specific recipe a name and description. See RECIPE POOL before proceeding.

Procedure

1. Click on a recipe name in the active field and select "Recipe" or double click on the recipe name. The "Edit Recipe" dialog box will appear.
2. **To ADD Variable to a Recipe:**
   Select a variable and click on ADD. A variable number will appear under "Recipe Items".
3. **To DELETE a Variable from a Recipe:**
   Select a **variable number** from the "Recipe Items" field, then click "Delete".
4. **To SET UP a Recipe Item**
   From the "Recipe Items" list, select a variable name from the list of recipe items.
5. If it is an **analog variable***,* **enter a value** in the value field.
6. If it is a **digital variable***,* **select ON or OFF**, from the drop-down menu in the Value field, as a digital state for the variable.
7. **Repeat this procedure** for each **recipe variable** desired for the recipe you are configuring.
8. **Click "OK**". The length of the Recipe (number of variables) will appear in the "Recipe Pool".
9. **Click "CLOSE"** on the "Recipe Pool' dialog box to complete the configuration.

Recipe Properties

The Recipe Properties dialog box contains fields for you to enter:

- a recipe name you want assigned to the recipe, which will be added to the pool.
- a descriptor of 16 characters.

23. Setpoint Profiles

Create/Edit Setpoint Profile File

Creates/edits a setpoint profile be saved as a file (.PRF). File can be downloaded to the setpoint profile pool. A profile in the pool can be edited or loaded into the controller's active configuration.

Step/Item	Action/Description
Select File, Open.	Let's you choose a .PRF file to edit. After selecting file the Profile Editor appears.
OR	
Select File, New.	"Choose a new file type" box appears.
Select Recipes tab.	Recipe types appear.
Select Setpoint Profile	The Profile Editor appears.
THEN	
Name and Description	Identify the profile.
Properties	This function lets you set the properties for the profile. The information configured here will appear in the Edit SP Profile dialog box.
Ramp Type Eng. Units Time Units Aux. Out Units Guar. Hold Type Guar. Hold High Guar. Hold Low Setpoint Type	Properties of the profile. You can change these under Properties.
Add	Adds a step.
Insert	Inserts a step.
Delete	Deletes selected step.
Type	Ramp or Soak. A ramp segment is a starting setpoint and the time or rate to reach the setpoint of the following segment. Typically, segment #1 will be a ramp.
SP Value	Setpoint value set for Ramp (starting Setpoint value) and Soak (soak setpoint value).
Time/Rate	Ramp time is determined in either: TIME*-Hours or Minutes Range =0:00 hr. to 999:59 hr. / 0:00 min. to 999:59 min. OR RATE*-EU/MIN or EU/HR Range =0 to 999.99 *This selection of time or rate is made when you configure properties. Make this selection before entering any Ramp. NOTE: When Ramp unit is configured for TIME, entering "0" will imply an immediate step change in setpoint to the next soak.

Step/Item	Action/Description
Aux. Out	In addition to the main ramp and soak output value, a second analog value is available for each step of the profile. This output is a fixed soak value, which may be used to provide a setpoint value for a secondary control loop in the process. An example would be a ramp and soak temperature program combined with pressure setpoints for each step of the profile.
Guar. Hold	OFF or ON. Choose ON to hold the program if a process variable exceeds a predefined deviation from setpoint.
Events	You can configure 1 to 16 segment events to turn ON or OFF at the beginning of each segment. Segment events are digital switches that provide ON/OFF outputs through an SPEV control block. When a segment event is turned ON, it remains ON until the end of the segment at which time it is turned OFF unless it is configured to turn ON in the next segment. Note that segment events are not interrupted by soak time delays when the process variable is outside the guaranteed soak band. Events turn ON as soon as the previous segment is completed even if the process variable has not reached the soak setpoint. When the program completes, the events are held at current value until the programmer is returned to the ready state.
Print	Prints the profile.
Save	Saves the profile as .PRF file.
Download	Downloads profile to the controller's Setpoint Profile Pool where it can be edited or loaded into the controller's active configuration.

Setpoint Profile Properties

Introduction

This function lets you set the properties for the program selected in the Setpoint Profile Pool. Appears when creating a new profile or editing one in the setpoint profile pool.

Parameters

1. Enter the properties information in the appropriate fields in the dialog box, then click "OK".

Parameter	Parameter Description	Entry Information
TEXT		
Label	Profile Name	8 characters
Descriptor	Description of Profile	16 characters
Primary Output Label	Primary Output Descriptor Name.	8 characters
Primary Output Engineering Units	Primary Output Engineering Units descriptor	4 characters
Auxiliary Output Label	Auxiliary Output Descriptor name	8 characters
Auxiliary Output Engineering Units	Auxiliary Output Engineering Units descriptor	Auxiliary Output Engineering Units descriptor
GENERAL		
Ramp Type		
Rate	Each ramp segment's time specifies the RATE at which that profile's output will reach the next segment.	Click on Radio button
Time	Each ramp segment's time is the TIME allotted to the profile's output to reach the next segment's value in hours or minutes.	Click on Radio button
Guaranteed Hold Type		
None	No guaranteed hold if a PV deviates a specified amount above or below the profile output.	Click on Radio button
Per Segment	Let’s you select specific segments for guaranteed soak where you set up the profile ramps and soaks.	Click on Radio button
All Soaks	All soaks will have a guaranteed soak.	Click on Radio button
All Segments	All segments will have a guaranteed soak	Click on Radio button

Time Units *Hours* *Minutes*	 This selection assigns the time units of all segments in HOURS. This selection assigns the time units of all segments in MINUTES.	Click on Radio button Click on Radio button
Guaranteed Hold High	A Number in Engineering Units above the setpoint outside of which the timer halts	Enter a value
Guaranteed Hold High	Enter a Number in Engineering Units below the setpoint outside of which the timer halts.	Enter a value
Set Point type *Initial* *Target*	 With this selection, profiles will ramp to the next segment SP value from the current value. With this selection, profiles will ramp to the current segment SP value from the current value.	 Click on Radio button Click on Radio button
LOOP/JOG		
Jog Segment	Segment number jog will go to.	Enter a value
Loop *Start Segment* *End Segment* *Cycles*	 This designates the number of the first segment of the loop. This designates the number of the last segment of the loop. The last segment of a program must be a soak segment. Last segment of a loop can be a ramp or soak. This number lets the program repeat (loop) a specified number of time from beginning to end. An entry of 0 will cause an indefinite loop.	Enter a value from 1 to 49 Enter a value from 2 to 50 Enter a value from 0 to 100
START/RESTART Restart Rate	 The Restart Rate value is used to return the process to the last operating setpoint prior to power loss when restart input is connected to power off timing block.	Enter a value in Engineering Units

2. Click on the tab to access the properties for that tab.
3. Enter the information required for each tab then click "OK".
4. Click on the profile name in the Setpoint Profile Pool and select the Edit Segments Icon (3rd from left) from the Toolbar on the dialog box.

24. Setpoint Schedules

Create/Edit Setpoint Schedule file

Creates/edits a setpoint schedule be saved as a file (.SCH). File can be downloaded to the setpoint schedule pool. A schedule in the pool can be edited or loaded into the controller's active configuration.

Step/Item	Action/Description
Select File, Open.	Let's you choose a .SCH file to edit. After selecting file the Schedule Editor appears.
OR	
Select File, New.	"Choose a new file type" box appears.
Select Recipes tab.	Recipe types appear.
Select Setpoint Schedule.	The Schedule Editor appears.
THEN	
Select a Reference Configuration.	A schedule must have a configuration to give it context. Select an open configuration from the pull-down list. If none available, select Open Configuration to open one. The configuration will open. Click back to Schedule Editor and select the reference configuration.
Name and Description	Identify the schedule.
Properties	Sets properties for the schedule, such as time units and guaranteed hold limits.
Time	Length of time for the segment.
SP1-SP8	Setpoint values. For ramp segments these are the starting values.
Events 1-16	Segment events are digital switches that provide ON/OFF output through an SPS function block. When a segment event is turned ON, it remains on until the end of the segment at which time it is turned OFF unless it is configured to turn ON in the next segment. Select from the drop-down menu which events you want to turn ON or OFF at the beginning of each segment.
Aux1-Aux8	The auxiliary block supports up to 8 soak only outputs. You can assign values to all eight Auxiliary Outputs for each segment.
GHold1-GHold8	Setpoint guarantee is provided for the master block setpoints with a single symmetrical value for each setpoint output. Actions for the guarantee soak may be set on a per segment basis for OFF, HIGH setpoint deviation, LOW setpoint deviation or both HIGH and LOW setpoint deviations. Click on an active field and select a GHOLD Type from Drop-down menu: OFF - No Guaranteed Hold HIGH setpoint deviation - The schedule will hold if a PV deviates above the Setpoint value set. LOW setpoint deviation - The schedule will hold if a PV deviates below the Setpoint value set on the "Setpoint Schedule Properties" dialog box. HIGH and LOW setpoint deviations - The schedule will hold if a PV deviates above or below the Setpoint value set on the "Setpoint Schedule Properties" dialog box.
Recycle Segment	The segment number at which a recycle will start. Enter a value 0 to 50

Step/Item	Action/Description
Recycle Count	This number lets the schedule repeat (loop) a specified number of times. Enter a value 0-999 or 0 for infinite.
Delete	Deletes selected item from schedule.
Print	Prints the schedule.
Save	Saves the schedule as .SCH file.
Download	Downloads schedule to the controller's schedule pool where it can be edited or loaded into the controller's active configuration.

Setpoint Schedule Pool

Introduction

The SP Schedule Pool lets you add or delete a schedule on a list of configured schedules. Through this dialog box you will set the properties for each schedule and then set up or edit the information for each segment that make up a schedule.

Configuration

When you select "Setpoint Schedules" from the Recipe menu, the "Setpoint Schedule Pool" dialog box will be displayed. Through this display, you will add a new schedule or delete an existing one and also enter the set properties function and the "Edit Schedule" function to set up each schedule.

From left to right the icons are:

To ADD a Schedule:
Select the **NEW** Icon. The "Setpoint Schedule Properties " dialog box will open.

To EDIT the *Properties of an Existing Schedule:*
Select the **Worksheet Properties** Icon. The "Setpoint Schedule Properties " dialog box will open.

To EDIT a *Schedule:*
Select the **Edit Segments** Icon. The "Edit Setpoint Schedule" dialog box will appear.

COPY and PASTE:
Select a schedule from the pool window, then select the **Copy** Icon. Select another location in the pool window, then select the **Paste** Icon. The copied schedule will be inserted into the location selected.

To DELETE a Schedule:
Click on a schedule name and then click on the Delete icon.

PRINT a Schedule:
Click on a schedule name and select the **Print** icon. The "Print" dialog box will appear.
Select OK.
A profile report will be printed with all the information entered on the tabs of the "Setpoint Schedule Properties" dialog box.

SAVE a Schedule:
To save a Schedule as a .sch file, click on a recipe name and then select the Save icon. The "Save As" dialog box will appear.

OPEN a Schedule:
To open a previously saved .sch file and insert it into the pool, click on the Open icon.

DOWNLOAD a Schedule:
To download a Schedule to the controller's Schedule pool, click on the Download icon.

Setup/Edit Setpoint Schedule in Pool

Introduction

The “Edit Schedule” dialog box lets you set up or edit a schedule from the schedules listed in the “Setpoint Schedule Pool.”

Make sure you have clicked on “Properties ” and have configured the properties for that specific Schedule.

Edit a Schedule

Click on a schedule name in the active field and select the **Edit Segments** Icon (3rd from left) from the **Toolbar** on the dialog box or double click on the schedule name.

The “**Edit Schedule Segments**” dialog box will appear with the selected Schedule indicated on the top banner. The Designer presents multiple segments at a time to view and edit.

To ADD a Segment
Click on ADD on the dialog box. A new Segment number will appear at the bottom of the segment list.

To DELETE a Segment
Click on a segment number in the field and click “Delete” on the dialog box. The segment will be deleted and all the segment numbers following the deletion will be changed.

To EDIT a Segment
Each segment contains the following Segment attributes: (click on field for drop down menu to appear for some selections)

Parameter	Parameter Description	Entry Information
Time	Length of time for the segment Time Units were selected in the “Setpoint Schedule Function Block Properties ” Dialog Box	Value in Minutes or Hours, whichever has been selected.
Setpoint Values	Setpoint 1 through Setpoint 8	Enter a starting setpoint value in each active field
Ghold Type **[Ghold1 thru Ghold8]**	Setpoint guarantee is provided for the master block setpoints with a single symmetrical value for each setpoint output. Actions for the guarantee soak may be set on a per segment basis for OFF, HIGH setpoint deviation, LOW setpoint deviation or both HIGH and LOW setpoint deviations.	Click on an active field and select a GHOLD Type from Drop-down menu
	OFF - No Guaranteed Hold	
	HIGH setpoint deviation The schedule will hold if a PV deviates above the Setpoint value set.	
	LOW setpoint deviation The schedule will hold if a PV deviates below the Setpoint value set on the “Setpoint Schedule Properties” dialog box.	
	HIGH and LOW setpoint deviations The schedule will hold if a PV deviates above or below the Setpoint value set on the “Setpoint Schedule Properties” dialog box.	

Parameter	Parameter Description	Entry Information
Auxiliary Outputs [Aux1 thru Aux8]	The auxiliary block supports up to 8 soak only outputs. You can assign values to all eight Auxiliary Outputs for each segment.	Enter values for all Auxiliary Outputs in the appropriate fields.
Recycle Segment	The segment number at which a recycle will start	Enter a value 0 to 50
Recycle Count	This number lets the schedule repeat (loop) a specified number of times.	Enter a value 0-999 or 0 for infinite
Events [Events 1 thru 16]	Segment events are digital switches that provide ON/OFF output through an SPS function block . When a segment event is turned ON, it remains on until the end of the segment at which time it is turned OFF unless it is configured to turn ON in the next segment.	Select, from the drop-down menu, which events you want to turn ON or OFF at the beginning of each segment. Click on the box for each segment. A zero will change to 1 in the selected event position

Setpoint Schedule Properties

Introduction

This function lets you set the properties for the schedule selected in the Setpoint Schedule Pool. If you are adding a schedule, this dialog box will automatically appear. It will also appear if you select the **Worksheet Properties** Icon (2nd from left) from the **Toolbar** on the dialog box. The information configured here will appear in the “Edit Schedule Segment” dialog box.

Configuration

Refer to the table below and enter the properties information in the appropriate fields in the dialog box, then click “OK”. You will return to the “Setpoint Schedule Pool ” dialog box.

Parameter	Parameter Description	Entry Information
General		
Label	Schedule Name	8 characters
Descriptor	Description of schedule	16 characters
Jog Seg	Logic input (JOG) on state switch block will cause the schedule to jump to the start of the segment designated then continue.	Segment number jog will go to
Time Units	This selection assigns the time units (hours *or* minutes) for all segments.	
Hours	Time unit in Hours	Click on Radio button
Minutes	Time unit in Minutes	Click on Radio button
Guaranteed Hold Limit	The schedule will hold if a PV deviates above or below (or both) the Setpoint value set here. Select Guaranteed Hold Type on the “Setpoint Edit Schedule” dialog box.	Enter a setpoint value

25. Sequences

Create/Edit Sequence File

Creates/edits a sequence be saved as a file (.SEQ). File can be downloaded to the sequence pool. A sequence in the pool can be edited or loaded into the controller's active configuration.

Step/Item	Action/Description
Select File, Open.	Let's you choose a .SEQ file to edit. After selecting file the Sequence Editor appears.
OR	
Select File, New.	"Choose a new file type" box appears.
Select Recipes tab.	Recipe types appear.
Select Sequence.	The Sequence Editor appears.
THEN	
Select a Reference Configuration.	A sequence must have a configuration to give it context. Select an open configuration from the pull-down list. If none available, select Open Configuration to open one. The configuration will open. Click back to Sequence Editor and select the reference configuration.
Name and Description	Identify the sequence.
Properties	Sets properties for the sequence, such as jog step and time units.
Add	Adds a step to the sequence.
Time	Length of time for the segment.
SP1-SP8	Setpoint values at the start of the segment.
State	State number for each step of the sequence. A state may be selected multiple times in the sequence. Since time is an attribute of the sequence, the state may be activated for a different time period each time it is selected. (The order does not have to be sequential). Enter a State Number in each active field. States are numbered from 1 to 50.
State name	Name of current state. Enter a state name (12 character max.) Examples: Heating, Cooling, Mixing.
Time in Step	Time duration value for each step of the sequence. Time units can be changed under Properties.
Time in Next Step	Designates the step the sequence will advance to when the time expires. It can be any step in the sequence, including steps that have been previously executed. Enter 0 to stop the sequence after current step expires and to hold the outputs.
Event Signal #1	Click on the Event Signal #1 field and from the drop-down menu, select the event you want signal #1 to represent.
Event 1 Next Step	Each state of the sequence can also be configured to accept two different events to terminate the step. Whichever occurs first—an Off-to-On (rising edge) transition of either event signal OR elapsed step time—will cause the sequence to advance to the appropriate next step. Enter a value for Event 1 Next Step.
Event Signal #2	Click on the Event Signal #2 field and from the drop-down menu, select the event you want signal #2 to represent.

Step/Item	Action/Description
Event 2 Next Step	Each state of the sequence can also be configured to accept two different events to terminate the step. Whichever occurs first—an Off-to-On (rising edge) transition of either event signal OR elapsed step time—will cause the sequence to advance to the appropriate next step. Enter a value for Event 2 Next Step.
Advance Next Step	Allows you to select an appropriate action for the manual advance OI action or function block digital advance input. Enter a value.
Aux. Value	Enter an analog output value associated with each state.
Delete	Deletes selected step from sequence.
Print	Prints the sequence.
Save	Saves the sequence as .SEQ file.
Download	Downloads sequence to the controller's schedule pool where it can be edited or loaded into the controller's active configuration.

Sequence Pool

Introduction

The Sequence Pool lets you add or delete a Sequence on a list of configured Sequences and also enter the "Properties" function and the "Edit Sequence " function to set up each Sequence.

Configuration

When you **select "Sequences" from the Recipes menu**, the "Sequence Pool" dialog box will be displayed. From left to right the icons are:

ADD a Sequence:
Select the **NEW** Icon. The "Sequence Properties" dialog box will open.

EDIT the Properties of an Existing Sequence:
Select the **Worksheet Properties** Icon. The "Sequence Properties" dialog box will open.

EDIT a Sequence:
Select the **Edit Sequence** Icon. The "Setup/Edit Sequences" dialog box will appear.

COPY and PASTE:
Select a recipe from the pool window, then select the **Copy** Icon. Select another location in the pool window, then select the **Paste** Icon. The copied sequence will be inserted into the location selected.

DELETE a Sequence:
Click on a sequence name and then click on the **Delete** icon.

PRINT a Sequence:
Click on a sequence name and then select the **Print** icon. The "Print" dialog box will appear.
Select OK.
A sequence report will be printed with all the information entered on the "Sequence Properties" dialog box. [Label, Description, Jog Step, and Time Units in Hours or Minutes]

SAVE a Sequence:
To save a sequence as an .seq file, click on a recipe name and then select the Save icon. The "Save As" dialog box will appear.

OPEN a Sequence:
To open a previously saved .seq file and insert it into the pool, click on the Open icon.

DOWNLOAD a Sequence:
To download a sequence to the controller's sequence pool, click on the Download icon.

Setup/Edit Sequence in Pool

Introduction

The "Edit Sequence" dialog box lets you set up or edit a sequence from the sequences listed in the "Sequence Pool" dialog box.

Make sure you have clicked on "Edit Properties" toolbar icon and have configured the properties for that specific Sequence.

Edit a Sequence

Click on a Sequence name in the active field and select the **Edit Item** Icon (3rd from left) from the **Toolbar** on the dialog box or double click on the Sequence name.

The "**Edit Sequence**" dialog box will appear with the selected Sequence indicated on the top banner. Several Steps are shown for viewing and editing.

To ADD a Step
Click on ADD on the dialog box. A new Step number will appear at the bottom of the Step list.

To DELETE a Step
Click on a Step number in the field and click "Delete" on the dialog box. The Step will be deleted and all the step numbers following the deletion will be changed.

To EDIT a Step
Each step contains the following Step attributes:

Parameter	Parameter Description	Entry Information
State Number	State number for each step of the sequence. A state may be selected multiple times in the sequence. Since time is an attribute of the sequence, the state may be activated for a different time period each time it is selected. (The order does not have to be sequential)	Enter a State Number in each active field. States are numbered from 1 to 50
State Name	Name of current state	N/A
Time in Step	Time duration value for each step of the sequence. Time Units are selected on the Sequence Properties dialog box	Enter values for all Steps in the appropriate fields.
Time Next Step	Designates the step the sequence will advance to when the time expires. It can be any step in the sequence, including steps that have been previously executed.	Enter a number for the next step when time expires on current step. Enter 0 to stop the sequence after current step expires and to hold the outputs.
Event Signal #1	The event signal is a digital signal defined in the sequencer block. When Event Signal #1 signal transitions from FALSE to TRUE the sequence will jump to the step defined in Event 1 Next Step.	N/A
Event 1 Next Step	An off-to-on (rising edge) transition of Event Signal #1 will cause the sequence to advance to the step specified here.	Enter a value for Event 1 Next Step.
Event Signal #2	The event signal is a digital signal defined in the sequencer block. When Event Signal #2 signal transitions from FALSE to TRUE the	N/A

	sequence will jump to the step defined in Event 2 Next Step.	
Event 2 Next Step	An off-to-on (rising edge) transition of Event Signal #2 will cause the sequence to advance to the step specified here.	Enter a value for Event 2 Next Step.
Advance Next Step	Allows you to select an appropriate action for the manual advance OI action or function block digital advance input	Enter an "Advance Next Step" value.
Aux Value	Enter an analog output value associated with each state.	Enter an analog output value.

Sequence Properties

Introduction

This function lets you set the properties for the sequence selected in the Sequence Pool. If you are adding a Sequence, this dialog box will automatically appear. It will also appear if you select the **Worksheet Properties** Icon (2nd from left) from the **Toolbar** on the dialog box. The information configured here will appear in the "Edit Sequence" dialog box.

Configuration

Refer to the table below and enter the properties information in the appropriate fields in the dialog box, then click "OK" to return to the "Sequence Pool" dialog box.

Parameter	Parameter Description	Entry Information
General		
Label	Sequence Name	6 characters
Descriptor	Description of Sequence	16 characters
Jog Step	Logic input (JOG) on state switch block will cause the Sequencer to jump to the start of the step designated then continue.	Step number jog will go to
Time Units	This selection assigns the time units (hours or minutes) for all Steps.	
Hours	Time unit in Hours	Click on Radio button
Minutes	Time unit in Minutes	Click on Radio button

26. On-Line Monitoring

Overview

Designer Monitoring provides the following:

- Multiple, concurrent function block Monitor Windows
  - You can open as many Function Block monitor windows as you want until you run out of physical resources on the PC
  - You can open Function Block monitor windows concurrently for Function Blocks on *different* Function Block Diagram Worksheets
  - Function Block monitor window can be resized to better suit concurrent windows
- Provides a Watch Window to view groups of related data such as I/O and Signal Tags
- Allows Monitoring to cross all FBD worksheet boundaries
  - There are no boundaries
  - You can call up Function Block monitor windows from any or all FBD worksheets concurrently
  - The Watch Window implicitly crosses all worksheets
  - All other diagnostic windows can also be open concurrently

Access

Select "Monitor Mode" from the "Monitor" menu or select the "Monitor" icon from the Main Toolbar.

You can specify the monitor update rate that determines how often data is collected from the controller during monitoring. This update rate can be set to either 1/4 second, 1/2 second, 1 second, or 5 seconds.

See "Monitor Toolbar" for the available Monitoring and Diagnostic Windows.

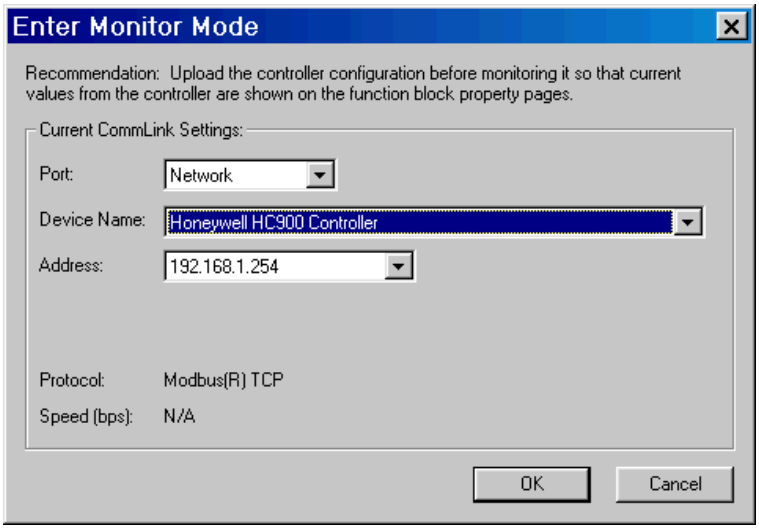
See "Visual Indicators for Monitor Mode" for on-line monitoring indicators.

Enter Monitor Mode

Select "Monitor Mode" from the "Monitor" menu or select the "Monitor" icon from the Main Toolbar.

While in monitor mode, edits to the configuration cannot be made.

Procedure

1	Selecting this menu item opens the "Enter Monitor Mode" dialog box 
2	Select the controller to monitor using the Port and Address fields on this dialog. The dialog box also indicates the Protocol and Baud rate for the selected controller.
3	Click the OK button on this dialog to enter monitor mode for this configuration.
4	The background of the function block diagram worksheet changes to yellow and the cursor includes the Monitor icon [Eye} with the arrow. See "Visual Indicators for Monitor Mode".
5	The Monitor Toolbar will appear, whose buttons you can use to toggle (show or hide) the various monitor windows. These windows can also be toggled using menu items on the Monitor menu.
6	When exiting monitor mode, any monitor windows still open will be closed and will be re-opened at their same positions when monitor mode is re-entered for this configuration.

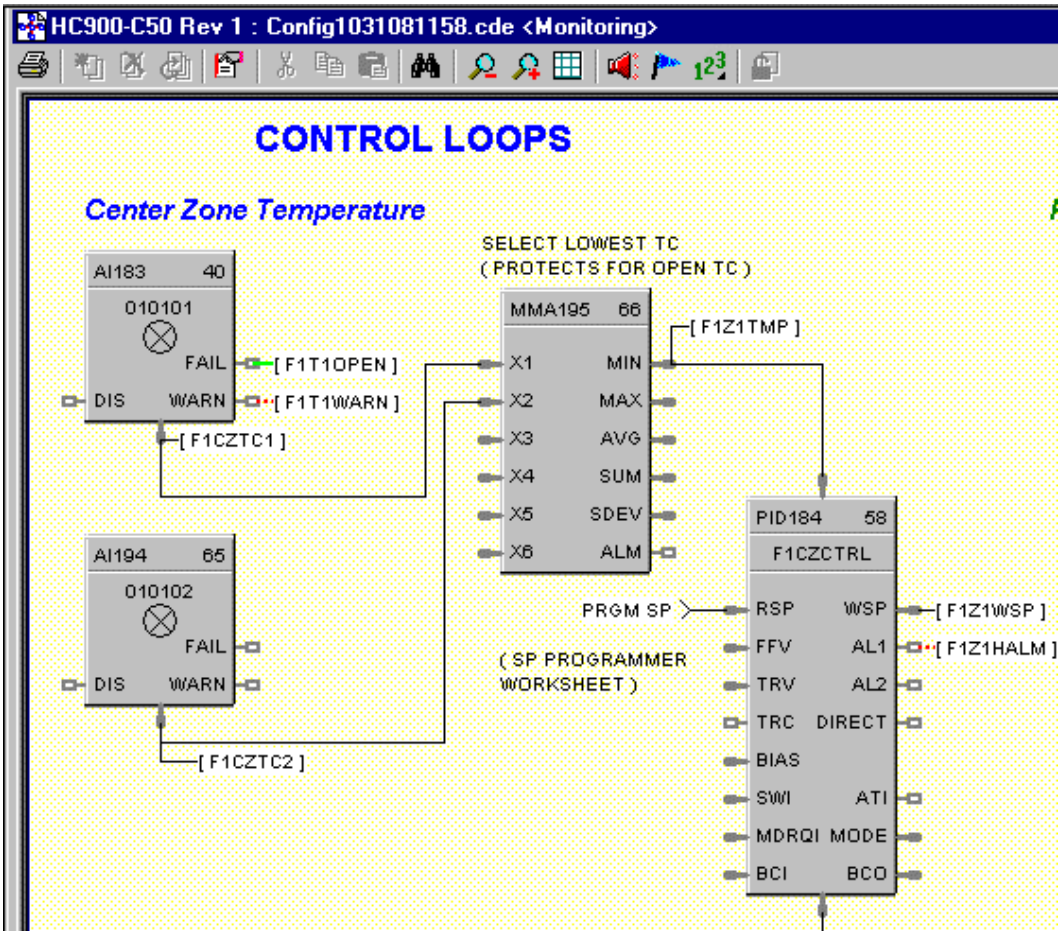
Note: *After downloading the configuration to the controller and triggering a hot start, going to monitor mode immediately may show "database mismatch error". It is recommended to allow controller to complete the hot start before entering monitoring mode.*

Visual Indicators for Monitor Mode

When "Monitor Mode" is selected there are several indications that the configuration is in Monitor Mode.

1. The "Connected" indicator on the Status Bar will blink to show that the controller, whose name appears next to it, is being monitored.

2. The cursor changes to include the Monitor icon [Eye] along with the arrow.
3. The word <Monitoring> appears in the configuration Title Bar at the top of the diagram.
4. The background color of the Function Block Diagram changes to YELLOW.



Monitor Update Rate

Introduction

You can specify the monitor update rate that determines how often data is collected from the controller during monitoring. This update rate can be set to either 1/4 second, 1/2 second, 1 second, or 5 seconds.

This option is **allowed only during edit mode**, not while you are monitoring the controller. The default monitor update rate is 1 second and this update rate is remembered between sessions of the software.

If you want to monitor from a relatively slow computer set the monitor update rate to a slow setting.

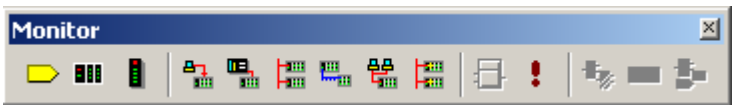
Procedure

Select "Set Update Rate" from the "Monitor" menu on the Main Drop-down menus.

Select an Update Rate from the Sub-menu:

1/4 Second
1/2 Second
1 Second, or
5 seconds

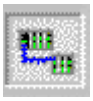
Monitor Toolbar



Click on ICON to open a dialog box. More than one dialog box can be open at a time.

The Monitor Toolbar toggles monitor windows for the following:

ICON	Function	Window Comments
	Watch Summary	Toggles the Watch Summary Window that lets you view groups of related data such as I/O and Signal Tags.
	Controller Diagnostics	Toggles the Controller Diagnostics Window that lets you view the controller parameters and values.
	Rack Diagnostics	Toggles the I/O Rack Diagnostics window that lets you view the Rack Diagnostics, Expansion I/O Comm Diagnostics (except C30 CPU), and the I/O Module diagnostics.
	Serial S1 Port Diagnostics	Opens the Serial Port S1 (RS232 Default) Configuration Port Diagnostics window that lets you view the parameters and values of the S1 port (default R2-232) on the controller.
	Serial S2 Port Diagnostics	Toggles the Serial Port S2 (RS485 default) OI Port Diagnostics window that lets you view the S2 port (default RS485 Operator Interface) parameters and values.
	Network Port Diagnostics	Toggles the Network Port Diagnostics window that lets you view the network port parameters and values.

ICON	Function	Window Comments
	**Expansion I/O Comm Diagnostics (except C30 CPU)**	Toggles the Expansion I/O Comm Diagnostics window that lets you view the expansion port parameters and values.
	Host Connections Diagnostics	Toggles the Host Connections window that lets you view the host connections parameters and values.
	Peer-to-Peer Diagnostics	Toggles the Peer-to-Peer Connections Diagnostics window that lets you view the Peer-to-Peer parameters and values.
	Function Block Monitor	Toggles the Monitor Function Block window that lets you monitor key parameters of the selected Function Block.
	Forced Blocks Window	Toggles the Forced Block Summary Window Window that lets you see all the function blocks that have forced outputs.
	All Function Block Windows	Let's you toggle the function block windows that are open - Display or Hide
	All Pins	Let's you toggle (display/hide) monitoring values (numeric or On/Off state) at all input and output pins that are shown.
	All Monitor Windows	Let's you toggle the Monitor windows that are open - Display or Hide.

How Do I Start Monitoring

Procedure

1. Either upload the configuration from the controller to your PC or Open the file from disk that matches what's in the controller. Designer will inform you if the file you opened is not currently loaded in the controller. In this case, limited monitoring capabilities will be available. For example, you won't be able to monitor function blocks or bring up the Watch Summary Window.
2. Press the MONITOR button on the main toolbar.

   The "Enter Monitor Mode" dialog box will open.
   Note: *While in monitor mode, you won't be able to edit the configuration. For example, you won't be able to add or delete function blocks, move items on the Function Block Diagram, or change configuration parameters of function blocks on their property pages. You will, however, be able to view the configuration parameters of function blocks on their property pages, but these values aren't being read from the controller. They exist only in the configuration open in Designer. That is why it is recommended that you perform an upload from the controller before monitoring so that current values from the controller are shown on the function block property pages."*
3. Select the Comm port and controller address to monitor. Press OK.
   It checks to see if information is the same in the controller.
4. The feedback will be the monitor toolbar.

The Status Bar shows

on bar indicates that monitor mode is in effect. The green square is an activity indicator and flashes bright green when requests for monitored data are made to the controller.

There is also the word "Monitoring" indicated on the banner of the worksheet, the FBD worksheet background turns yellow and an eye appears with the cursor arrow.
See "Visual Indicators for Monitor Mode" for on-line monitoring indicators.

Right Click Procedure in Monitor Mode

Depending where you right-mouse click on the FBD worksheet during monitoring, the resulting menu will have some differences.
In each column is shown the menu items that appear when you right-click on that item on your FBD during Monitor Mode.

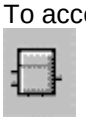
	Right click on these					
	Function Block	**Variable**	**Yellow Space**	**Signal Tags**	**Connectors**	**Page Connectors**
To see these choices	Monitor Block	Monitor Block	Execution Order	Watch Summary	Watch Summary	Watch Summary
	Watch Summary	Watch Summary	Fast Logic Order	Add to Watch Summary	Add to Watch Summary	Add to Watch Summary
	Monitor Pins	Add to Watch Summary	Find	Monitor Pins	Monitor Pins	Monitor Pins
	Help	Monitor Pins	Go To	Help	Help	Help
	Execution Order	Help	View	Find Where Used	Find Where Used	Find Where Used
	Copy	Execution Order	Properties (File)	Properties (Signal Tag)	Properties (Connector)	Properties
	Properties (Function Block)	Copy				
		Properties (Function Block)				

	Right click on these		
	Input Pins	**Output Pins**	**Wire Node**
To see these choices	Trace	Monitor Pins	Help
	Monitor Pins		

Function Block Monitor Window

The Designer provides live monitoring of all Function Blocks.

To access, select "Monitor Function Block" from the "Monitor" menu or from the Monitor toolbar.



Or

Right Click a function block or variable in Monitor Mode and select the Monitor Block menu item.

The summary will provide status of the parameters shown in the list.

For "Loop" blocks, the current mode will be shown in the lower right of the window

LSP AUTO = Local Setpoint, Automatic Output
LSP MAN = Local Setpoint, Manual Output
RSP AUTO = Remote Setpoint, Automatic Output
RSP MAN = Remote Setpoint, Manual Output
To change Mode settings of a loop block, click on a radio button to select
Local or Remote Setpoint
Automatic or Manual Output

Click the "Change Mode" button to change the mode.

Changing a Parameter

Some blocks allow you to change some parameters. Click on a parameter name, if allowed the "Write" field will become active. Enter an override value in the field.

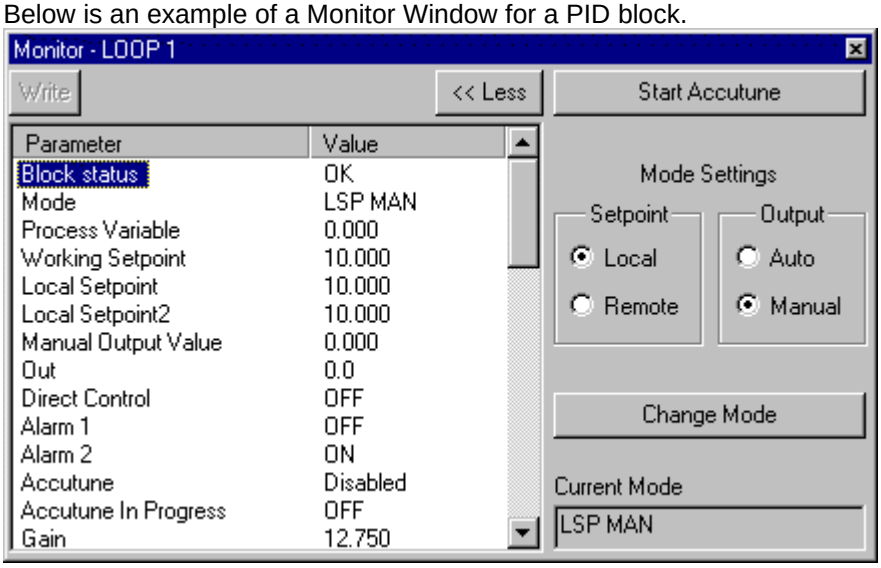
Channel/Sensor Status

I/O blocks display a parameter called Channel/Sensor Status to indicate any abnormalities. See I/O Channel/Sensor Status for details.

Click on "X" to exit box.

Attention: All function blocks dialog boxes have a "MONITOR" button when in Monitor mode that will access this window.

Below is an example of a Monitor Window for a PID block.



Forcing/Unforcing an Output

Overview

The ability to **force and unforce the output [pin]** of function blocks and variables from the Designer is provided as an aid to startup and configuration troubleshooting. The feature is limited to single output per block.

The majority of blocks have a single output, and most of the multiple output blocks have an obvious primary (i.e. most important) output. This may apply to the block's primary analog output (such as for an AI block) or digital output of a logic block (such as for a DI or DO block).
Note: A function block input is never forced.

Some blocks (i.e. Loop Blocks) do not have a forceable output. It is not possible to force/unforce function block outputs from the Operator Interface.

Variables, which are normally set to 0 on download of a new configuration or a change in configuration can have their output value changed on-line. You can also preset the value of a variable using an initialization procedure via function blocks or by setting the Initial Value field on the variable's property page.

You can also display a list of blocks that are presently being forced. See "Forced Blocks Window "

ATTENTION:

All forced outputs are cleared by a CONTROLLER COLD START.

In password protected redundant controllers, forcing of parameters does not work after fail over. User shall exit the monitor mode in HCD and reenters the password to enforce the parameters.

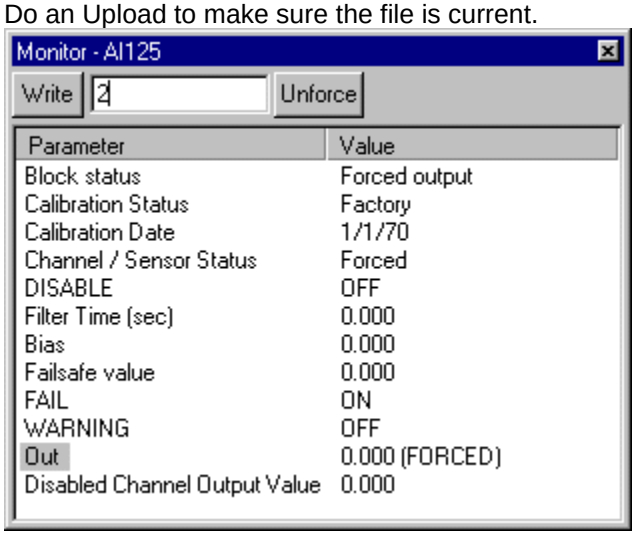
CAUTION

During Live-Monitoring (especially fast logic), it is possible to see transient states where the block output is inconsistent with its input values. This occurs because it is possible for the input values and outputs values to be taken from different controller execution cycles. Therefore, either the viewed inputs or outputs may be "older".

SOLUTION: Recognize this possibility when interpreting results. Use forcing if necessary to create and assess static conditions.

Forcing an Output

1. Do an Upload to make sure the file is current.



2. Enter Monitor Mode - Select the Monitor Mode icon from the Main Toolbar, or select "Monitor Mode" from the Monitor menu. The FBD background turns yellow.
3. Right-Click on a selected function block, then select "Monitor Block". The "Monitor Block" dialog box will open.
4. Select "OUT" or "Output" in the dialog box of the Live Monitor screen. If Forcing is allowed, the Write field becomes active. Enter the Output value in the entry field next to the "Write" button.
   NOTE: for Loop Blocks, put the controller into Manual Mode.
5. Click "WRITE". The output value will change to the value entered for forcing.
   The word Forced will appear next to "Output" and "Block Status".

Changing (Force) a Digital Value from ON to OFF

Select "ON" or "OFF" from the drop-down list box and click "WRITE". The selection for the parameter selected will change to the selection entered for forcing.

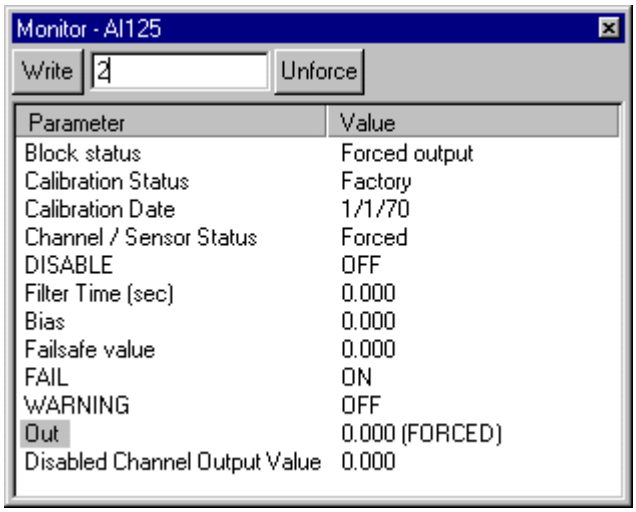
If there is a problem with the forcing

Check your communication Set Up for correct settings

Make sure the Mode Switch on the controller is in "RUN " mode.

Unforcing an Output

Right-Click on a selected function block, then select "Monitor Block". The "Monitor Block" dialog box will open.



Click on the forced output (indicated by FORCED).

Click Unforce. The original selection for the parameter will return.

Forced Blocks Window

Overview

The Forced Blocks window provides a list view of all function blocks that have forced outputs and provides a quick means of removing the forced outputs on selected block. The Forcing and Unforcing of function block outputs is a feature that is only available in Monitor Mode. For more information on how to force function block outputs see Forcing/Unforcing an Output.

Opening the Window

The Forced Blocks Window is represented by the Exclamation Mark icon and can be accessed in 3 ways as described below. For each method, the system must already be in Monitor Mode for the option to be available.

Monitor Menu

1. Select **Monitor** from the main application menu.
2. Select **Forced Blocks…** to launch the Forced Blocks window.

Monitor Mode Toolbar

1. Click on the button in the **Monitor Mode Toolbar** from the main application toolbar.

Utilities Worksheet

1. Select the **Utilities** tab from the main Worksheet Category Tabs to display the Controller Utilities worksheet.
2. Click on the button to bring up the **Controller Diagnostics** submenu.
3. Select **Forced Blocks…** to launch the Forced Blocks window.

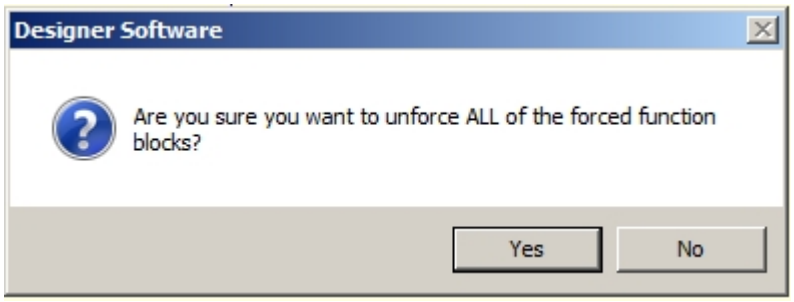
Unforcing Block Outputs

There are two versions of the Forced Blocks dialog window, depending on whether or not the controller being monitored is one that supports the SIL Safety standard. For SIL compliant controllers the version shown on the left below will be displayed. For non SIL compliant controllers the version shown on the right below will be displayed.

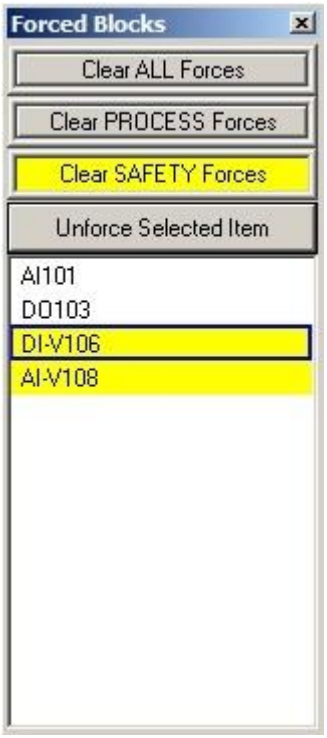
Both versions of the window have a list box displaying a list of all of the function blocks that currently have forced outputs.

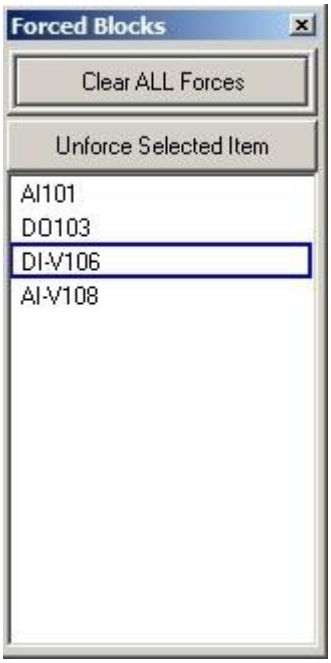
- Function blocks located on a Safety worksheet have a yellow background.
- Function blocks located on a Process worksheet have a white background.
- If no function blocks have forced outputs the word NONE is displayed.
- If new forces are added or removed from individual function block monitor windows the list will be updated dynamically.

Both versions of the window have a **Clear ALL Forces** button that allows all forced outputs to be cleared with one click. For Safety enabled controllers there are additional **Clear PROCESS Forces** and **Clear SAFETY Forces** buttons that allow forced outputs on the Process and Safety worksheets to be cleared independently. In either, case a warning message similar to the one shown below will be displayed requesting confirmation before the action is taken.



Both versions of the window have a **Unforce Selected Item** button that allows the output of a single function block to be unforced. To enable this button, click on the desired function block as shown below. (Multiple selections using the Shift or Ctrl keys are not allowed.)





Clicking on the **Unforce Selected Item** will now clear the forced output on the selected function block. In this case the action takes place immediately and no confirmation is required.

Exiting

To close the Force Blocks window click on the **X** in the top right-hand corner.

See Also

Monitor Mode

Forcing/Unforcing an Output

Watch Summary – Inputs/Outputs

How Do I Stop Monitoring

Press the MONITOR button on the main toolbar.

This will return the associated configuration to EDIT mode.
Feedback will be the monitor button (unpressed), and all open monitor windows will disappear. The FBD Worksheet background returns to white and the eye disappears from the cursor.

Attention: If you return from EDIT mode to Monitor mode, all your previously opened monitor windows will appear (if the same configuration)

Logic Flow

Overview

In Monitor Mode, Logic Flow is shown within the Configuration Worksheet Monitor Window.

Soft Wires are identified to represent the Logic state at the pin of the source in monitor mode.

Function Block pin values can be monitored briefly or you can stick the values on display until you dismiss them. Analog Values are in decimal format and Digital States are On/Off.

Digital Signal Tags and corresponding Connectors at the block pins include color-coded representations for state changes.

Page Connectors include color-coded representations for state changes.

Logic Inversion indicators are pictorially identified on the block and are color-coded to identify logic states impeding or permitting logic flow.

CAUTION

During Live-Monitoring (especially fast scan), it is possible to see transient states where the block output is inconsistent with its input values. This occurs because it is possible for the input values and outputs values to be taken from different controller execution cycles. Therefore, either the viewed inputs or outputs may be "older". Logic monitoring is appropriate for static conditions.

Soft Wire Identification

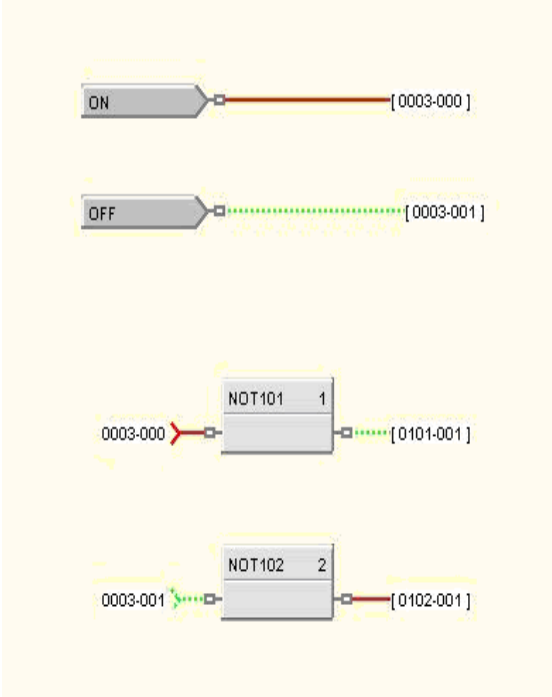
<u>Solid/Green = On, Dotted/Red = Off</u>

Logic State at the Output Pin = ON

The Digital Signal Tag and its corresponding Connector/Page Connector will have the entire length of its tail drawn in solid GREEN.

Logic State at the Output Pin = OFF

The Digital Signal Tag and its corresponding Connector/Page Connector will have the entire length of its tail drawn in dashed RED.



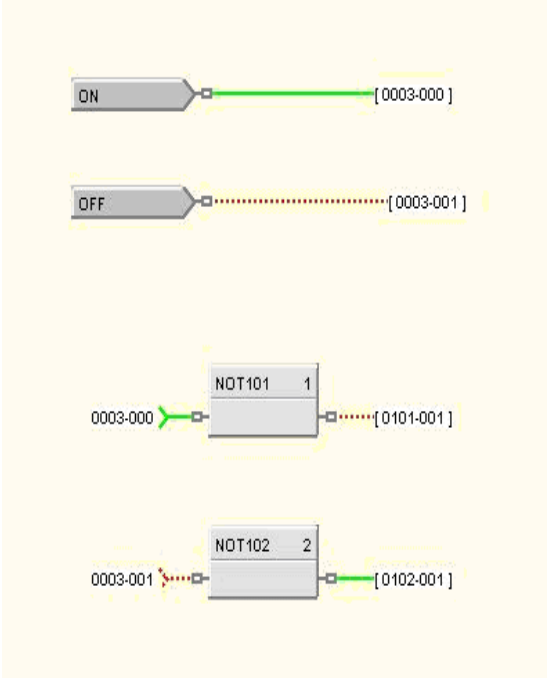
<u>Solid/Red = On, Dotted/Green = Off</u>

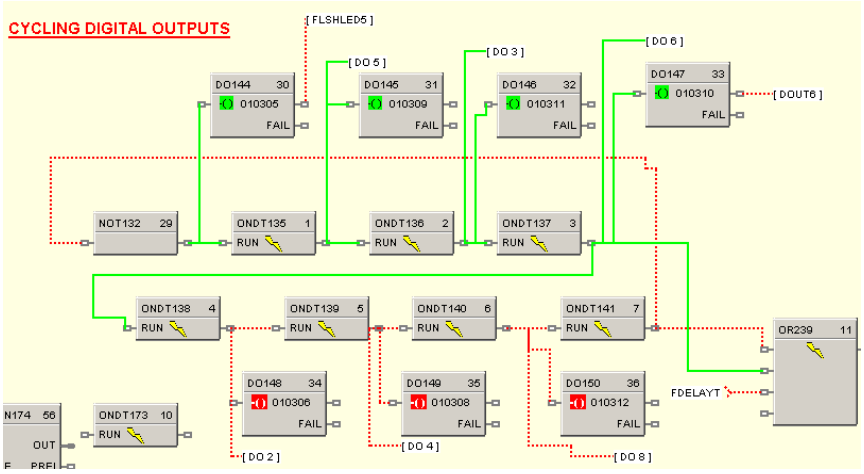
Logic State at the Output Pin = ON

The Digital Signal Tag and its corresponding Connector/Page Connector will have the entire length of its tail drawn in solid RED.

Logic State at the Output Pin = OFF

The Digital Signal Tag and its corresponding Connector/Page Connector will have the entire length of its tail drawn in dotted GREEN.





Signal Tags and Connectors/Page Connectors

Digital Signal Tags and Connectors/Page Connectors include color-coded representations for state changes as substitutes for soft-wires. To select one of the following color schemes, go to Monitor menu, then Set Logic State Colors.

Solid/Green = On, Dotted/Red = Off

Logic State at the Output Pin = **ON**

The Digital Signal Tag and its corresponding Connector/Page Connector will have the entire length of its tail drawn in solid GREEN.

Logic State at the Output Pin = **OFF**

The Digital Signal Tag and its corresponding Connector/Page Connector will have the entire length of its tail drawn in dashed RED.

Solid/Red = On, Dotted/Green = Off

Logic State at the Output Pin = **ON**

The Digital Signal Tag and its corresponding Connector/Page Connector will have the entire length of its tail drawn in solid RED.

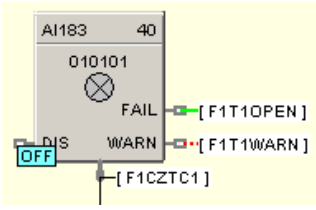
Logic State at the Output Pin = **OFF**

The Digital Signal Tag and its corresponding Connector/Page Connector will have the entire length of its tail drawn in dotted GREEN.

Displaying Function Block's Pin Values

Function Block pin value(s) can be monitored **briefly** and you can set one or all of the values on display (**constant display**) until you dismiss them. Analog Values are in decimal format and Digital States are On/Off.

Displaying a Single Pin Value



Displaying Briefly

Hover the cursor over any pin momentarily. The pin's value will be displayed next to the pin as long as the cursor remains motionless over the pin.

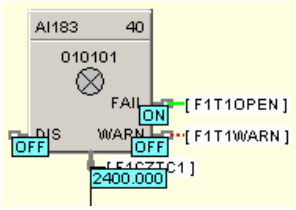
To ***remove*** the briefly displayed value:
remove the cursor from the pin.

Displaying Until Dismissed (Constant Display)

Hover the cursor over any pin and left-click while the pin value is displayed, or right-click and select "Monitor Pins" from the menu.

To ***remove*** the constantly displayed value:
left-click on the pin again, or
right-click and select "Monitor Pins" again from the menu.

Displaying All Function Block Pin Values



Displaying Briefly

Hover the cursor over the interior of a function block momentarily. All of the Function Blocks pin values will be displayed next to the pins as long as the cursor remains motionless over the block.

To ***remove*** the briefly displayed values:
remove the cursor from the block.

Displaying Until Dismissed

Hover the cursor over the interior of a function block and left-click while the pin values are displayed, or right-click and select "Monitor Pins" from the menu.

To ***remove*** the constantly displayed value:
left-click on the pin again, or
right-click and select "Monitor Pins" again from the menu.

Toggling All Pin Values on Worksheet

Select on the Monitor Toolbar or select "Monitor Pins" from the Monitor menu.

NOTE: Any pin values shown when monitor mode is exited will be re-shown when Monitor mode is re-entered. This only applies to the current session of the application and not between sessions of the application.

Logic Inversion Color Codes

Certain function blocks (such as Discrete Input/Output and logic blocks) have an Invert feature that, when selected, inverts the state of the block's input or output. These blocks have special logic inversion indicators when viewed in monitor mode.

The examples below use the color scheme

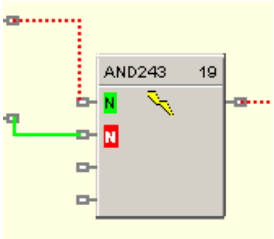
RED = OFF
GREEN = ON.

To select the opposite color scheme

RED = ON
GREEN = OFF,
go to Monitor menu, then Set Logic State Colors.

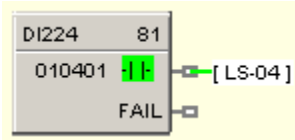
Logic Blocks Inversion Indicators

RED = OFF
GREEN = ON

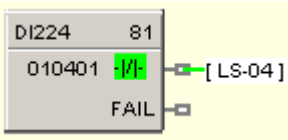


Digital Input Blocks Inversion Indicators

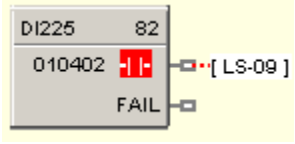
ON



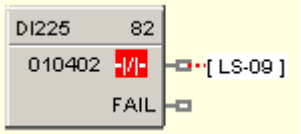
or Inverted ON



OFF

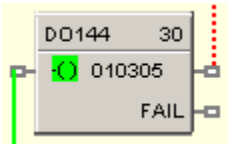


or Inverted OFF

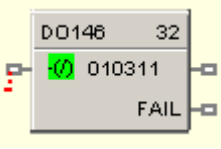


Digital Output Blocks Inversion Indicators

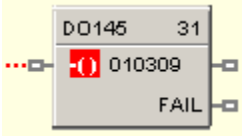
ON



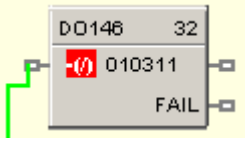
or Inverted ON



OFF



or Inverted OFF



27. Watch Summary Window

Overview

Overview

The Watch Summary window is a dockable (movable), re-sizable window that lets you view the current values of groups of related data, such as I/O and Signal Tags, from the controller.

Opening the Window

The Watch Summary window is represented by the icon and can be accessed in 2 ways as described below. For each method, the system must already be in Monitor Mode for the option to be available.

Monitor Menu

1. Select **Monitor** from the main application menu.
2. Select **Watch Summary…** to launch the Watch Summary window.

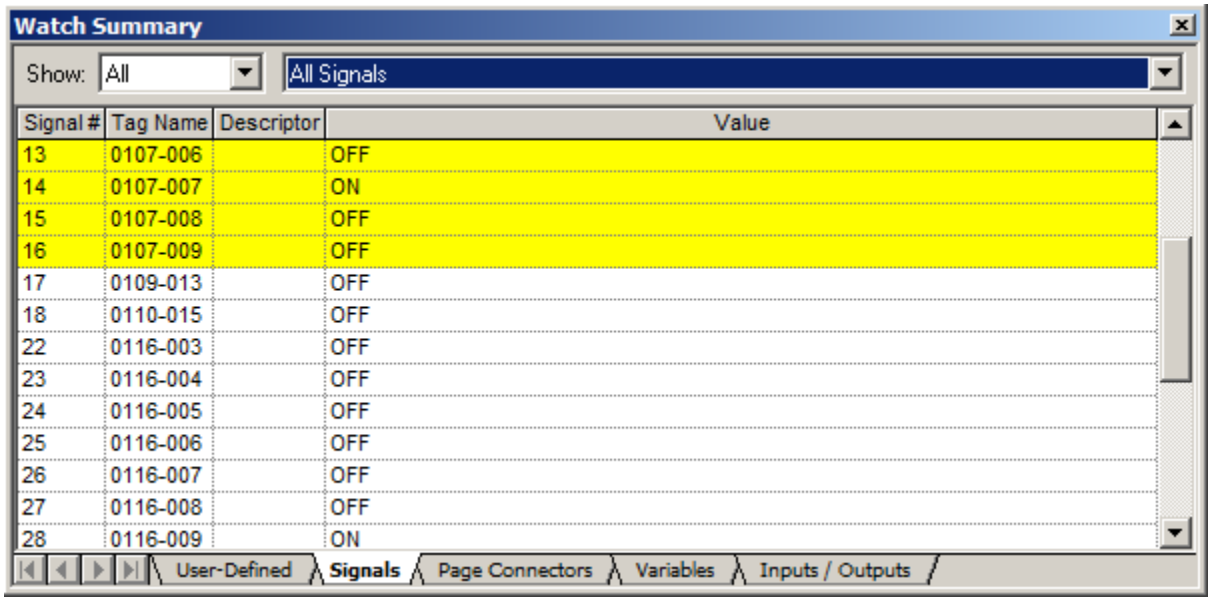
Monitor Mode Toolbar

1. Click on the button in the **Monitor Mode Toolbar** from the main application toolbar.

Using the Window

The Watch Summary window will have a slightly different appearance depending on the revision of software and the type of controller, however, the general layout is as shown below:

- Tab control to select from different groups of data
- Pull-down selectors at the top to further filter items within the group
- Table to display information and current values of the selected items



The number of different data groups available through the tabs at the bottom of the window will depend on the revision of software running in the controller. The possible selections are listed below (click on any of the links **to view an example** of the selected data for that tab):

- **User-Defined** (Customized list of Signals, Page Connectors and/or Variables)
- **Signals** (Analog, Digital)
- **Page Connectors** (Analog, Digital)
- **Variables** (Analog, Digital)
- **Inputs / Outputs** (AI, AO, DI, DO)
- **Display Groups** (Not available in revision 6.0 and higher)

The number of pull-down selectors at the top of the display will depend on the controller type. For SIL-compliant controllers there will be a leading selector which allows the data items within the group to be filtered based on the type of function block worksheet they are located on; Process, Safety or All (both Process and Safety worksheets).

For all controller types there will be a pull-down selector which allows the data items within the group to be further filtered based on a sub-type, such as analog versus digital, or input versus output. The list of available sub-types is determined by the data group selected through the tab control.

Information about each item in the filtered list is displayed in the table in the middle of the window. The amount of information displayed will vary based on the selected tab, but will always include a current value from the controller. The rows of data may be sorted by clicking in the header for most of the configuration information columns. Subsequent clicking within a column header will toggle between ascending and descending sort orders. (See also Sort Feature)

For SIL-compliant controller types, the rows of data will be colored coded. Items located on a Safety worksheet will be displayed with a yellow background, whereas items located on a Process worksheet will be displayed on a white background.

Docking and Undocking the Window

Double clicking in the Title Bar area of the Watch Summary Window will toggle its docked state. If the window is docked, double clicking in the title bar area will undock the window. If the window is undocked

- Double-clicking in the title bar area will dock the window at it last docked position
- Dragging the window to the top, bottom, left, or right edge of the main viewing area of the application will dock the window at that location

  [Press and hold the CTRL key down to prevent Docking when moving the window]

Hot Links

You can click on any I/O function block or Signal on the Controller Worksheet or any I/O function block, Signal, or Variable in the Watch Window and that item will be located on the Function Block Diagram.

As you move the mouse over a HOT LINK, the text changes to Underlined Blue and the cursor changes to a hand . (See also Find Feature)

Writes or Forces

By clicking on the item in the Value column, you may write a value such as for a Variable or force a value for an analog input or digital input. For I/O, a Forced column will indicate that the I/O point is forced.

Find Feature

You can click on any I/O function block or Signal on the Controller Worksheet or any I/O function block, Signal, or Variable in the **Watch Window** and that item will be located on the Function Block Diagram.

As you move the mouse over a HOT LINK, the text changes to Underlined Blue and the cursor changes to a Hand.

You can also find within the Watch Summary window itself any tag, descriptor, signal number, variable number, as well as rack number, module number, channel number, or block on the Inputs / Outputs tab. For example, to find a tag in the Watch Summary window, click anywhere in the Tag Name column and start typing the characters of the tag you want to find. The tag matching the characters you type will scroll into view. To find a tag name and prevent the tag hot link from re-positioning the Function Block Diagram, right-click the tag name instead of left-clicking it.

Sort Function

The Sort function in the Watch Summary lets you sort the tag list by:

Signal #

Variable #

Tag Name

Descriptor

Block

At the top of the Watch Window, click on the **Column title**. The list will be sorted accordingly. Clicking the column title the first time sorts the list in ascending (alphabetical) order. Clicking the column title a second time sorts the list in descending (reverse alphabetical) order, and so forth.

Watch Summary - User Defined

On the User-Defined tab of the Watch Summary Window you can view a list of tags that you want to monitor. You can add the following to the list:

- **Signals**
- **Page Connectors**
- **Variables**

The Watch Summary window doesn't have to be visible in order to add items to the list of User-Defined tags to display, nor do the drop-down selectors on the User-Defined tab have to match what you'll be adding.

For example, you can add a signal to the User-Defined tab of the Watch Summary window even if the window is not visible or the User-Defined tab's "Show" drop-down selector is set to All Variables. As long as you are in monitor mode, you can add items at any time.

Note that there is no limit to the number of items that you can add to the list, but the list is not saved between sessions of the software.

To add Signals, Page Connectors or Variables to the user-defined watch list:

1. Navigate to the function block worksheet that contains the item.
2. Right-click on the item to display the context menu.
3. Select Add to Watch Summary from the context menu

(See the Watch Window Summary for instructions on how to view the Watch Summary Window.)

The number of pull-down selectors at the top of the User-Defined tab of the Watch Summary window will depend on the controller type. For SIL-compliant controllers there will be a leading selector which allows the signals to be filtered based on the type of function block worksheet they are located on:

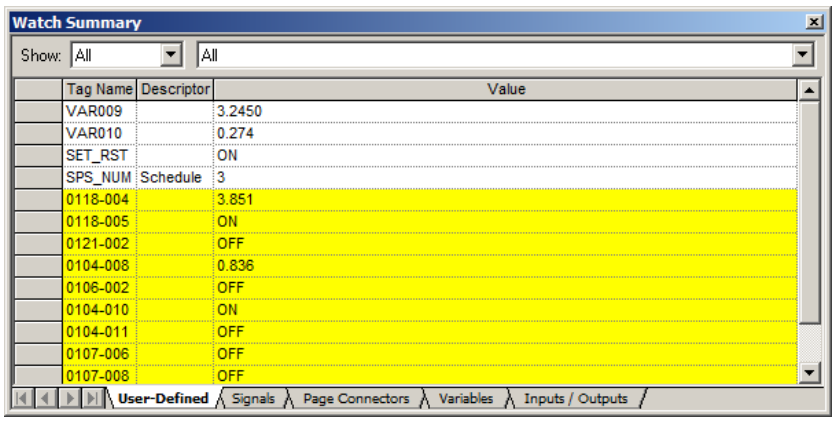
- All (both Process and Safety worksheets)
- Process
- Safety

For all controller types there will be a pull-down selector which allows the type of user-defined tags to be selected:

- All
- All Signals
- All Page Connectors
- All Variables

(Note that in this case “All” refers to the list of user-defined items and not to the full configuration.)

For each item in the selection list, its Tag Name, Descriptor and Value are displayed in the table, as shown below.



For SIL-compliant controller types, the rows of data will be colored coded. Items located on a Safety worksheet will be displayed with a yellow background, whereas items located on a Process worksheet will be displayed on a white background.

You can change the value of any item that can be forced by entering a new value in the Value column.

You can re-order the items in the list by selecting a single row or range of rows in the list and dragging the row(s) to another position in the list. You can also delete selected items in the list.

To select the first row in a range:

- Positioning the cursor over the gray cell at the beginning of the row.
- Wait for the cursor to change to an arrow.
- Click on the gray cell.

To select the last row in a range:

- Positioning the cursor over the gray cell at the beginning of the row.
- Wait for the cursor to change to an arrow.
- Hold down the Shift key and click on the gray cell.

To reposition the selected row(s):

- Position the cursor over any gray cell in the selected rows.
- Drag and drop the rows to their new position.
- A red line will appear as you drag the rows to show you where the row that was clicked will be dropped when you release the mouse button.

To delete the selected row(s) press the Delete key.

Use the Find Feature to locate a specific I/O on the Function Block Diagram.

Use the Sort Function to sort the table rows by a specific column.

See the Watch Window Summary for more details on this window.

Watch Summary - Signals

On the User-Defined tab of the Watch Summary Window you can view a list of tags that you want to monitor. You can add the following to the list:

- **Signals**
- **Page Connectors**
- **Variables**

The Watch Summary window doesn't have to be visible in order to add items to the list of User-Defined tags to display, nor do the drop-down selectors on the User-Defined tab have to match what you'll be adding.

For example, you can add a signal to the User-Defined tab of the Watch Summary window even if the window is not visible or the User-Defined tab's "Show" drop-down selector is set to All Variables. As long as you are in monitor mode, you can add items at any time.

Note that there is no limit to the number of items that you can add to the list, but the list is not saved between sessions of the software.

To add Signals, Page Connectors or Variables to the user-defined watch list:

1. Navigate to the function block worksheet that contains the item.
2. Right-click on the item to display the context menu.
3. Select Add to Watch Summary from the context menu

(See the Watch Window Summary for instructions on how to view the Watch Summary Window.)

The number of pull-down selectors at the top of the User-Defined tab of the Watch Summary window will depend on the controller type. For SIL-compliant controllers there will be a leading selector which allows the signals to be filtered based on the type of function block worksheet they are located on:

- All (both Process and Safety worksheets)
- Process
- Safety

For all controller types there will be a pull-down selector which allows the type of user-defined tags to be selected:

- All
- All Signals
- All Page Connectors
- All Variables

(Note that in this case “All” refers to the list of user-defined items and not to the full configuration.)

For each item in the selection list, its Tag Name, Descriptor and Value are displayed in the table, as shown below.

Watch Summary - Page Connectors

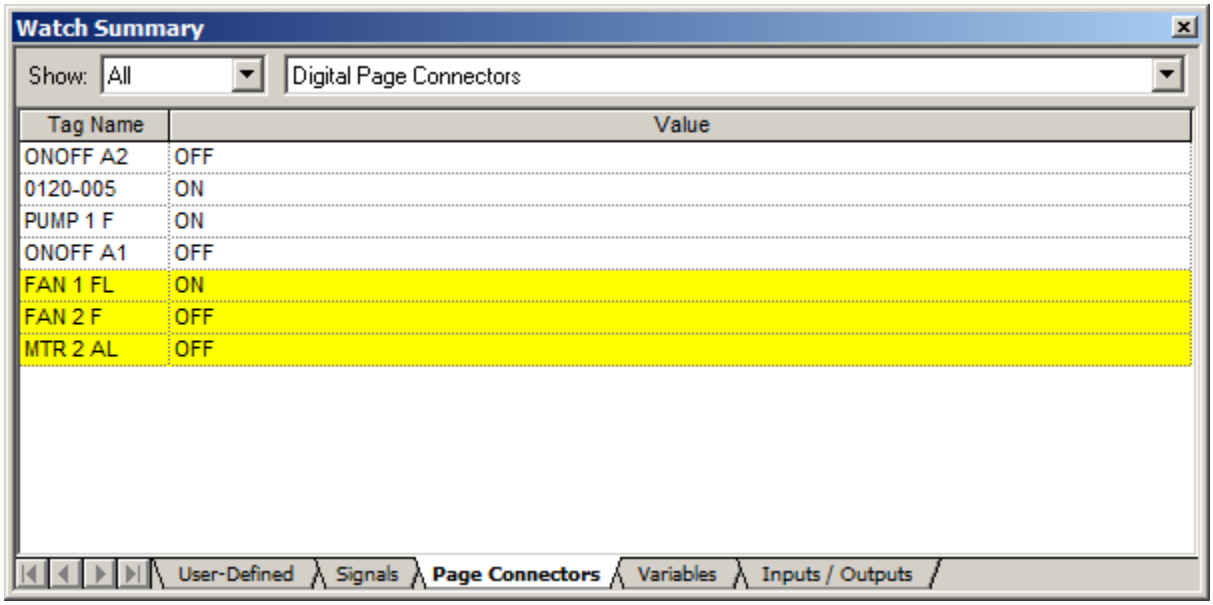
The number of pull-down selectors at the top of the display will depend on the controller type. For SIL-compliant controllers there will be a leading selector which allows the page connectors to be filtered based on the type of function block worksheet they are located on:

- All (both Process and Safety worksheets)
- Process
- Safety

For all controller types there will be a pull-down selector which allows the type of page connectors to be selected:

- All Page Connectors
- Analog Page Connectors
- Digital Page Connectors

For each page connector in the selection list, its Tag Name and Value are displayed in the table, as shown below.



For SIL-compliant controller types, the rows of data will be colored coded. Page connectors located on a Safety worksheet will be displayed with a yellow background, whereas page connectors located on a Process worksheet will be displayed on a white background.

You cannot change the value of a page connector as they are Read Only.

Use the Find Feature to locate a specific I/O on the Function Block Diagram.

Use the Sort Function to sort the table rows by a specific column.

See the Watch Window Summary for more details on this window.

Watch Summary - Variables

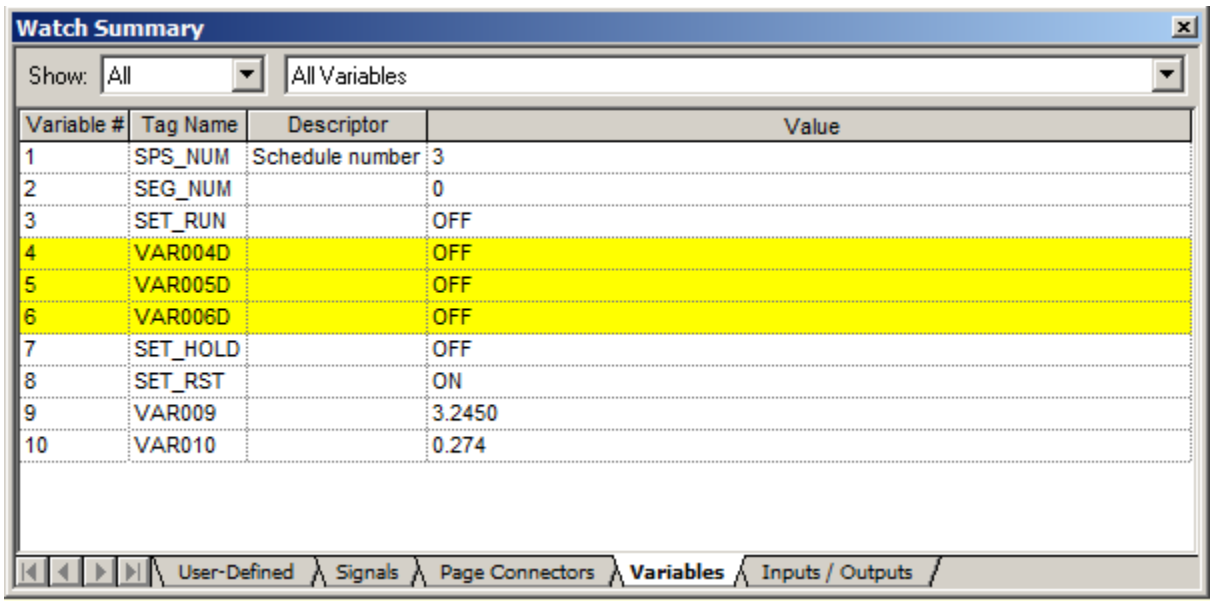
The number of pull-down selectors at the top of the display will depend on the controller type. For SIL-compliant controllers there will be a leading selector which allows the variables to be filtered based on the type of function block worksheet they are located on:

- All (both Process and Safety worksheets)
- Process
- Safety

For all controller types there will be a pull-down selector which allows the type of variable to be selected:

- All Variables
- Analog Variables
- Digital Variables

For each variable in the selection list, its Number, Tag Name, Descriptor and Value are displayed in the table, as shown below.



For SIL-compliant controller types, the rows of data will be colored coded. Variables located on a Safety worksheet will be displayed with a yellow background, whereas variables located on a Process worksheet will be displayed on a white background.

You can change a variable by clicking on a variable value and entering a new value for an analog variable or selecting the appropriate user-configured OFF or ON label from a drop-down menu for a Digital variable.

Note: *the new value entered is not written to the controller until you move off of the current cell either by tabbing out of the cell using the Shift+Tab keys or clicking on another cell using the mouse. If the value you want to change also shows engineering units, as in "100.0 LBS", for example, you just need to change the number portion; you don't need to delete the engineering units or type it in again.*

Use the Find Feature to locate a specific I/O on the Function Block Diagram.

Use the Sort Function to sort the table rows by a specific column.

See the Watch Window Summary for more details on this window.

Watch Summary - Inputs/Outputs

The number of pull-down selectors at the top of the display will depend on the controller type. For SIL-compliant controllers there will be a leading selector which allows the I/O points to be filtered based on the type of function block worksheet they are located on:

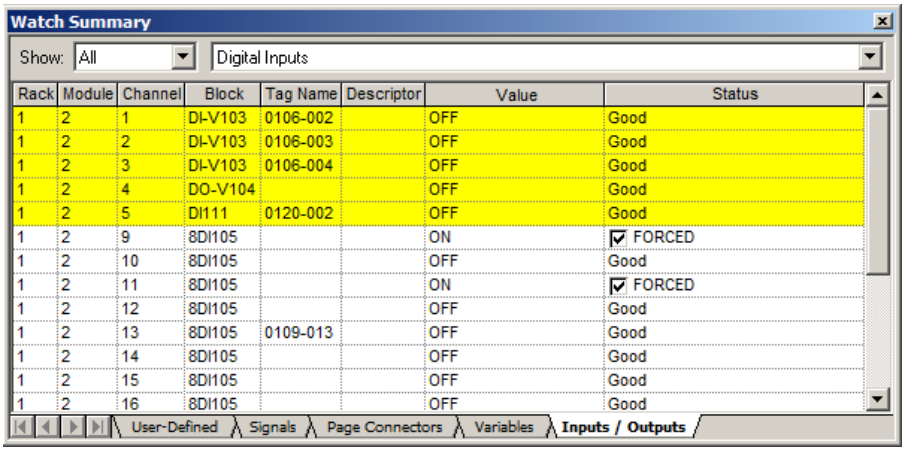
- All (both Process and Safety worksheets)
- Process
- Safety

For all controller types there will be a pull-down selector which allows the type of I/O point to be selected:

- Analog Inputs
- Analog Outputs
- Digital Inputs
- Digital Outputs

For each Input/Output in the selection list, its Rack, Module, Channel Number, Block Name, Tag Name, Descriptor, Value, and Status are displayed in the table, as shown below.

NOTE: *Only "assigned" inputs and outputs are shown in this window. Inputs and outputs whose rack, module, and channel that are all zero are not shown in this window. These unassigned inputs and outputs are shown on the controller worksheet, however*.



Rack	Module	Channel	Block	Tag Name	Descriptor	Value	Status
1	2	1	DI-V103	0106-002		OFF	Good
1	2	2	DI-V103	0106-003		OFF	Good
1	2	3	DI-V103	0106-004		OFF	Good
1	2	4	DO-V104			OFF	Good
1	2	5	DI111	0120-002		OFF	Good
1	2	9	8DI105			ON	☑ FORCED
1	2	10	8DI105			OFF	Good
1	2	11	8DI105			ON	☑ FORCED
1	2	12	8DI105			OFF	Good
1	2	13	8DI105	0109-013		OFF	Good
1	2	14	8DI105			OFF	Good
1	2	15	8DI105			OFF	Good
1	2	16	8DI105			OFF	Good

For SIL-compliant controller types, the rows of data will be colored coded. I/O blocks located on a Safety worksheet will be displayed with a yellow background, whereas I/O blocks located on a Process worksheet will be displayed on a white background.

You can Force an I/O by clicking on a value and entering a new value for an analog input or selecting the appropriate user-configured OFF or ON label from a drop-down menu for a digital input or output. A checked box and the word FORCED will appear in the Status column indicating that the I/O is forced. [Click off the value cell to see the box]

To **Remove a Force**, double-click to deselect the checked box.

Notes:

- Analog outputs cannot be forced.
- Safety I/O points cannot be forced while the controller is in Run mode.
- Time Proportioning outputs and Three position Step outputs cannot be monitored since the live value is maintained only on the D.O. module itself. The text "n/a" (for "not available) is shown as the value for these outputs.

Use the Find Feature to locate a specific I/O on the Function Block Diagram.

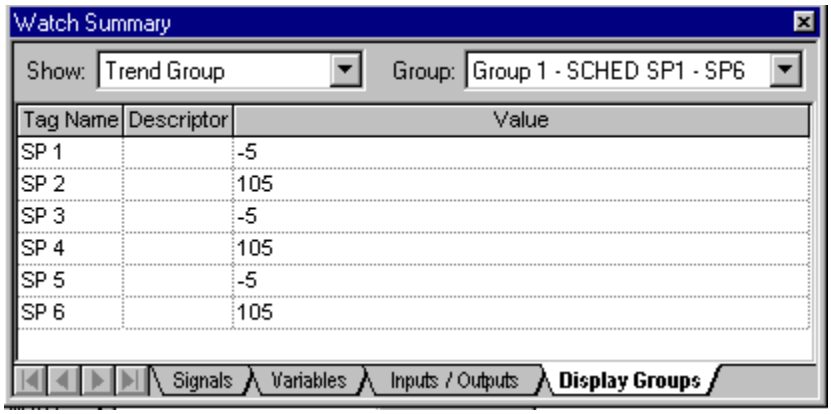
Use the Sort Function to sort the table rows by a specific column.

See the Watch Window Summary for more details on this window.

Watch Summary - Display Groups

This tab will only appear for Controller Revision Rev 4.4 and below. Watch Summary - Display Groups lets the user monitor the same points configured on the Operator Interface displays.

Select a **Display Group** (Show Menu) then a **Group Number** (Group Menu) from the drop-down menus at the top of the dialog box. The window will monitor the Display Group selected. Note that new values can be written to the variables shown in this window.



Use the "Find Feature " to Find a specific tag on the Function Block Diagram.

Use the "Sort Function " to sort the tag list by a specific column.

28. Diagnostics

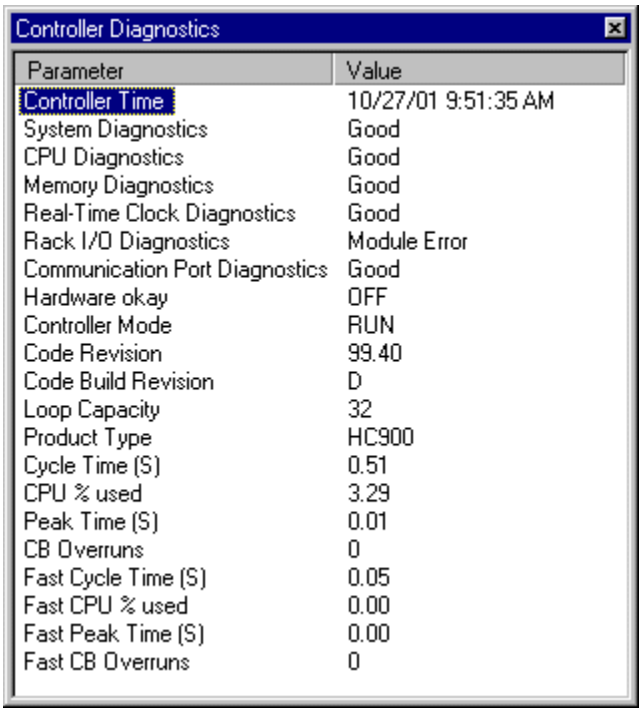
Controller Diagnostics

Introduction

The Designer provides live monitoring of Controller diagnostics. The instrument executes diagnostic routines during instrument start-up and during on-line operation and displays the controller status and diagnostics.

1. Select "Controller Diagnostics" from the "Monitor" drop-down menu, from the Monitor toolbar. .
   (This window can be launched from the "Utilities Worksheet")
2. The Controller Diagnostics (C30/C50/C70) or Diagnostic Overview (C70R/C75) window will appear. See below.
3. The "Controller Diagnostic Status Indications" explains the parameters and their values.
4. Click on "X" to exit box.

C30/C50/C70: Controller Diagnostics



Controller Diagnostics

Parameter	Value
Controller Time	10/27/01 9:51:35 AM
System Diagnostics	Good
CPU Diagnostics	Good
Memory Diagnostics	Good
Real-Time Clock Diagnostics	Good
Rack I/O Diagnostics	Module Error
Communication Port Diagnostics	Good
Hardware okay	OFF
Controller Mode	RUN
Code Revision	99.40
Code Build Revision	D
Loop Capacity	32
Product Type	HC900
Cycle Time (S)	0.51
CPU % used	3.29
Peak Time (S)	0.01
CB Overruns	0
Fast Cycle Time (S)	0.05
Fast CPU % used	0.00
Fast Peak Time (S)	0.00
Fast CB Overruns	0

C70R: Diagnostic Overview

Diagnostic Overview

Parameter	Value
Controller Time	5/3/05 2:38:31 PM
System Diagnostics	Good
CPU Diagnostics	Good
Memory Diagnostics	Good
Real-Time Clock Diagnostics	Good
Communication Port Diagnostics	Good
Rack Comm Diagnostic	Good
Rack IO Diagnostics	Good
Power Supply Diagnostic	Good
Reserve Available	ON
Redundancy Link Diagnostics	Good
Hardware okay	ON
Controller Mode	RUN LOCK
Loop Capacity	32
Product Type	HC900-C70R
Cycle Time (S)	0.53
CPU % used	8.18
Peak Time (S)	0.03
CB Overruns	0
Fast Cycle Time (S)	0.05
Fast CPU % used	3.90
Fast Peak Time (S)	0.04
Fast CB Overruns	0

C75: Diagnostic Overview

Diagnostic Overview

Parameter	Value
Controller Time	08-04-2021 18:46:36
System Diagnostics	Good
CPU Diagnostics	Good
Memory Diagnostics	Good
Real-Time Clock Diagnostics	Good
Communication Port Diagnostics	Good
Rack Comm Diagnostic	Good
Rack IO Diagnostics	Good
Power Supply Diagnostic	Good
Reserve Available	ON
Redundancy Link Diagnostics	Good
Hardware okay	ON
Controller Mode	RUN
Product Type	HC900-C75
Cycle Time (S)	2.250
CPU % used	33.126
Peak Time (S)	0.504
CB Overruns	0
Fast Cycle Time (S)	0.250
Fast CPU % used	16.531
Fast Peak Time (S)	0.062
Fast CB Overruns	0

C75S: Diagnostic Overview

Diagnostic Overview

Parameter	Value
Controller Time	08-04-2021 18:46:36
System Diagnostics	Good
CPU Diagnostics	Good
Memory Diagnostics	Good
Real-Time Clock Diagnostics	Good
Communication Port Diagnostics	Good
Rack Comm Diagnostic	Good
Rack IO Diagnostics	Good
Power Supply Diagnostic	Good
Reserve Available	ON
Redundancy Link Diagnostics	Good
Hardware okay	ON
Controller Mode	RUN
Product Type	HC900-C75S
Cycle Time (S)	2.250
CPU % used	33.126
Peak Time (S)	0.504
CB Overruns	0
Fast Cycle Time (S)	0.250
Fast CPU % used	16.531
Fast Peak Time (S)	0.062
Fast CB Overruns	0

C75S: Lead Diagnostics Overview

Lead Diagnostics Overview

Write

Parameter	Value
Scanner2 Rack#1 Network Diagnostics	Good
Scanner2 Rack#2 Network Status	Good - Port I/O A
Scanner2 Rack#2 Network Diagnostics	Good
Scanner2 Rack#3 Network Status	Good - Port I/O A
Scanner2 Rack#3 Network Diagnostics	Good
Scanner2 Rack#4 Network Status	Good - Port I/O A
Scanner2 Rack#4 Network Diagnostics	Good
Scanner2 Rack#5 Network Status	Good - Port I/O A
Scanner2 Rack#5 Network Diagnostics	Good
Scanner2 Rack#6 Network Status	Good - Port I/O A
Scanner2 Rack#6 Network Diagnostics	Good
Scanner2 Rack#7 Network Status	Good - Port I/O A
Scanner2 Rack#7 Network Diagnostics	Good
Scanner2 Rack#8 Network Status	Good - Port I/O A
Scanner2 Rack#8 Network Diagnostics	Good
Scanner2 Rack#9 Network Status	Good - Port I/O A
Scanner2 Rack#9 Network Diagnostics	Good
Scanner2 Rack#10 Network Status	Good - Port I/O A
Scanner2 Rack#10 Network Diagnostics	Good
Scanner2 Rack#11 Network Status	Good - Port I/O A
Scanner2 Rack#11 Network Diagnostics	Good
Scanner2 Rack#12 Network Status	Good - Port I/O A
Scanner2 Rack#12 Network Diagnostics	Good
CPU Slot Position	CPU A
Power Supply Type	P01
MAC Address (E1)	00-40-84-00-02-12
MAC Address (E2)	00-40-84-00-12-12
Manual Failover	0
Power Supply Diagnostic	Good
Controller Rack Type	Single Rack

C75S: Reserve Diagnostics Overview

Reserve Diagnostics Overview

Parameter	Value
Scanner2 Rack#1 Network Status	Good - Port I/O B
Scanner2 Rack#1 Network Diagnostics	Good
Scanner2 Rack#2 Network Status	Good - Port I/O B
Scanner2 Rack#2 Network Diagnostics	Good
Scanner2 Rack#3 Network Status	Good - Port I/O B
Scanner2 Rack#3 Network Diagnostics	Good
Scanner2 Rack#4 Network Status	Good - Port I/O B
Scanner2 Rack#4 Network Diagnostics	Good
Scanner2 Rack#5 Network Status	Good - Port I/O B
Scanner2 Rack#5 Network Diagnostics	Good
Scanner2 Rack#6 Network Status	Good - Port I/O B
Scanner2 Rack#6 Network Diagnostics	Good
Scanner2 Rack#7 Network Status	Good - Port I/O B
Scanner2 Rack#7 Network Diagnostics	Good
Scanner2 Rack#8 Network Status	Good - Port I/O B
Scanner2 Rack#8 Network Diagnostics	Good
Scanner2 Rack#9 Network Status	Good - Port I/O B
Scanner2 Rack#9 Network Diagnostics	Good
Scanner2 Rack#10 Network Status	Good - Port I/O B
Scanner2 Rack#10 Network Diagnostics	Good
Scanner2 Rack#11 Network Status	Good - Port I/O B
Scanner2 Rack#11 Network Diagnostics	Good
Scanner2 Rack#12 Network Status	Good - Port I/O B
Scanner2 Rack#12 Network Diagnostics	Good
CPU Slot Position	CPU B
Power Supply Type	P01
MAC Address (E1)	00-40-84-00-00-01
MAC Address (E2)	00-40-84-00-00-02
Power Supply Diagnostic	Good
Controller Rack Type	Redundant Split Rack

Controller Diagnostics Status Indications

For C30/C50/C70, the "Controller Diagnostics" window appears. For C70R/C75, the "Diagnostics Overview" window appears.

C30/C50/C70 Controller Diagnostics parameters

Parameter	Value	Possible Cause	Controller Action	User Action
System Diagnostics	Good	Controller is in RUN mode.	Executes the run mode. Outputs are updated.	None
	Forced Output	A block has an output that is forced.	None	Remove force on block output.
	Invalid Config.	A configuration that exceeds the loop capacity of the controller was downloaded or an invalid configuration exists.	An empty database is created.	Download a valid configuration.
	Switch Fault	A failure is detected in the switch reading.	All control blocks stop running All I/O scanning ceases. This forces the modules into failsafe.	Replace CPU.
	Invalid Change Of Mode	Controller mode is changed to RUN-Locked while there are forces on safety sheets.	Controller will not go to RUN-Locked mode.	To clear the diagnostic: 1. Change mode back to RUN mode OR 2. Clear all safety forces using HCD through Monitor->Forced Blocks OR 3. Force a cold-start
	Safety Configuration mismatch	Controller mode is changed to RUN-Locked when safety configuration is changed at run-time	Controller will not go to RUN-Locked mode.	To clear the diagnostic: 1. Change mode back to RUN mode OR 2. Force a cold-start
CPU Diagnostics	Good	N/A	N/A	N/A
	Watchdog	Watchdog reset resulting from system timeout	Associated rack monitor block's RACK OK pin is turned off. ASYS block's HW OK pin is turned off.	1. Force a cold start. 2. Upgrade control file software. 3. Replace CPU board. 4. Contact Honeywell Technical Assistance Center.

Parameter	Value	Possible Cause	Controller Action	User Action
	Prefetch Abort	CPU failed when attempting to fetch an instruction from the prefetch register.	1. Controller performs a restart 2. Associated rack monitor block's RACK OK pin is turned off. 3. ASYS block's HW OK pin is turned off.	1. Force a cold start. 2. Isolate system from noise and force a cold start. 3. Replace CPU board
	Address Error	The reserved exception occurred for an unknown reason.	Same as above	Same as above
	Undefine Error	Bad Instruction Detected	Same as above	Same as above
	Data Abort	CPU failed when attempting to access data.	Same as above	Same as above
	Software Interrupt Error	Software Interrupt occurred which is not supported by the software.	Same as above	Same as above
Memory Diagnostics	Good	N/A	N/A	N/A
	5 Day Low Battery Warning	Estimated battery life is less than 5 days.	1. Associated rack monitor block's RACK OK pin is turned off. 2. ASYS block's HW OK pin is turned off.	Replace battery.
	Low Battery	Battery voltage is low.	1. Associated rack monitor block's RACK OK pin is turned off. 2. ASYS block's LOW BATTERY pin is turned on. 3. ASYS block's HW OK pin is turned off.	Replace battery.
	Flash Error	Flash failed to burn	1. Associated rack monitor block's RACK OK pin is turned off. 2. ASYS block's HW OK pin is turned off.	1. Force a cold start. 2. Replace CPU board.
Real Time Clock	Good	N/A	N/A	N/A

Parameter	Value	Possible Cause	Controller Action	User Action
Diagnostics	Not Programmed	RTC not programmed	1. Time and date is set to 00:00:00, January 1, 1970. 2. Associated rack monitor block's RACK OK pin is turned off. 3. ASYS block's HW OK pin is turned off.	Program RTC.
	Bad Data	Bad date and time	Same as above	1. Program RTC. 2. Cycle power. 3. Replace CPU. 4. Replace boards in rack. 5. Replace rack
	Programming Failure	RTC failed to program	Same as above	Same as above
	Read Failure	Unable to read RTC	Same as above	Same as above
Rack I/O Diagnostics	Good	N/A	N/A	N/A
	Module Error	One of the module diagnostics in the associated rack is set to WRONG MODULE, MODULE NO COMM (if the communications is failing due to the module not installed), BAD MODULE, or BAD CHANNEL.	Refer to related Module diagnostic.	Access the I/O Module diagnostics screen.
	Hi Temp	One of the module diagnostics in the associated rack is set to HI CJ TEMPERATURE.	Refer to HI CJ TEMPERATURE in Module diagnostics	Access the I/O Module diagnostics screen
	Rack Backplane Fail	The Main CPU/Scanner is unable to successfully communicate to any modules that are in its SPI backplane.	All associated module diagnostics are set to MODULE NO COMM. Refer to MODULE NO COMM diagnostic for further details.	• Remove modules and check for bent pins on connectors. • Reinsert modules one at a time and note which module the diagnostic reoccurs, and replace that module. • Cycle power to the rack. • Replace the power supply. • Replace the rack. • Replace the CPU board.

Parameter	Value	Possible Cause	Controller Action	User Action
	Rack Comm Fail	The Main CPU is unable to successfully communicate to an expansion rack that is in its configuration. **Please note that there are NO expansion racks permitted on the ControlEdge HC900-C30 controller**.	Same as above	1. Verify that the expansion rack should be in the configuration 2. Verify that the jumpers on the scanner are setup for the correct rack address. 3. Check that expansion rack is on. 4. Check the expansion rack's status LED for diagnostic information. 5. Check that cable is connected to expansion rack. 6. If a hub is used, check that all cables are properly connected to the hub, proper crossover cables are used, and that hub is powered. 7. Cycle power to the rack. 8. Cycle power to the hub. 9. Replace the expansion rack's power supply. 10. Replace the expansion rack. 11. Replace the expansion rack's scanner board.
	Rack SW incompatibility	The Main CPU determined that its software is not compatible with the scanner module.	All associated module diagnostics are set to MODULE NO COMM. Refer to MODULE NO COMM diagnostic for further details.	1. Upgrade the scanner software either by replacing the module or doing a code-download. 2. Update Main CPU software either by replacing the module or doing a code download.
Comm Port Diagnostics	Good	N/A	N/A	N/A
	Warning	One of the comm port's is reporting an application error	*Refer to related Comm port diagnostic*	Access the Comm port diagnostics screen
	Failed	One of the Comm port's is reporting a physical or data link failure	*Refer to related Comm port diagnostic*	Same as above

C70R/C75 Diagnostic Overview parameters

Parameter	Value	Possible Cause	Controller Action	User Action
System Diagnostics	Good	Controller is in RUN mode.	Executes the run mode. Outputs are updated.	None
CPU Diagnostic	Good	System is functional	None	None
	Rack 'n'	Rack 'n' is reporting a diagnostic	Diagnostic may cause a failover Diagnostic may prevent a failover	Refer to the Rack Diagnostics for more details
	Multiple Racks	More than one Rack is reporting a diagnostic	Diagnostic may cause a failover Diagnostic may prevent a failover	Refer to the Rack Diagnostics for more details
	Lead CPU	The Lead CPU is reporting a diagnostic	None	Refer to the Lead CPU Diagnostics for more details
	Reserve CPU	The Reserve CPU is reporting a diagnostic	None	Refer to the Reserve CPU Diagnostic for more details
	Serial Port S1 or S2	There is a diagnostic on the Lead CPU Serial Port (S1 or S2)	None	Refer to the Serial Port S1 or Serial Port S2 Diagnostic Screen for more details
	Network E1 or E2	There is a diagnostic on the Lead CPU Network Port E1 or E2	None	Refer to the Network Port Diagnostic Screen for more details
	Scanner Link	Lead CPU is reporting a diagnostic on the Scanner Link	None	Refer to the Lead CPU Diagnostic and the Scanner Link Diagnostic screens for more details
	Redundancy Link	Lead CPU is reporting a diagnostic on the Redundancy Link. There is a problem with the communications between the Lead and Reserve CPUs.	None	Refer to the Lead and Reserve CPU Diagnostic screens for more details. Check the Redundancy Link Diagnostic screen for more details
Memory Diagnostic	See CPU Diagnostic for possible values			
Real-Time Clock Diagnostic	See CPU Diagnostic for possible values			
Communication Port Diagnostics	See CPU Diagnostic for possible values			

Parameter	Value	Possible Cause	Controller Action	User Action
Rack IO Diagnostics	See CPU Diagnostic for possible values			
Rack Comm Diagnostic	See CPU Diagnostic for possible values			
Power Supply Diagnostic	See CPU Diagnostic for possible values			
Reserve Available	On	There is a Reserve CPU Available for failover		
	Off	1. No Reserve CPU is available 2. Reserve CPU may be powered off 3. Reserve CPU is powered on but synchronizing with the Lead CPU 4. There may be other physical problems with the Reserve CPU	System will not be able to perform a failover	1. Check that Reserve CPU is powered ON 2. If powered ON, check the Reserve status LED on the Reserve CPU and the RSM Module 3. Check Reserve CPU Diagnostics for additional details
Redundancy Link Diagnostics	Good			
	Data Link Failure	1. No Reserve CPU is available 2. Reserve CPU may be powered off 3. Reserve CPU is powered on but synchronizing with the Lead CPU 4. There may be other physical problems with the Reserve CPU	System will not be able to perform a failover	1. Check that Reserve CPU is powered ON 2. If powered ON, check the Reserve status LED on the Reserve CPU and the RSM Module 3. Check Reserve CPU Diagnostics for additional details
	Hardware Failure	There may be physical problems with the Lead CPU	System will not be able to perform a failover	Replace the Lead CPU

Rack Diagnostics

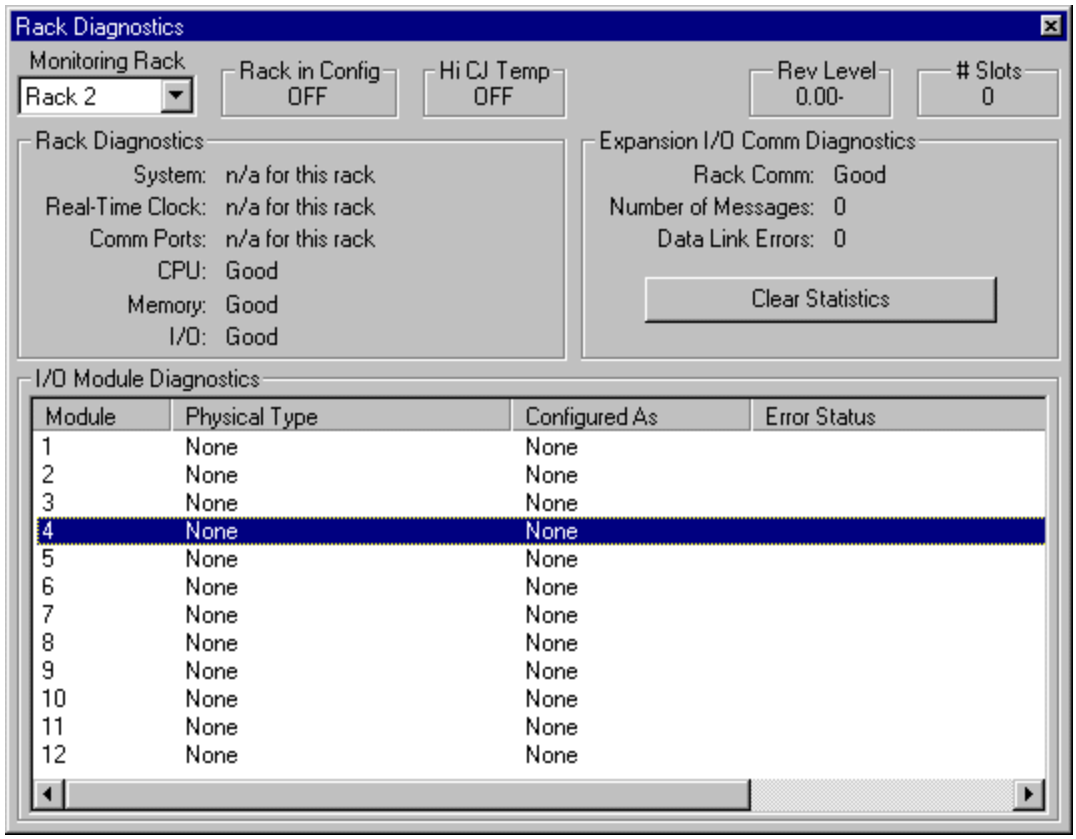
Introduction

The Designer provides live monitoring Rack diagnostics. The instrument executes diagnostic routines during instrument start-up and during on-line operation.

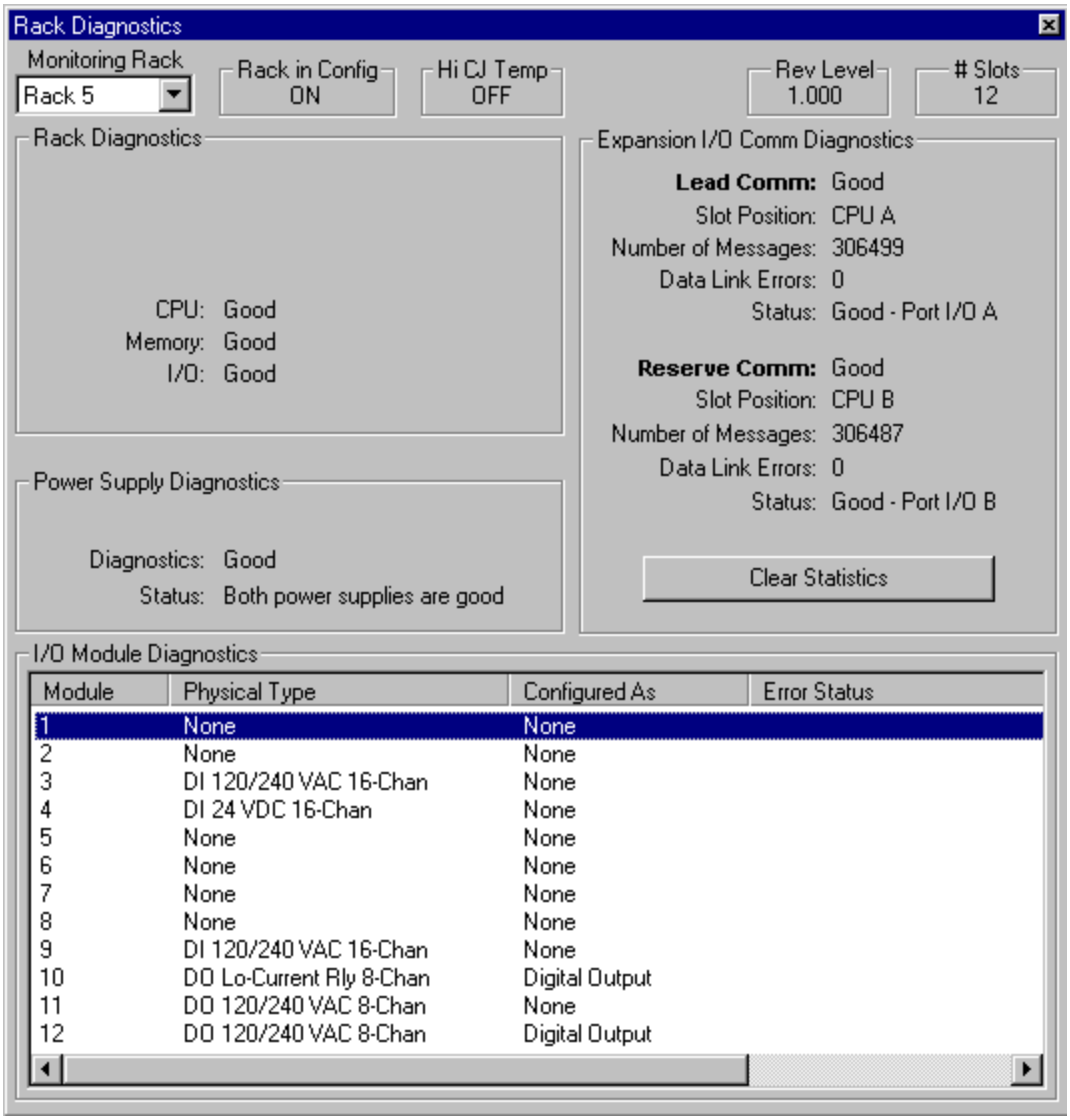
1. Select the "Rack Diagnostics" from the "Monitor" drop-down menu or from the Monitor Toolbar.
   (This window can be launched from the "Utilities Worksheet"
2. The "Rack Diagnostic Summary" dialog box will appear.
3. Select a Rack from the "Monitoring Rack" drop-down menu on the dialog box. The information for the selected rack will appear on the dialog box.
4. The summary window will provide Controller status and diagnostic information ***for the selected Rack***:
   Rack in Configuration - ON or Off
   High CJ Temp status - On or Off
   Revision Level of the Rack - Read Only
   Number of Slots - Read Only
   Rack Diagnostics - The status of the selected rack. Refer to "Controller Diagnostics Status Indications" for diagnostic messages. Not all diagnostics appear for expansion racks.
   Power Supply Diagnostics – C70R/C75 only. Status of the rack's power supply/supplies. See Rack Diagnostics: Power Supply.
   Expansion I/O Comm Diagnostics (except C30 CPU) - The status of the Expansion I/O Comm Diagnostics. Refer to "Expansion I/O Comm Diagnostic Status Indicators". Read the diagnostics for a particular rack.
   I/O Module Diagnostics - Status of the Modules shown in the list:
   - Physical Type
   - Configured as (type)
   - Error Status.
   - Model Number & Rev Level (scroll horizontally to view)

   For status of individual I/O channels, see Function Block Monitor Window.
5. Click on upper right X to exit box.

C30/C50/C70:


Rack Diagnostics
Monitoring Rack
Rack 2
Rack in Config
OFF
Hi CJ Temp
OFF
Rev Level
0.00-
Slots
0
Rack Diagnostics
System: n/a for this rack
Real-Time Clock: n/a for this rack
Comm Ports: n/a for this rack
CPU: Good
Memory: Good
I/O: Good
Expansion I/O Comm Diagnostics
Rack Comm: Good
Number of Messages: 0
Data Link Errors: 0
Clear Statistics
I/O Module Diagnostics
Module
Physical Type
Configured As
Error Status
1 None None
2 None None
3 None None
4 None None
5 None None
6 None None
7 None None
8 None None
9 None None
10 None None
11 None None
12 None None

C70R/C75:


Rack Diagnostics
Monitoring Rack
Rack 5
Rack in Config
ON
Hi CJ Temp
OFF
Rev Level
1.000
Slots
12
Rack Diagnostics
CPU: Good
Memory: Good
I/O: Good
Expansion I/O Comm Diagnostics
Lead Comm: Good
Slot Position: CPU A
Number of Messages: 306499
Data Link Errors: 0
Status: Good - Port I/O A
Reserve Comm: Good
Slot Position: CPU B
Number of Messages: 306487
Data Link Errors: 0
Status: Good - Port I/O B
Clear Statistics
Power Supply Diagnostics
Diagnostics: Good
Status: Both power supplies are good
I/O Module Diagnostics
Module | Physical Type | Configured As | Error Status
1 | None | None
2 | None | None
3 | DI 120/240 VAC 16-Chan | None
4 | DI 24 VDC 16-Chan | None
5 | None | None
6 | None | None
7 | None | None
8 | None | None
9 | DI 120/240 VAC 16-Chan | None
10 | DO Lo-Current Rly 8-Chan | Digital Output
11 | DO 120/240 VAC 8-Chan | None
12 | DO 120/240 VAC 8-Chan | Digital Output

Rack Diagnostics: Power Supply

The Power Supply diagnostics provide status of the parameters shown in the list.

Parameter/ Message	Value	Possible Cause	Controller Action	User Action
Power Supply Status	Unknown	No rack communication.	If under power I/O will switch to failsafe values Loss of Comms	Determine & correct cause of communication failure
			If not powered (un-powered outputs) Loss of AC mains Bad power supply Failed scanner2	Restore rack operation Restore AC main power, reset breaker Replace Power supply Replace scanner2
	Redundant P/S is not present	Single power supply configuration	Status reported Rack continues to function properly	No action required if single power supply rack.
		Redundant Power Backplane not detected	Status reported Rack continues to function properly	If dual power supplies installed Replace Redundant Power Backplane Replace rack backplane Replace Scanner2.
	Power Supply PS-1 Failed (PS-1 LED is OFF)	No AC Mains on PS-1	Diagnostic reported. Rack continues to function properly. Status posted.	Restore AC main power, reset breaker.
		Failed Power Supply		Replace Power Supply
		Failed Redundant Power Backplane detection circuit		Requires unit shutdown - Replace Redundant Power Backplane
	(PS-1 LED is ON)	Failed rack backplane status signal		Requires unit shutdown - Replace rack backplane.
		Failed Scanner2 status input		Requires unit shutdown - Replace Scanner2.
	Power Supply PS-2 Failed (PS-2 LED is OFF)	No AC Main on PS-2	Diagnostic reported. Rack continues to function properly. Status posted.	Restore AC main power, reset breaker.
		Failed Power		Replace Power

Parameter/ Message	Value	Possible Cause	Controller Action	User Action
		Supply		Supply
		Failed Redundant Power Backplane detection circuit		Requires unit shutdown - Replace Redundant Power Backplane
	(PS-2 LED is ON)	Failed rack backplane status signal		Requires unit shutdown - Replace rack backplane.
		Failed Scanner2 status input		Requires unit shutdown - Replace Scanner2
	Both Power Supplies are Good	NA	None	None
Power Supply Diagnostic	See Power Supply Status for possible values			

I/O Module Diagnostics Status Indications

In the Rack Diagnostics window, the subsection I/O Module Diagnostics displays the Error Status for each module in the rack.

The following table lists the possible Error Statuses.

Error Status	Possible Cause	Controller Action	User Action
Good	N/A	N/A	N/A
Hi CJ Temperature	Possible causes of this diagnostic are: One of the two CJs on the module is indicating a temperature reading greater than 70 degrees C. Both cold-junction sensors are failing to convert. The CJs are converting properly, but their differential is greater than 10 degrees C.	Associated AI blocks that are configured as T/Cs set their fail pin on, their warn pin off, and their output pin to the failsafe value. Associated AI blocks that are configured as T/Cs set their IO status to “CJ High Temperature” for reason 1 or “CJ Failure” for possible causes 2 and 3. Associated rack monitor block’s module fail pin is turned on. Associated rack monitor block’s RACK OK pin is turned off. Associated rack monitor block’s HITEMP pin is turned on. ASYS block’s HITEMP pin is turned on. ASYS block’s HW OK pin is turned off.	Improve ventilation to rack Replace AI module

Error Status	Possible Cause	Controller Action	User Action
Wrong Module	The module does not agree with the module required for the control scenario	Associated blocks set their fail pin on, their warn pin off, and their output pin to the failsafe value. Associated blocks set their IO status to “Channel No Comm”. Associated rack monitor block’s module fail pin is turned on. Associated rack monitor block’s RACK OK pin is turned off. ASYS block’s HW OK pin is turned off.	Verify configuration Replace module with the correct one.
#Module No Comm	Main CPU is unable to communicate to the module for one of the following reasons: Module is not installed The module cannot communicate with the controller CPU or the expansion rack CPU because of a backplane problem. Module is on an expansion rack and the expansion rack communications are failing	See Wrong Module.	Action is based on the IODIAG indication. If IODIAG is not MODULE ERROR, then follow the prescribed action defined for that diagnostic. For MODULE ERROR, do the following: Verify configuration Install module. Check the communication cables that connect the expansion rack(s) to the Main Rack. Replace the controller or expansion rack backplane.
Bad Module	Module is bad. Module LED flashes to indicate the problem.	N/A	See ControlEdge HC900 Controller Manual 51-52-25-107, I/O Module Indicators. A table describes the LED flashes and what they mean.

Error Status	Possible Cause	Controller Action	User Action
Bad Channel	One or more channels in the module is bad.	The I/O rack's Scanner status LED and the Controller rack's status LED (not the module or channel LED) flash 6 times.	To determine which channel(s) are bad, monitor the function blocks corresponding to the channels in this module. See Function Block Monitor Window Check each I/O function block's "Channel/Sensor Status ". 2) To determine the cause, see ControlEdge HC900 Controller Manual 51-52-25-107, I/O Module Indicators, Bad I/O Channel Diagnostics. A table describes the channel statuses and what they mean.

I/O Channel/Sensor Status

When monitoring blocks of the type in the table below, the Channel/Sensor Status is displayed. Statuses vary in severity; the more serious will trigger an error message/indicator elsewhere, such as a I/O Module Diagnostic Error or a flashing LED on the I/O rack.

Here is an alphabetical list of possible statuses for each I/O channel type.

Channel/Sensor Status	Channel type										Possible Cause	User Action
	AI	AO	DI	DO	TPO	TPSC	PI	PO	FI	QUAD		
Good	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	Normal operation	
Bad Channel		√						√			There are two possible causes for this error: 1. If the channel is an Analog Output: There is no physical output device connected to this channel, or the output device is showing an "open" connection. 2. If the channel is a Pulse Output: The channel is failing to output the correct value. A BAD CHANNEL I/O module diagnostic is posted.	Check terminal connections. Replace module.
Burnout Failure	√										The sensor – T/C, RTD, or mV source -- is failing burnout checks. A BAD CHANNEL I/O module diagnostic is posted.	Check terminal block connections Replace source element Replace module.
CJ Failure	√										Two conditions can create this failure. 1. Both cold-junction sensors are failing to convert. 2. The CJs are converting properly, but their differential is greater than	Improve ventilation to rack. Replace AI module.

Channel/Sensor Status	Channel type										Possible Cause	User Action
	AI	AO	DI	DO	TPO	TPSC	PI	PO	FI	QUAD		
											10 degrees C. In either case a HI CJ TEMP I/O module diagnostic is posted.	
CJ High Temperature	√										One of the CJs is indicating a temperature reading above 70 degrees C. A HI CJ TEMP I/O module diagnostic is posted.	Improve ventilation to rack. Replace AI module.
CJ Warning	√										One of the cold-junction sensors is failing to convert. The temperature compensation for the thermocouple readings could have a slight error because only the good CJ is being used in the temperature calculation.	
Clamp High		√									The AO block's input is greater than the block's configured high range value.	
Clamp Low		√									The AO block's input is less than the block's configured low range value.	
Disabled	√										AI channel is programmatically disabled	
Failed to convert	√										When attempting to take a reading, the analog-to-digital (ADC) fails. This can occur if the incoming signal is either too large or too small. It also could result if the ADC circuit is failing. If the problem is the ADC circuit, most likely other channels will have the same failure. A BAD CHANNEL I/O module diagnostic is posted.	Check the signal level being applied to the terminals. Replace module.
Forced	√		√	√							The point has been manually forced to its present value, probably via a PC host.	
No Channel Available	√		√	√			√	√	√	√	There is no hardware on the I/O module to support this channel. For example, the customer configured Channel #15 for a given module, but there is an 8-channel module installed in the rack. A BAD CHANNEL I/O module diagnostic is posted.	
No Comm	√	√	√	√	√	√					The Main CPU is unable to communicate to the channel. Possible reasons are module missing, wrong module installed, SPI backplane is failing, expansion rack is missing.	
Over current				√			√	√	√	√	A Digital Output module detected an excessive amount of current on its output terminals. Note that this message will only appear for the 32-channel DO module. A BAD CHANNEL module diagnostic is	

Channel/Sensor Status	Channel type										Possible Cause	User Action
	AI	AO	DI	DO	TPO	TPSC	PI	PO	FI	QUAD		
											posted.	
Over range	√										The signal at the terminals is more than 10% over the range of the sensor.	Check the signal level being applied to the terminals. Replace module.
Sensor & Range type not available	√										The AI module installed in the rack does not support the range or sensor type configured for this channel. For example, this channel's AI function block is configured as a thermocouple, but there is a high-level AI module installed in the rack.	
T/C Failing	√										When burnout check occurs on the T/C, the measured resistance indicates that the T/C's resistance is to a point where the burnout failure will result.	
T/C Warning	√										When burnout check occurs on the T/C, the measured resistance is higher than normal.	
Under range	√										The signal at the terminals is less than 10% below the range of the sensor.	Check the signal level being applied to the terminals. Replace module.
Wrong Firmware Rev	√										The firmware in the AI module is not compatible with the firmware in the controller or scanner CPU, or AI module does not support slidewire as an input type.	

Controller Ports Diagnostics

Accessing Port Diagnostics

Overview

The Designer provides live monitoring of Controller Ports diagnostics. The instrument executes diagnostic routines during instrument start-up and during on-line operation.

1. Select "Controller Ports Diagnostics" from the "Monitor" drop-down menu or from the Monitor toolbar.
   There is a sub-menu from which you can choose the type of port you want to monitor:

Toolbar	Menu
	Serial Port S1 Configuration Port Diagnostics
	Serial Port S2 OI Port Diagnostics
	Network Port Diagnostics
	Expansion I/O Comm Diagnostics (except C30 CPU)
	Host Connections Diagnostics
	Peer-to-Peer Connections Diagnostics

The specific monitoring dialog box for that selection will open.

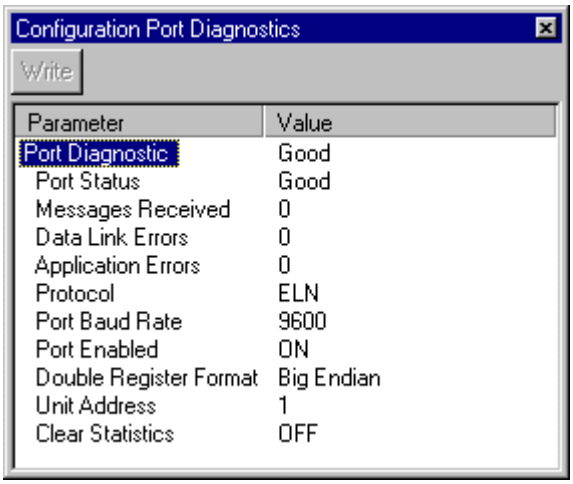
Serial Port S1 Configuration Port Diagnostics

The Designer provides live monitoring of the Serial Port S1 Configuration Port (default RS232). The instrument executes diagnostic routines during instrument start-up and during on-line operation.

1. Select "Controller Ports Diagnostics" from the "Monitor" drop-down menu then select "Serial Port S1" from the list provided or from the Monitor toolbar.

2. The "Serial Port S1 Diagnostic Summary" dialog box will appear. It shows Port Status, Diagnostics, Statistics and parameters for the Serial Port S1 Configuration Port.
   (This window can be launched from the "Utilities Worksheet")
3. The summary will provide status of the parameters shown in the list.
4. Click on "X" to exit box.

Refer to the Serial Port S1 Configuration Port Diagnostics Status Indicators for status indications, possible cause, and actions to correct the problem.



Serial Port S1 Configuration Port Diagnostics Status Indicators

The "Serial Port S1 Diagnostic Summary" dialog box will provide status of the parameters shown in the list.

Parameter	Value	Possible Cause	Controller Action	User Action
Serial Port S1 Port Diagnostics	Good	N/A	N/A	N/A
	Data Link Failure	A large number of messages are resulting in data link errors.	1. Rack 1 monitor block's COMPORT DIAG is set to FAILED. 2. Rack 1 monitor block's RACK OK pin is turned off. 3. ASYS block's HW OK pin is turned off. 4. If configured as a Modbus host: ASYS and FSYS blocks' Modbus Host Fail pins are turned on. Device and read blocks associated with the modbus devices experiencing the failure have their read pins frozen to the last value read. Device blocks associated with the modbus devices experiencing the failure have their BAD COMM and NO SCAN pins turned on. IN SCAN STATUS is set to NO for all modbus devices experiencing the failure. COMM STATUS is set to BAD for all modbus device experiencing the failure. The modbus device with the data link errors have a non-zero data link error count. The modbus device experiencing the failure are moved to the background scan rate.	1. Check baud rate 2. Check connectors 3. Check cable polarity 4. Isolate cabling from electrical interference 5. If RS232 to RS485 converter is used, check its power, switch/jumper settings, and polarity. 6. If configured as a Modbus host, use the modbus device status screens to determine which modbus devices are experiencing the problem. For those modbus devices check: • power • connections • address • baud rate • parity • number of stop bits • for electrical interference • grounding • termination resistor (if at end of link) 7. The diagnostic is cleared by clearing the port's statistics.

Parameter	Value	Possible Cause	Controller Action	User Action
	HW Failure	The DUART is failing to operate properly.	1. Rack 1 monitor block's COMPORT DIAG is set to FAILED. 2. Rack 1 monitor block's RACK OK pin is turned off. 3. ASYS and FSYS blocks' HW OK pins are turned off. 4. If configured as a Modbus host: i. ASYS and FSYS blocks' Modbus Host Fail pins are turned on. ii. All Modbus devices and Modbus read blocks have their read pins frozen to the last value read. iii. All modbus device blocks have their BAD COMM and NO SCAN pins turned on. iv. IN SCAN STATUS is set to NO for all modbus devices. v. COMM STATUS is set to BAD for all modbus devices in the function block diagram. vi. Statistical data for all modbus devices is frozen. vii. All modbus devices in the function block diagram are scanned at the background scan rate.	Replace CPU module

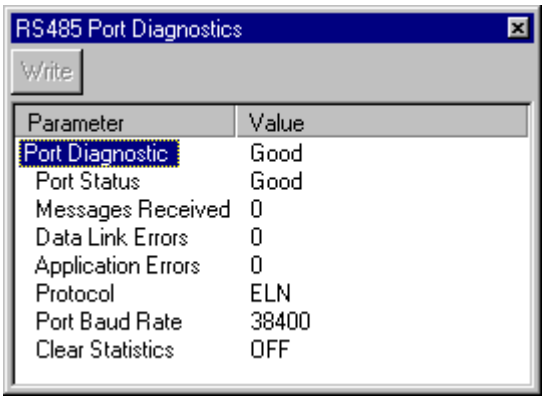
Serial Port S2 Port Diagnostics

The Designer provides live monitoring of the S2 Port. The instrument executes diagnostic routines during instrument start-up and during on-line operation.

1. Select "Controller Ports Diagnostics" from the "Monitor" drop-down menu then select "Serial Port S2" from the list provided or from the Monitor toolbar.

2. The "Serial Port S2 Diagnostic Summary" dialog box will appear.
   It shows Port Status, Diagnostics, Statistics and parameters for the Serial S2 Port (default RS485 for 559/1042 Operator Interface).
   (This window can be launched from the "Utilities Worksheet").
3. The summary will provide status of the parameters shown in the list.
4. Click on "X" to exit box.

Refer to the Serial Port S2 Port Status Indicators for status indications, possible cause, and actions to correct the problem.



Serial Port S2 Port Status Indicators

The "Serial Port S2 Diagnostic Summary" dialog box will provide status of the parameters shown in the list.

Parameter	Value	Possible Cause	Controller Action	User Action
Serial Port S2 Diagnostics	Good	N/A	N/A	N/A
	Application Error	At least 1 response to a host resulted in an exception code or NAK.	1. Rack 1 monitor block's COMPORT DIAG is set to WARNING. 2. Rack 1 monitor block's RACK OK pin is turned off. 3. ASYS block's HW OK pin is turned off.	At host, determine which message is causing the exception code and fix.

Parameter	Value	Possible Cause	Controller Action	User Action
	Data Link Failure	A large number of messages are resulting in data link errors.	1. Rack 1 monitor block's COMPORT DIAG is set to FAILED. 2. Rack 1 monitor block's RACK OK pin is turned off. 3. ASYS block's HW OK pin is turned off. 4. If configured as a Modbus Host port, associated modbus device blocks have their read pins frozen to the last value read.	1. Check baud rate 2. Check connectors 3. Check cable polarity 4. Isolate cabling from electrical interference 5. If RS232 to RS485 converter used, check its power, switch/jumper settings, and polarity.
	HW Failure	The DUART is failing to operate properly.	Same as above	Replace CPU module

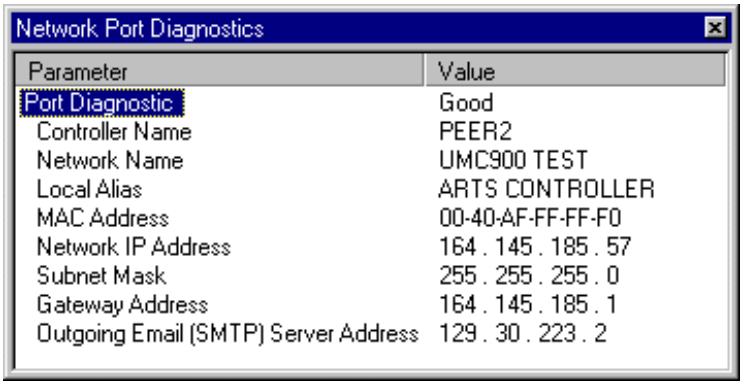
Network Port Diagnostics

The Designer provides live monitoring of the Ethernet Network Port. The instrument executes diagnostic routines during instrument start-up and during on-line operation.

1. Select "Controller Ports Diagnostics" from the "Monitor" drop-down menu then select "Network Port" from the list provided or from the Monitor toolbar.

   (This window can be launched from the "Utilities Worksheet"
2. The "Network Port Diagnostic Summary" dialog box will appear. It shows Port Status, Diagnostics, Statistics and parameters for the Ethernet Network Port.
3. The summary will provide status of the parameters shown in the list.
4. Click on "X" to exit box.

Refer to "Network Port Diagnostics Status Indicators" for status indications, possible cause, and actions to correct the problem.



Network Port Diagnostics

Parameter	Value
Port Diagnostic	Good
Controller Name	PEER2
Network Name	UMC900 TEST
Local Alias	ARTS CONTROLLER
MAC Address	00-40-AF-FF-FF-F0
Network IP Address	164 . 145 . 185 . 57
Subnet Mask	255 . 255 . 255 . 0
Gateway Address	164 . 145 . 185 . 1
Outgoing Email (SMTP) Server Address	129 . 30 . 223 . 2

Network Port Diagnostic Status Indicators

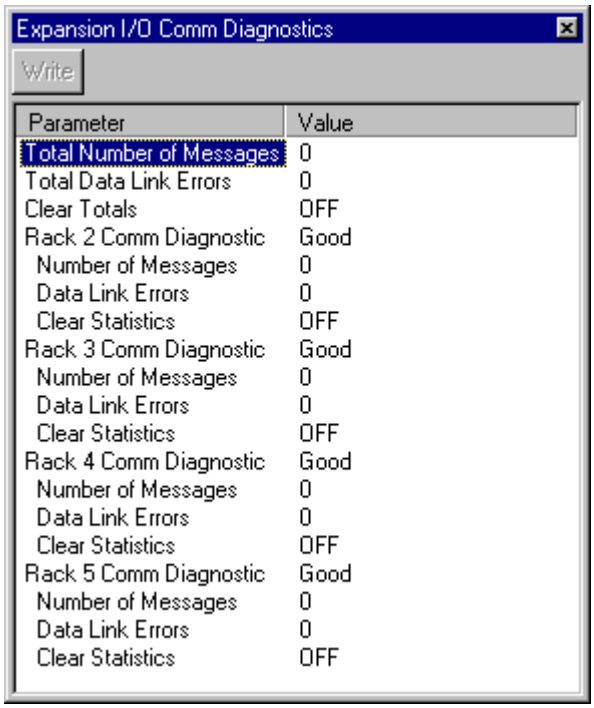
The "Network Port Diagnostic Summary" dialog box will provide status of the parameters shown in the list.

Parameter	Value	Possible Cause	Controller Action	User Action
Network Port Diagnostics	Good	N/A	N/A	N/A
	Network Setup Error	Controller/network names determined on network are illegal	1. Rack 1 monitor block's COMPORT DIAG is set to FAILED. 2. Rack 1 monitor block's RACK OK pin is turned off. 3. ASYS block's HW OK pin is turned off.	Correct the setup problem.
	No IP Address	DHCP and IP address are not configured	Same as above	1. If a DHCP server is present, download a configuration that uses DHCP. 2. Enter an IP address
	Hardware Failure	Ethernet port tests failed during power-up.	Same as above	Replace CPU Module

Expansion I/O Comm Diagnostics

The Designer provides live monitoring of the Expansion I/O **(except C30 CPU)** Comm subsystem. The instrument executes diagnostic routines during instrument start-up and during on-line operation.

1. Select "Controller Ports Diagnostics" from the "Monitor" drop-down menu then select "Expansion I/O Comm" from the list provided or from the Monitor toolbar.



(This window can be launched from the "Utilities Worksheet")

2. The "Expansion I/O Comm Diagnostic Summary" dialog box will appear. It shows Port Status, Diagnostics, Statistics and parameters for the I/O Expansion I/O Comm subsystem.
3. The summary will provide status of the parameters shown in the list.
4. Click on "X" to exit box.

Refer to "Expansion I/O Comm Diagnostics Status Indicators" for status indications, possible cause, and actions to correct the problem.

Expansion I/O Comm Diagnostics Status Indicators

The "Expansion I/O Comm Diagnostic Summary" dialog box will provide status of the parameters shown in the list. **(except C30 CPU)**

Parameter	Value	Possible Cause	Controller Action	User Action
Rack Comm Diagnostics	Good	N/A	N/A	N/A
	Data Link Failure	The communications to a particular rack is resulting in a lot of DLL errors.	1. Related rack monitor block's RACK OK pin is turned off. 2. Depending on the nature of the DLL errors, the associated rack monitor block's module diagnostics, and pins could be affected.	1. Use the OI to determine which rack is experiencing the DLL errors. Verify that the expansion rack should be in the configuration 2. Verify that the jumpers on the scanner are setup for the correct rack address. 3. If a hub is used, check that all cables are properly connected to the hub, proper crossover cables are used, and that hub is powered. 4. Cycle power to the rack. 5. Cycle power to the hub. 6. Replace the ControlEdge HC900-C50 expansion rack's power supply. 7. Replace the ControlEdge HC900-C50 expansion rack. 8. Replace the ControlEdge HC900-C50 expansion rack's scanner board. 9. Replace the main CPU.
	Hardware Failure	The power-up test of the expansion rack Ethernet controller failed.	1. All rack monitor block XIO PORT DIAG are set to HWFAIL. 2. All rack monitor block RACK OK pins are turned off. 3. All modules in the configuration have their diagnostic set to MOD_NOCOMM, their rack monitor module fail pin is turned on., and the rack monitor block's RACK OK pin is turned off. 4. ASYS block's HW OK pin is turned off. 5. The statuses for the AO and AI channels that are affected are set to BAD_CHANNEL.	Replace main-CPU module
	Port A/B Cable Mismatch	C70R/C75 only. The I/O cables from CPUA and CPUB are connected to the wrong ports on the I/O scanner CPU	Controller continues to run but is not able to access the I/O on the associated rack	Swap the cables so that I/O A is connected to I/O on CPUA and I/O B is connected to I/O on CPUB
	Protocol Mismatch	The firmware version in the controller CPU is not compatible with the firmware version in the I/O scanner	Controller continues to run but is not able to access the I/O on the associated rack	Upgrade the firmware in the CPU and/or scanner to be compatible versions

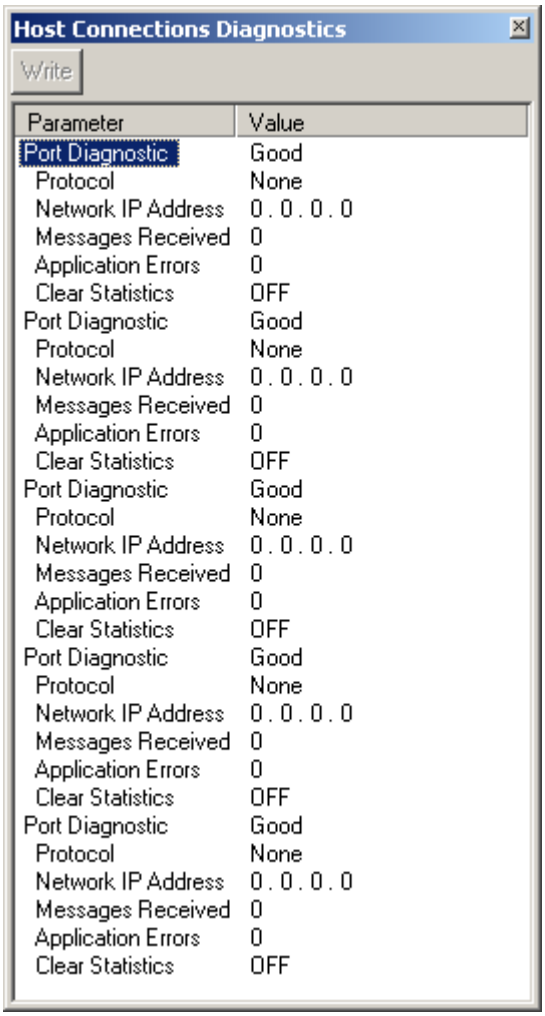
Host Connections Diagnostics

The Designer provides live monitoring of the Host Connections. The instrument executes diagnostic routines during instrument start-up and during on-line operation.

1. Select "Controller Ports Diagnostics" from the "Monitor" drop-down menu then select "Host Connections" from the list provided or from the Monitor toolbar.

   (This window can be launched from the "Utilities Worksheet")
2. The "Host Connections Diagnostic Summary" dialog box will appear.
3. The summary will provide status of the parameters shown in the list.
4. Click on "X" to exit box.

Refer to "Host Connections Diagnostics Status Indicators" for status indications, possible cause, and actions to correct the problem.



Host Connections Diagnostics Status Indicators

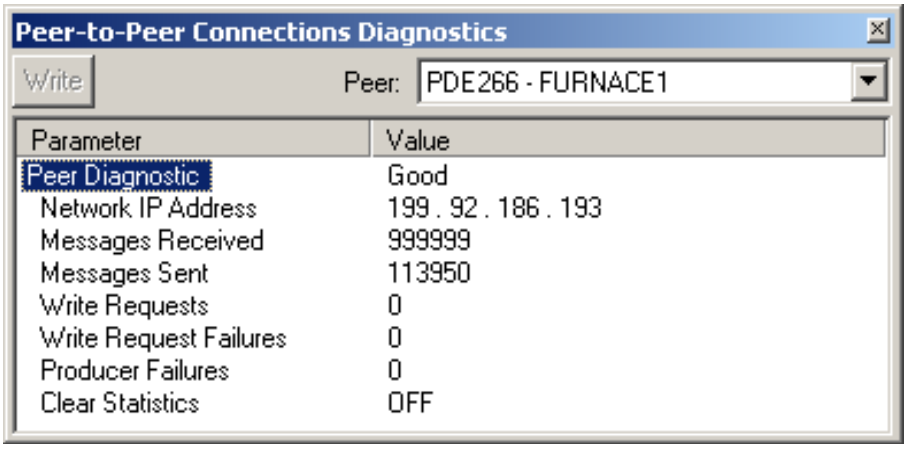
The "Network Host Connections Diagnostic Summary" dialog box will provide status of the parameters shown in the list.

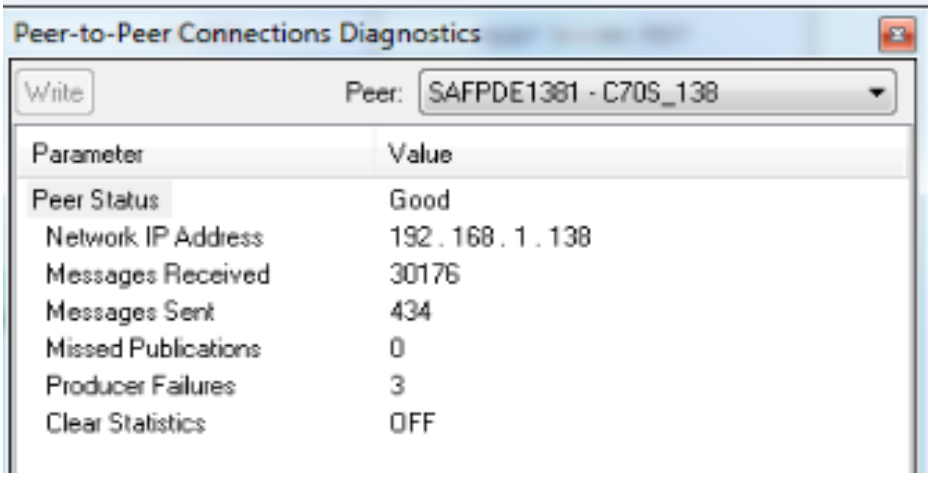
Parameter	Value	Possible Cause	Controller Action	User Action
Network Host Connections Diagnostics	Good	N/A	N/A	N/A
	Application Error	At least 1 response to a host resulted in an exception code	1.Rack 1 monitor block's COMPORT DIAG is set to WARNING. 2.Rack 1 monitor block's RACK OK pin is turned off. 3.ASYS block's HW OK pin is turned off.	At host, determine which message is causing the exception code and fix.

Peer-to-Peer Connections Diagnostics

The Designer provides live monitoring of the Peer-to-Peer Connections. The instrument executes diagnostic routines during instrument start-up and during on-line operation.

1. Select "Controller Ports Diagnostics" from the "Monitor" drop-down menu then select "Peer-to-Peer Connections" from the list provided.
2. (This window can be launched from the "Utilities Worksheet") Select "Controller Diagnostics" icon then select "Controller Ports Diagnostics" then "Peer-to-Peer" Connections.
3. The "Peer-to-Peer Connections" dialog box will appear.





4. The summary will provide status of the parameters shown in the list.
5. Click on "X" to exit box.

Refer to "Peer -to-Peer Connections Diagnostics Status Indicators" for status indications, possible cause, and actions to correct the problem.

Peer-to-Peer Connections Diagnostics Status Indicators

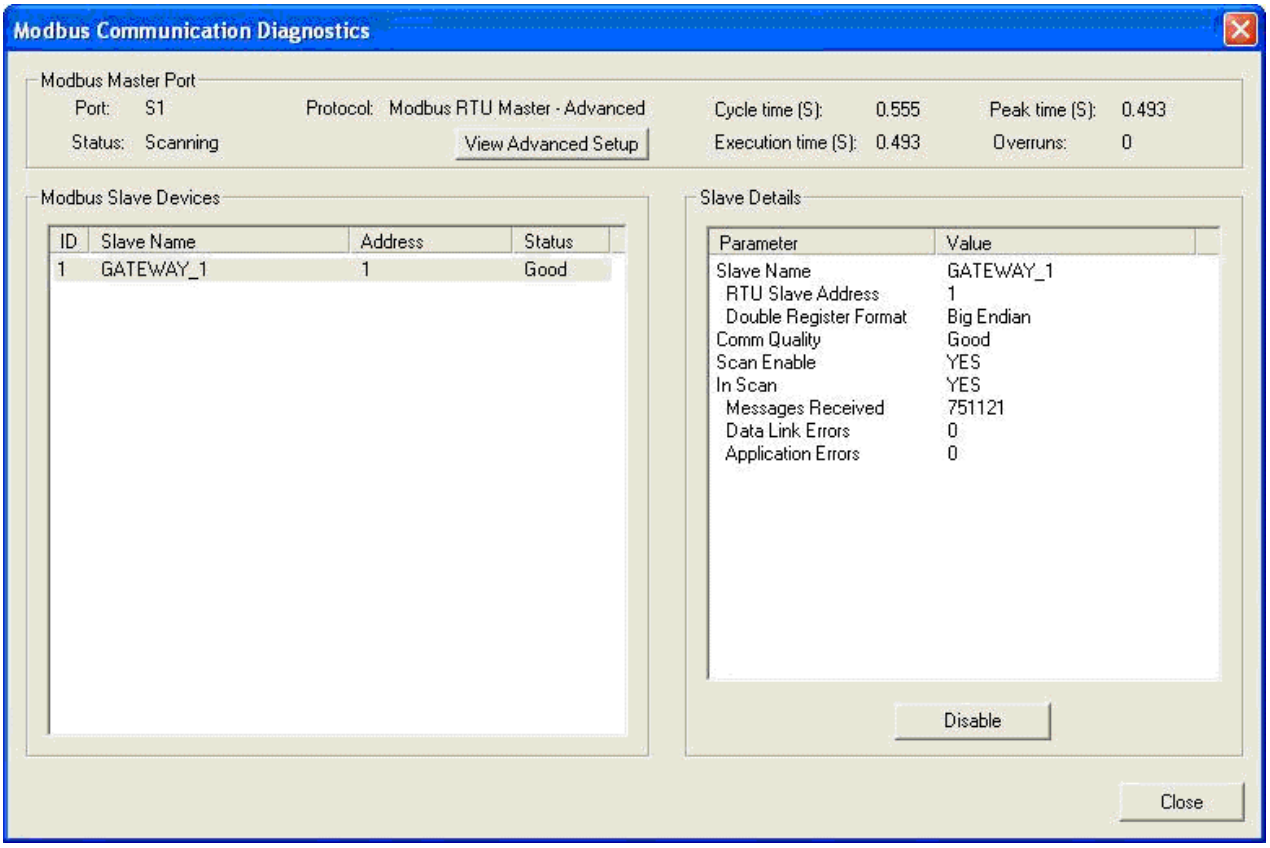
The “Peer-to-Peer connections” dialog box will provide status of the parameters shown in the list.

Value	Possible Cause	Controller Action	User Action
Good	N/A	N/A	N/A
Application Error	The peer connection could not be established due to an internal program problem.	N/A	1. Reset the controller to restart the UDP/IP protocol stack and reset buffer allocations. 2. Contact Honeywell Technical Assistance if the problem exists.
Setup Error	The peer device indicated that one or more data item is not valid.	The error will occur when an incompatibility exists between peer devices with regard to variable or signal assignments. This error should not occur when exchanging data between ControlEdge HC900 controllers.	Contact Honeywell Technical Assistance if the status occurs.
Peer Fail	The assigned peer could not be located on the network.	N/A	1. Check the controller name and network name of the peer device to assure that they match that specific PDE block. 2. Check that the IP addresses of the peer devices are all within the range of the IP mask. 3. Check that the peer devices have the same IP subnet mask. See Network parameters for IP mask setting.
Port Fail	The peer data exchange IO subsystem could not be started due to internal resource problem.	N/A	1. Reset the controller to restart the Ethernet IO hardware and reassign processor IO mapping. 2. Contact Honeywell Technical Assistance if the problem exists.
Not Started	The assigned peer IO connection has not yet been attempted. Normal state during startup and during configuration mode. This status should automatically change to GOOD after both peer controllers are in the RUN mode.	N/A	1. If this status persists during run time, check that the peer device is properly connected and that the control name and network name is correct. 2. Check that the IP masks of all peer devices to assure that all IP addresses are within the same subnet. 3. Check that all external network components such as switches and routers allow passing of UDP packets on port 502. 4. Check that the peer device is powered on and is in RUN mode.

Parameter	Value	Possible Cause	Controller Action	User Action
Peer-to-Peer Connections Diagnostics	Good	N/A	N/A	N/A
	Network Setup Error	Controller/network names determined on network are illegal	Rack 1 monitor block's COMPORT DIAG is set to FAILED. Rack 1 monitor block's RACK OK pin is turned off. SYSTEM MONITOR block's HW OK pin is turned off.	Correct the setup problem.
	No IP Address	IP address is not configured	See Network Setup Error	Enter an IP address.
	Hardware Failure	Ethernet port tests failed during power-up.		Replace CPU module

Modbus Host (Serial) Port Diagnostics

Displays the status of the Modbus Host port, if so configured.



Access

Enter Monitor mode and select Modbus host port diagnostics from the Monitor menu or through the Utilities tab/Controller Diagnostics icon.

Port

S1	The controller's S1 port is the Modbus Host port.
S2	The controller's S2 port is the Modbus Host port.
No Master Port	The ControlEdge HC900 configuration contains Modbus device blocks, but neither the S1 or the S2 port is configured as a Modbus Host. Use Set Controller Serial Ports on the Utilities tab to set up a Modbus Host port.

Master port status

The master port S1 or S2 is shown along with its status.

Modbus Host Port Status	Meaning
No Device Blocks	There is no MBS (Modbus Device) Block in the configuration
Program Mode	Controller is in Program Unlocked Mode; Modbus Device Communications is disabled; return to Run to communicate to Modbus Devices
ELN Device	Controller is in Program Locked Mode; Port switches to Serial ELN Protocol while in this mode.
Scanning	Port is configured as a Modbus Host. Controller is in RUN or OFFLINE mode and is scanning the modbus devices.

Protocol

Shows the protocol for the port. If Modbus RTU Advanced, you can click on View Advanced Setup.

Cycle time (S)

This is the computed cycle time of the Modbus Host link. This time is computed by the ControlEdge HC900 controller.

Execution time (S)

This is the actual execution time of the Modbus Host link as measured by the ControlEdge HC900 Controller.

Peak time (S)

This is peak execution time of the Modbus Host link, as measured by the ControlEdge HC900 controller.

Overruns

This parameter counts the number of times that the actual execution time of the Modbus Host link exceeded the computed Cycle Time. Overruns can occur in the following situations:

- The baud rate configured for this serial port is incorrect.
- There is a physical problem on the serial communications link (e.g., a bad connection, a faulty or disconnected communications cable).
- The Device Reply Timeout value is too small (this applies to Modbus RTU Host Advanced protocol only). If overruns continue to accumulate you may need to increase this value.
- Changing the serial port setup parameters. There may be a momentary overrun when the new parameters are saved to the controller.

Any persistent overrun condition should be investigated and corrected. Note that occasional overruns may occur during normal operation of the system if the scanning of the Modbus Host link is delayed by a higher priority activity.

The Overruns counter can be reset to zero by selecting Clear Statistics on the Serial Port S1 or S2 Diagnostics display.

Device status

Under Modbus Devices click on any modbus device name (left) to view its details (right). Some details show the configuration of the Modbus Device function block.

The Modbus Device Status (left) is the same as under Details, Comm quality (right).

Modbus Device status/Comm Quality	Meaning
NONE	Modbus Device communications are disabled.
BAD	Errors are occurring in the communications. Possible causes to check for: Physical link might be bad Modbus Device might be off No modbus device found at the selected Modbus Address modbus device set to the wrong baud rate.
GOOD	Modbus device communications are normal

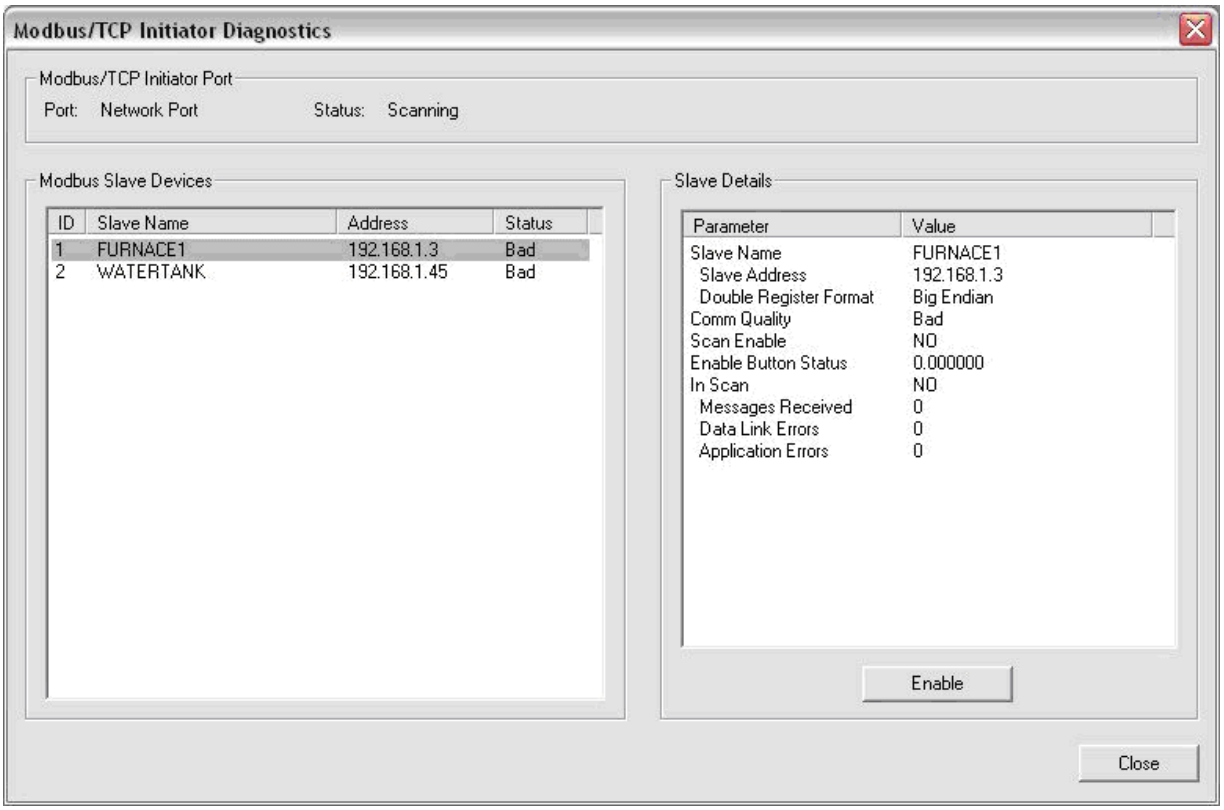
Port scanning

To enable/disable port scanning for a modbus device:

1. Click a Modbus device in the modbus device window. Modbus Device details will appear at left.
2. Click on the Enable/Disable button at the bottom right to enable/disable the port scanning of that modbus device.

Modbus Initiator (TCP) Port Diagnostics

Displays the status of the Modbus/TCP Initiator port, if so configured.



Access

Enter Monitor mode and select Modbus/TCP Initiator Port Diagnostics from the Monitor menu or through the Utilities tab/Controller Diagnostics icon.

Modbus/TCP Initiator port status

Status	Meaning
No Modbus Device Blocks	There are no TCPS (Modbus/TCP Modbus Device) Blocks in the configuration
Scanning	Controller is in RUN or OFFLINE mode and is scanning the Modbus/TCP modbus device.

Modbus device status

Under Modbus Device click on any modbus device name (left) to view its details (right). Some details show the configuration of the Modbus/TCP Modbus Device function block.

The Modbus Device Status (left) is the same as under Details, Comm quality (right).

Modbus Device status/Comm Quality	Meaning
NONE	Modbus Device communications are disabled.
BAD	Errors are occurring in the communications. Possible causes to check for: • Physical link might be bad • Modbus device might be off • No modbus device found at the selected Modbus IP Address • Modbus device set to the wrong baud rate.
GOOD	Modbus device communications are normal

Port scanning

To enable/disable port scanning for a modbus device:

1. Click a Modbus modbus device in the modbus device window. Modbus Device details will appear at left.
2. Click on the Enable/Disable button at the bottom right to enable/disable the port scanning of that modbus device.

29. Reports

Print Report

To Print the report:

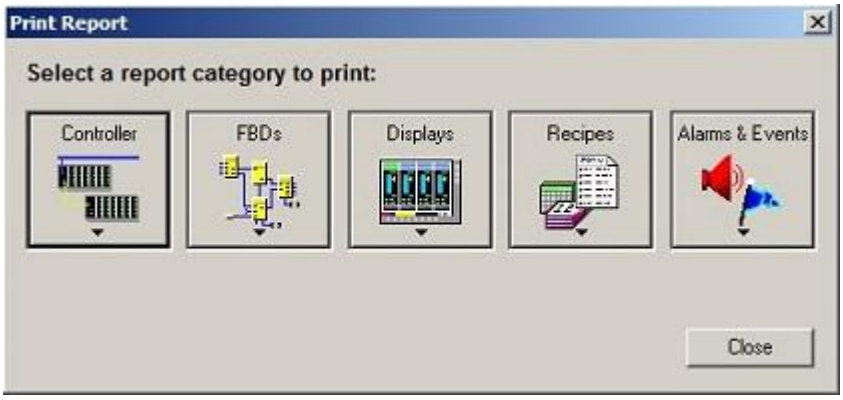
1 Select "Print Report" from the **File** menu.

If you select from the Custom Modbus Map toolbar, it will print the currently displayed partition.
Print Report lets you print a report for various functions.

2 Click on the Icon on the toolbar and select a report from the drop-down menu that appears.
The "Print" dialog box will open to let you print a specific report.
You can also print a report from "Print Report Preview" from the **File** menu.

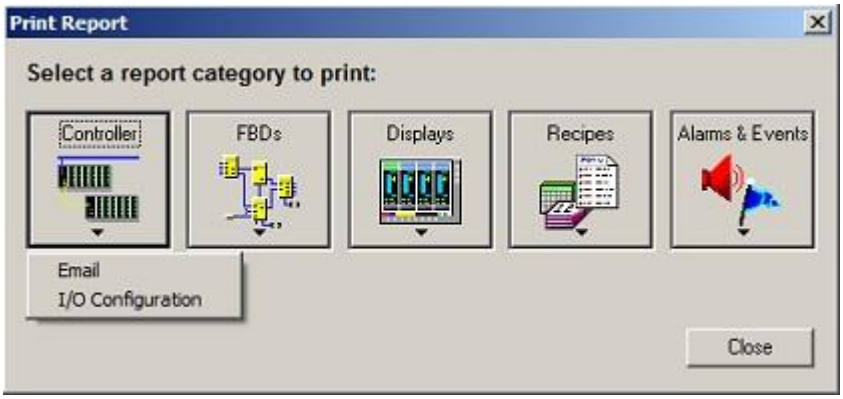
Report Categories

The Print Report function provides access to the greatest number of reports. For software revisions prior to 6.0, all 5 main report categories are available. For revision 6.0 and later the Display worksheet is no longer supported, so the Displays report category option is not available. For SIL compliant controller types, additional sub-menus allow for filtering of some reports based on Process or Safety worksheets. For more information see Reports Overview.



Controller Reports

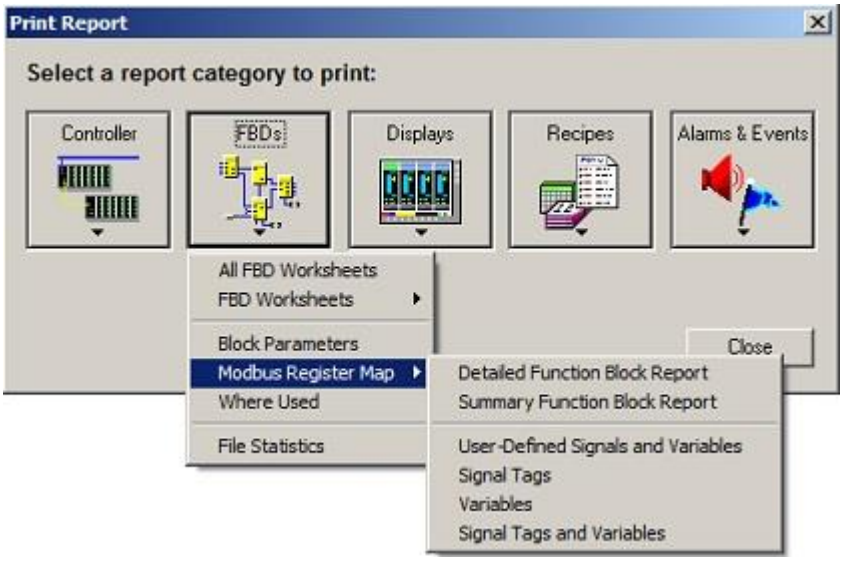
Clicking on the **Controller** button provides a drop-down menu which allows the selection of 2 different reports, as shown below. Note that for SIL compliant controller types only; there is an additional sub-menu for the I/O Configuration report.

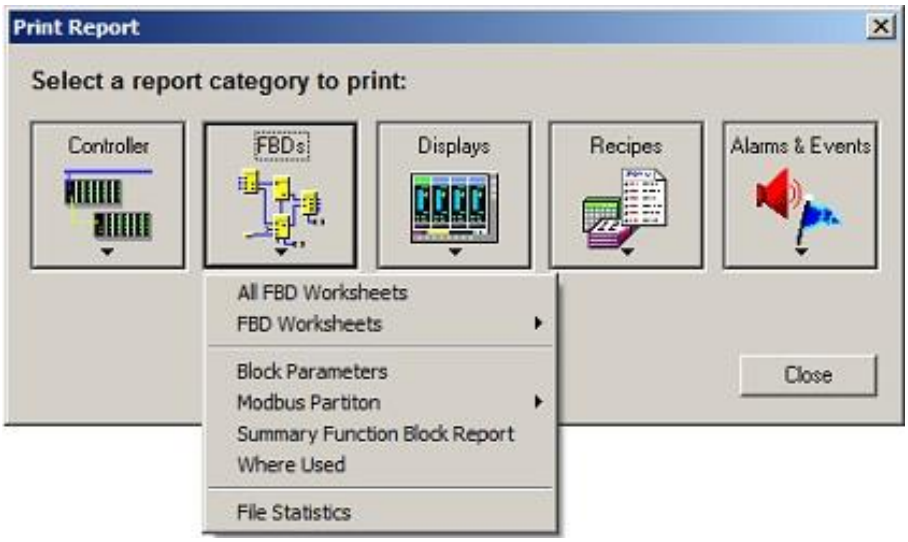


Report	Description	SIL Filtering
Email	Shows how E-mail notification is configured.	No
I/O Configuration	Shows configuration of all I/O on all racks. This report is similar to the data shown on the Controller worksheet. It may also be printed by clicking on the Print button in the Controller Configuration Toolbar.	Yes

Function Block Diagram Reports

Clicking on the **FBDs** button provides a drop-down menu which allows the selection of reports or report sub-categories related to the items contained on the function block diagrams of the configuration. The available report options for configurations with a Fixed Modbus Address Map are shown in the first figure below. The available report options for configurations with a Custom Modbus Address Map are shown in the second figure below.



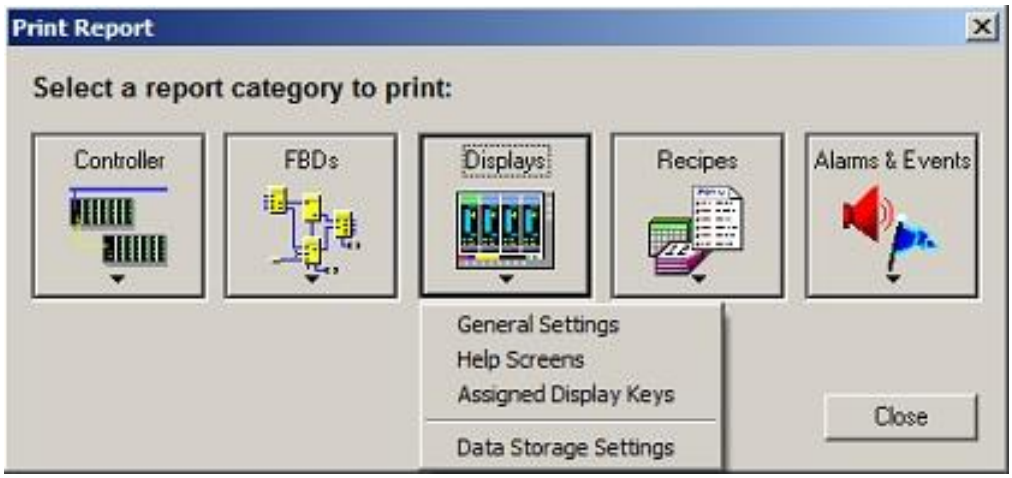


Report	Description	SIL Filtering
All FBD Worksheets	Not a traditional report. Prints out the graphical representation of all Function Block Diagrams in the configuration.	Yes
FBD Worksheets	Not a traditional report. Prints out the graphical representation of a single Function Block Diagrams from the configuration. Hovering over this menu option will display a sub-menu(s) which allows selection of the desired function block diagram worksheet.	Yes

Block Parameters	Shows a detailed report of each function block's parameters.	Yes
	[Modbus Register Map] *(appears if using fixed map)*	
Detailed Function Block Report	Shows the starting Modbus address of each function block, as well as the Modbus addresses of all its parameters. Click here for details.	Yes
Summary Function Block Report	Shows the starting Modbus address of each function block. Click here for details. (also available if using *custom map*)	Yes
User-Defined Signals and Variables	Shows the user-defined Modbus addresses of signals and variables.	Yes
Signal Tags	Shows the system-defined Modbus addresses of all signal tags.	Yes
Variables	Shows the system-defined Modbus addresses of all variables.	Yes
Signal Tags and Variables	Shows the system-defined Modbus addresses of all signal tags and variables.	Yes
	[Modbus Partition] *(appears if using custom map)*	
Modbus Partition	Shows the Modbus addresses and contents of the selected partition. Hovering over this menu option will display a sub-menu(s) which allows selection of the desired partition. The report generated by this method is equivalent to the report printed when the same Modbus address partition is selected in the Custom Modbus Map worksheet and the Print button on the worksheet's toolbar is clicked.	No
Where Used	Shows location (worksheet and page) of every item in the function block diagram.	Yes
File Statistics	Shows useful file statistics. Schema # is a database revision code used by the controller, OI and the software to ensure compatibility	No

Display Reports

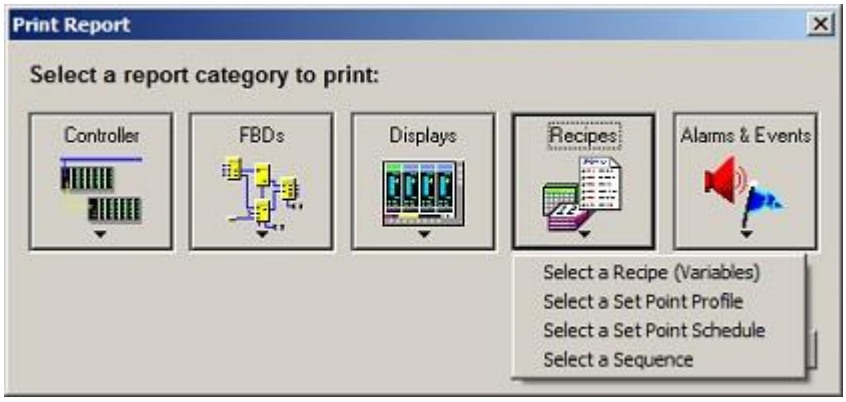
Clicking on the **Displays** button provides a drop-down menu which allows the selection of 4 reports related to displays, as shown below. As noted above, this category is not available starting with revision 6.0.



Report	Description	SIL Filtering
General Settings	Shows Operator Interface settings (security, startup display, filenames).	No
Help Screens	Shows Operator Interface help screens.	No
Assigned Display Keys	Shows Operator Interface displays and contents for each display button.	No
Data Storage Settings	Shows data storage settings (trend group data points, batch enable, etc.)	No

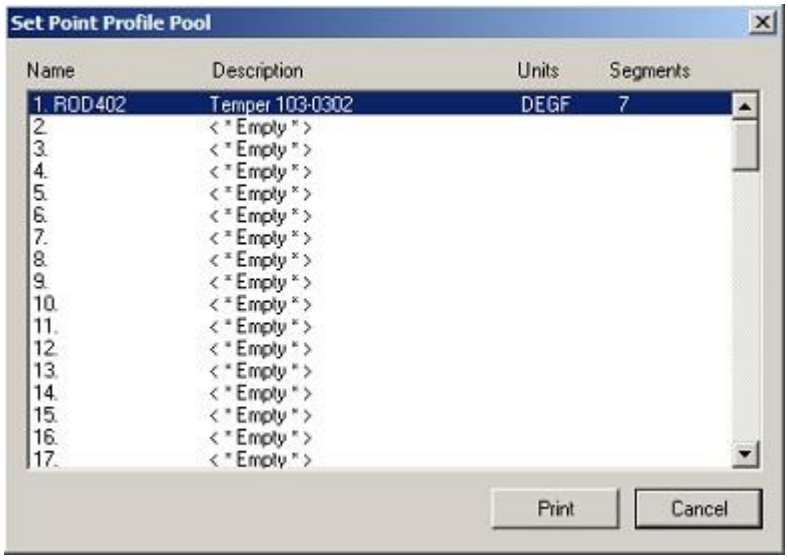
Recipe Reports

Clicking on the **Recipes** button provides a drop-down menu which allows the selection of 4 reports related to recipes, as shown below.



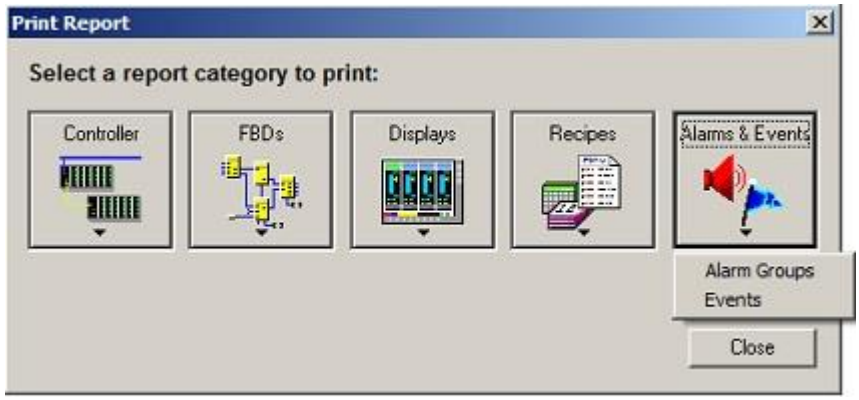
Report	Description	SIL Filtering
Select a Recipe (Variables)	Shows contents of the selected recipe (variables, descriptions).	No
Select a Set Point Profile	Shows contents of the selected Setpoint Profile.	No
Select a Set Point Schedule	Shows contents of the selected Setpoint Schedule.	No
Select a Sequence	Shows contents of the selected Sequence.	No

Selecting any of the 4 report options noted above brings up a selection dialog similar to the one below that allows one of the available Variables, Set Point Profile, Set Point Schedule or Set Point Sequences to be selected from a pool for printing. Clicking on the **Print** button completes the report printing.



Alarms & Events Reports

Clicking on the **Alarms & Events** button provides a drop-down menu which allows the selection of 2 reports related to displays, as shown below.



Report	Description	SIL Filtering
Alarm Groups	Shows contents of each Operator Interface alarm group display.	Yes
Events	Shows all configured events and their triggers.	Yes

See Also

Reports Overview

Print Report Preview

Export Report

Print Report Preview

Report Categories

The Print Report Preview function provides a means of previewing reports before they are printed. As such, the reports available for previewing is essentially the same as those available in the Print Report function. The one notable exception is that the option to preview the printing of all Function Block Diagrams at once is not supported.

Navigation

A toolbar at the top of the Print Report Preview window lets you navigate through the pages of the report:

The functions from left to right are:

Print	**P**rints the active report without going to "Print Report" in the file menu
Previous Page	Selects the previous page on the report for display
Next Page	Selects the next page on the report for display
Two Pages	Shows two report pages at once
Zoom Out	Makes the report larger on the screen
Zoom In	Makes the report smaller on the screen
Close	**C**loses the Print Report Preview

See Also

Reports Overview

Print Report

Export Report

Export Report

Select "Export Report" from the File menu or select from the Custom Modbus Map toolbar.

Export Report lets you export some reports as files in comma delimited (.csv) or tab delimited (.txt) format. The files contain the same data as shown in the printed report, just formatted differently. Exported reports can then be imported by other applications such as third party operator interface configurations.

Not all printable reports can be exported; choices are limited.

Click on the Icon on the toolbar and select a report from the drop-down menu that appears. Name the report and save it as .csv or .txt.

To change the default export file type, see Export Delimiter.

Exported Files have the following format for their Header sections.

Header	Example	Description
RevisionID:	0115.0030.0002.0002.0003	AAAA.BBBB.CCCC.DDDD.EEEE Where AAAA = Export ID: 0103 = IO Configuration Information Report 0106 = Variable and Signal Tag Information Report 0115 = Modbus Address Detailed Report 0116 = User Defined Modbus Registers Report 0117 = Signal Tag Report 0118 = Variable Report 0119 = Modbus Address Summary Report 0120 = All Function Block Modbus Addresses 5000 = Modbus Partition Registers Report 5500 = All Modbus Registers Report BBBB = Database Schema Number CCCC = Product type: 2 = HC950 3 = HC930 4 = HC970R 5 = HC970 DDDD = Platform type: 2 = ControlEdge HC900 series controllers EEEE = Feature Set: Schema database minor revisions
File Name:	ControlEdge HC900-C50 Rev 2.1x : jjpconfig1 C50_R2.1.cde	Device Type Device Revision: Configuration Filename
Controller Name:	JOE	Controller name assigned within the configuration
Title:	Joe's Furnace Control	Optional title or description for the configuration
Author:	Joe	Optional author or creator of the configuration
Created Date:	5/20/2005 13:09	Date when configuration file was first created
Modified Date:	5/30/2005 14:05	Date when configuration file was last modified and saved.

Report Title:	Modbus Address Detailed Report	Report title: IO Configuration Information Report Variable and Signal Tag Information Report Modbus Address Detailed Report User Defined Modbus Registers Report Signal Tag Report Variable Report Modbus Address Summary Report All Function Block Modbus Addresses Modbus Partition Registers Report – Partition Name All Modbus Registers Report

30. Modbus Register Addresses

Modbus Map Overview

Overview

Modbus addressing is available in revision 2.0 and later.

In your controller's configuration certain parameters are each automatically assigned a Modbus address. These include certain types of function blocks (such as loops and set point programmers), signals and variables, among other items. Through their addresses these parameters can be accessed or displayed remotely, such as by a third-party operator interface. Collectively, these Modbus addresses and parameters are known as the Modbus map. You can use a predefined fixed map where common parameters are mapped out automatically at fixed addresses, or you can create a custom map for configurations rev. 4.0 or higher.

Click here for details on fixed vs. custom map.

Configure Modbus Map Method

Overview

Let's you select your preferred Modbus mapping method: fixed or custom.

Access

1. Edit menu.
2. Configure Modbus Map Method

Caution: If you change from custom map to fixed map you will lose all custom addresses, partitions, and quantities not found in the fixed map (>32 loops, >8 SP Programmers, etc.). If you accidentally switch from custom to fixed you can use the Undo feature on the main toolbar.

Fixed or custom map

There are two kinds of Modbus maps available: fixed or custom. Basically, the fixed and custom maps both can contain the same types of items but the custom map has more flexibility with those items' quantities, addresses and data types. The maps have these characteristics.

Fixed map	Custom map
The items that can be in the fixed map are limited to certain types of function blocks and other configuration data.	The items that can be in the custom map are limited to certain types of function blocks and other configuration data, same as fixed map.
Items are automatically assigned to the fixed map.	At the moment you switch from fixed to custom map mode, any items in your configuration maintain their addresses from the fixed map. However, once you are in custom map mode, if you add more items to your configuration they are not automatically added to the custom map, you must add them manually.
Each item type is grouped in a fixed address range of the map. For example, the address range designated for Loops is restricted to Loops only, it cannot contain Setpoint Programmers.	You can create partitions with custom names and address ranges. Partitions can contain any item types, you can mix and match items if needed.

Fixed map	Custom map
Quantities of each item type are at a fixed maximum (such as 32 loops, 8 programmers). Good for smaller configurations or pre-4.0 configurations. If your configuration exceeds these maximums a message reminds you to consider switching to the custom map.	Quantities are limited only by the amount of free space in the map or partition. Use custom map when you need to access data from more than 32 loops, for example.
Every parameter of a function block is automatically added to the map. You don't need to specify which of the block's parameters are mapped, they're all there. For example, all of a PID block's 40-plus parameters are added to the map.	Let's you pick and choose which block parameters to add. For example, a PID block contains over 40 parameters. The fixed map adds them all; the custom map lets you add only the ones you need to access, thus freeing up more addresses for other parameters. You can create templates to apply to any or all function blocks of a type. For example, you can select 5 of a PID block's parameters then save them to a PID template. You can load that template into other PID blocks so they each address the same 5 parameters.
You can reorder items within a group, such as switching Loop 1 with Loop 10. You can assign signals and variables to a user-defined area of the map.	You can reorder items. More generally you can put any parameter at any address or at multiple addresses or partitions.
The fixed map has a fixed range (45057-46056) for assigning configured signal tags and variables to another data type, such as integer 16.	The custom map lets you assign any data type to any address (float 32, integer 16, etc.). A default data type is applied but can be changed.
The fixed map contains several gaps of unused (and unusable) addresses.	Since you can put any parameter at any address you can eliminate gaps of unused addresses, thus increasing the map's capacity.
The fixed map is the default map for all configurations. Unless and until you switch to the custom map, the fixed map is in use. Items are automatically added to the map when you access the map, up to the quantity limits (such as 32 loops, 8 programmers). The only items that are not automatically added are user-defined signals and variables.	Uses the fixed map as a starting point*. Any edits to the fixed map (such as reordered items within a group or user-defined signals and variables) are carried over when you switch to the custom map. The custom map's default partitions are based on the fixed map's groups. Conversely, if you switch from custom map to fixed map, any customized partitions or addresses are lost. *You can revert to this starting point at any time by using the Replace feature in the custom map.

Modbus addressability of principal function blocks

Function Block	Category/Filter	Available in fixed map?	Available in custom map?
AGA8-Detail	AGAs	No	Yes
AGA8-Gross	AGAs	No	Yes
Alternator	Alternators	Yes	Yes
XYR5000 Base Station	Communications	No	Yes
XYR5000 Transmitter	Communications	No	Yes
XYR6000 Transmitter	Communications	No	Yes
Calendar Event	Counters/Timers	No	Yes
Device Control	Device Controls	Yes	Yes
Hand Off Auto	Hand Off Autos	Yes	Yes
Four Selector Switch	Logic	No	Yes
Push Button	Logic	No	Yes
Auto Manual Bias	Loops	Yes	Yes
Carbon Loop	Loops	Yes	Yes
On Off Loop	Loops	Yes	Yes
PID Loop	Loops	Yes	Yes
Three Pos. Step Cont.	Loops	Yes	Yes
Set Point Programmer	Programmers	Yes	Yes
Ramp	Ramps	Yes	Yes
Set Point Scheduler	Schedulers	Yes	Yes
Sequencer	Sequencers	Yes	Yes
Stage	Stages	Yes	Yes
Position Proportional Output	NA	No	No
Peer-Peer	NA	No	No
Modbus Device	NA	No	No
Modbus/TCP Device	NA	No	No
XYR6000 Gateway	NA	No	No

Fixed Modbus Map

Overview

Certain items in your configuration are automatically assigned Modbus addresses in the fixed Modbus map. These items include signal tags, variables and principal function blocks like loops and setpoint programmers. (See page **267**.) As each item is added to your configuration it is assigned to the first (lowest) available Modbus address within the range reserved for that item type. If you delete an item from your configuration it is removed from that Modbus address and that address becomes available for another item.

Also available is a range of 1000 addresses (45057 for assigning user-defined signal tags and variables to any address or multiple addresses. Within these 1000 addresses the data type of each signal tag or variable can be changed, for example, from float 32 to integer 16.

Access

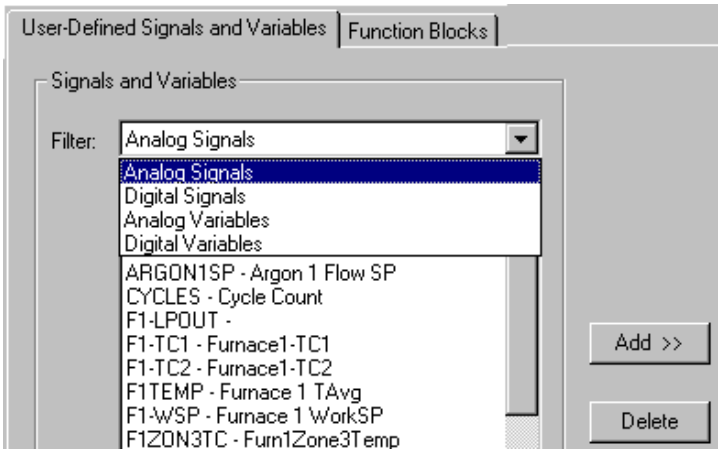
To access the fixed Modbus register map to add or edit an address, select the main menu Edit item, Edit Fixed Modbus Register Map, or right-click on a configured signal, variable, or function block.

The following tabs are presented.

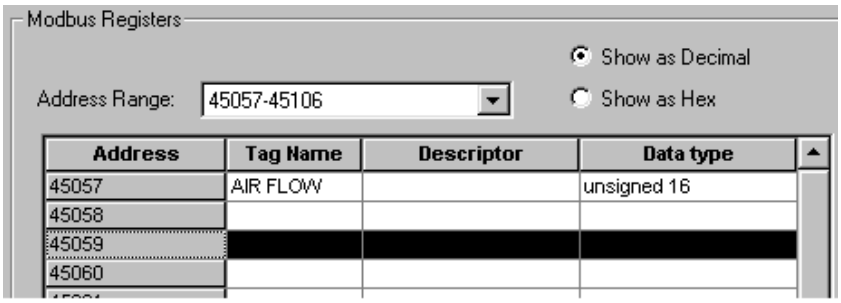
User Defined Signals and Variables Tab

Procedure for editing signal or variable addresses.

1. Select the type of signal or variable you want to choose from.

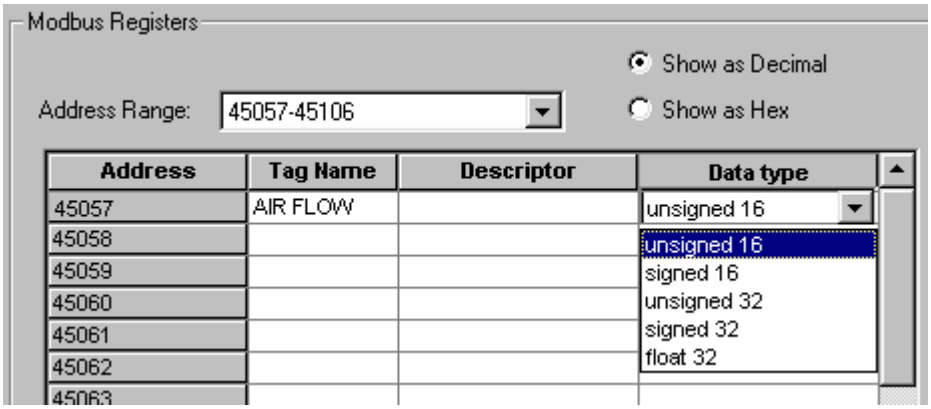


2. Highlight the desired signal/variable.
3. Select an address range you want to add to. There are 20 ranges of 50 addresses each for a total of 1000 addresses. Then click on the address you will assign the signal/variable to.



4. Click Add to insert the signal/variable.

5. Click on the Data Type area of the signal/variable and select a data type. 32-bit data types require 2 adjacent addresses.

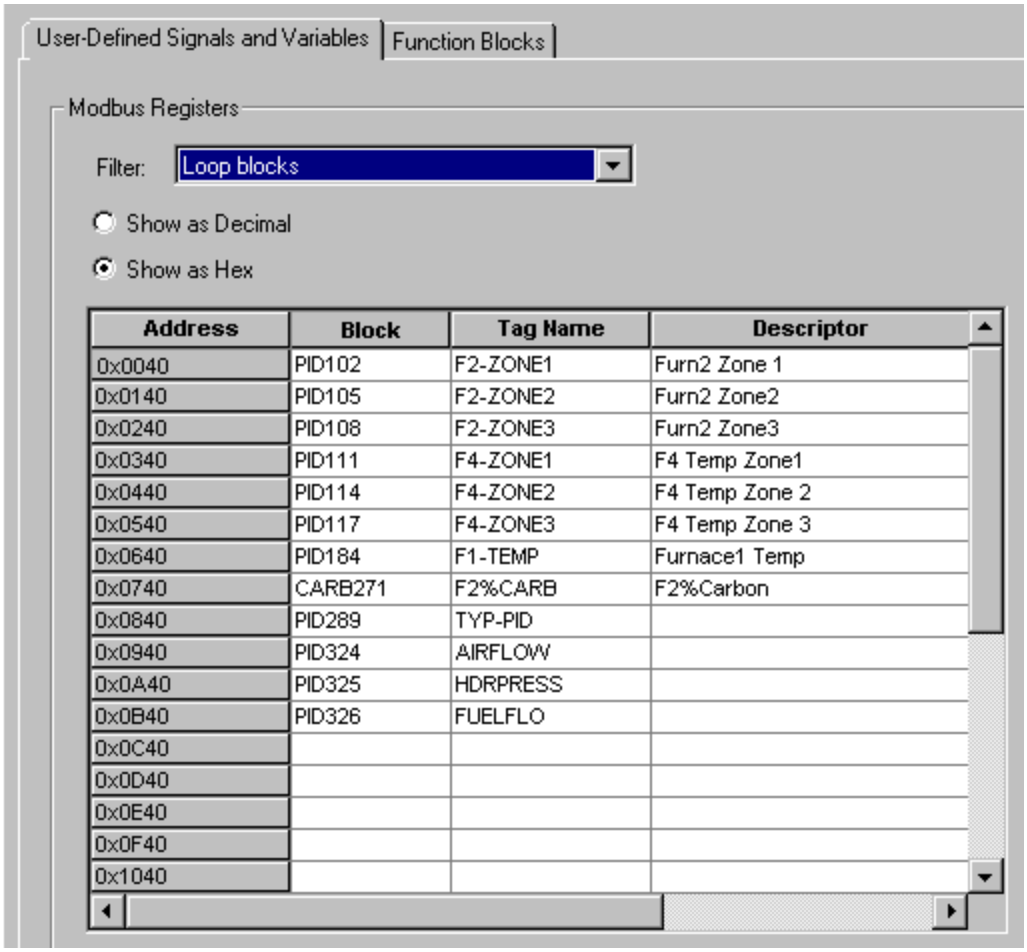


6. You can assign a signal/variable to multiple addresses. Just repeat the preceding steps.
7. To clear a single address, select it and click Delete. To clear all signal/variable addresses, select Clear All Registers. This does not clear the item's default address, it only clears the addresses assigned here.
8. To view all addresses of an item, display its Properties.
   Signal Tag Properties
   Variable Properties

Function Blocks Tab

Procedure for editing function block addresses.

1. Use Filter to list all configured function blocks of a certain type. Types whose Modbus address can be changed are:
   - Loops (PID, On-Off, Carbon Potential, 3 Position Step, Auto-Manual Bias)
   - Alternator
   - Hand/Off/Auto Switch
   - Sequencer
   - Setpoint Programmer
   - Setpoint Scheduler
   - Stage
   - Device Control
   - Ramp



Address	Block	Tag Name	Descriptor
0x0040	PID102	F2-ZONE1	Furn2 Zone 1
0x0140	PID105	F2-ZONE2	Furn2 Zone2
0x0240	PID108	F2-ZONE3	Furn2 Zone3
0x0340	PID111	F4-ZONE1	F4 Temp Zone1
0x0440	PID114	F4-ZONE2	F4 Temp Zone 2
0x0540	PID117	F4-ZONE3	F4 Temp Zone 3
0x0640	PID184	F1-TEMP	Furnace1 Temp
0x0740	CARB271	F2%CARB	F2%Carbon
0x0840	PID289	TYP-PID	
0x0940	PID324	AIRFLOW	
0x0A40	PID325	HDRPRESS	
0x0B40	PID326	FUELFLO	
0x0C40			
0x0D40			
0x0E40			
0x0F40			
0x1040			

2. Addresses containing that type of function block are shown in numerical order. For example, with the Loop blocks filter selected, Loop 1 starts at 0x0040/00065, Loop 2 starts at 0x0140/00321, etc. Whichever loop is in the first slot is known as Loop 1, as far as the Modbus map is concerned. That is, *loop order in the map is independent of execution order or block number. More generally, any function block's order in the Modbus map is independent of its execution order or block number*.
3. To move a function block to another address, click on its address to select it, release, then click and drag it to the top of the new address, then drop it. A colored line appears while you're dragging the function block.
4. If you drop it in an address that's occupied by another function block, the two function blocks will swap addresses.
5. Unlike signals and variables, only one range of addresses is allowed per function block.
6. To view the starting address of any function block, display its Properties by right-clicking on the function block in the configuration diagram under the Controller tab.

If your configuration contains more items than are allowed in the fixed map (such as >32 loops) a message informs you of this. Consider switching to the custom map, which allows for greater quantities and access to more parameters.

Further Information

For details on Modbus parameters, see the ControlEdge HC900 Communications User Guide, document number 51-52-25-111.

Custom Modbus Map

Access

To access the custom Modbus register map to add or edit an address, click on the Modbus Map tab

at the bottom of the display. This tab is visible only after you configure your map type as custom.

Overview

The custom Modbus map is applicable to the array of Modbus registers classified as "holding registers" or "4xxxxx" registers using decimal addressing where "xxxxx" equals the Modbus address ranging from 1-65535 decimal (0-FFFE hex).

Use the custom map to assign any addressable parameter (see page 267) to any address, along with its data type (float 32, integer 16, etc.). You can edit or create partitions of any size to help organize addresses.

Default partitions and addresses are based on the fixed map. This is only a default starting point; you can edit the custom map extensively or even erase it entirely and start from scratch.

To add an item to a map:

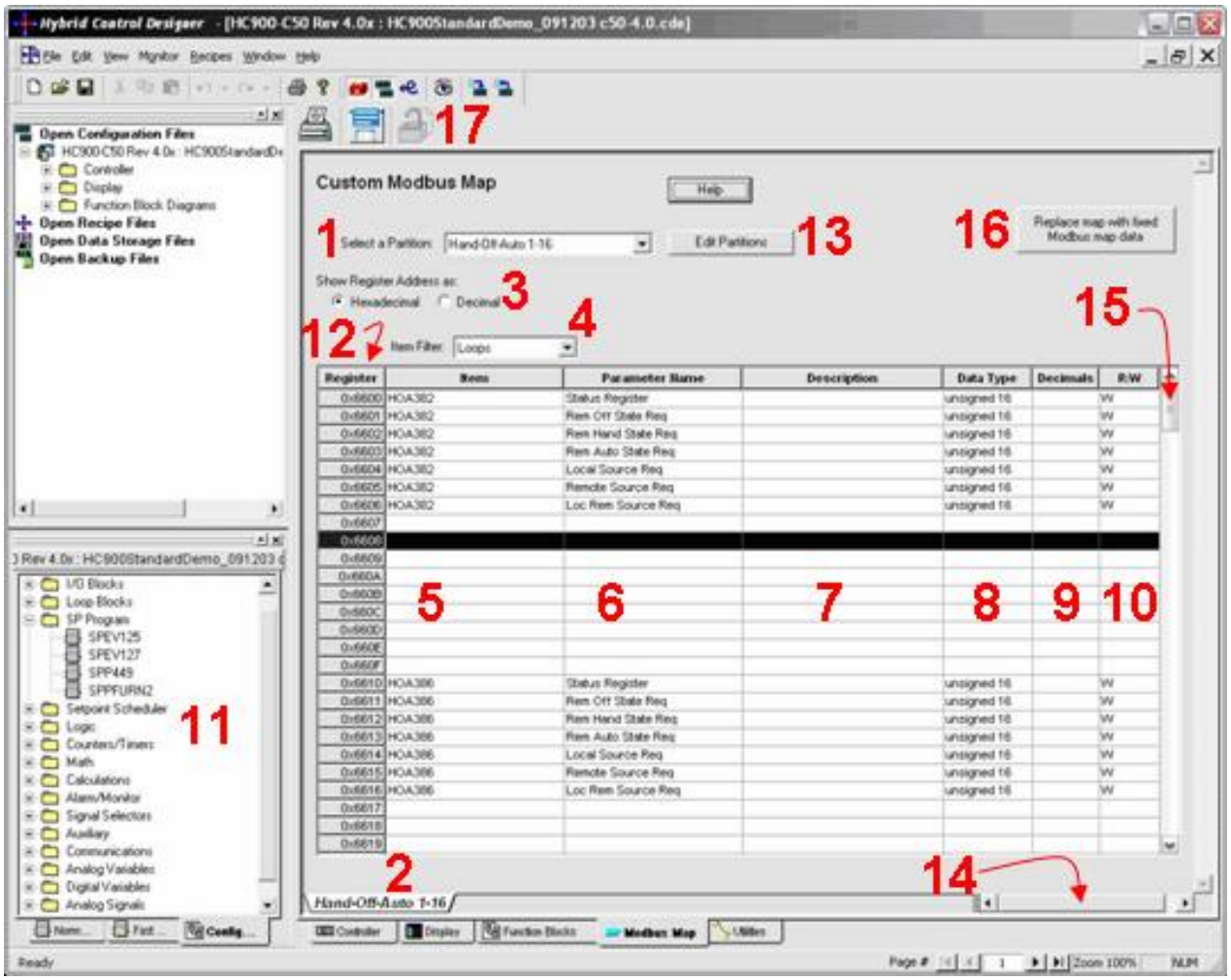
1. Select a partition whose addresses you want to display or edit.
2. Assign items to the map in two ways: drag an item from the Configuration tab into an address, or click on an address under the Item heading and choose an item to add.
3. Select/edit item's parameters.

Working with partitions

You can view or edit addresses in defined partitions only. Addresses in undefined partitions are not available until you create a new partition with those addresses. Partitions need not be empty to be edited. If you need more addresses in a partition you can combine it with adjacent partitions, or resize it using space from an adjacent undefined partition. See Edit Partitions.

Functions

Refer to the following table for descriptions of the numbered items in the custom map. Functions are numbered in the order you will probably use them.



	Function	Description
1	Select a partition	You must select a partition whose contents you want to display or edit. The map takes a few seconds to build the contents. Default partitions are based on the fixed map and can be edited or resized. See Edit Partitions.
2	Currently displayed partition	Name of the current partition. See Select a partition.
3	Show Register Address as	Select whether to display addresses in hexadecimal or decimal.
4	Item Filter	Select the type of item (block, signal tag, etc.) whose parameters you want to assign to the map. Items of this type will then be listed as choices under the Item column. For example, if you select Loops then all your configuration's loop blocks will be listed under the Item column when you click there.
5	Item	Click on any address under the Item column. All items of

	Function	Description
		the Item Filter type will be listed. (If no items of the filter type are in your configuration the list will be empty.) Click the item you want to add to the address. If you are adding a function block it will display a checklist of parameters from which to choose. Click here for details. If you are adding system parameters you must add them by clicking an address; they can't be dragged from the Configuration tab.
6	Parameter Name	If the item is a function block this is the parameter name. Click on this field to see a list of that item's other parameters from which to choose, if reassignment is desired. If the item is a signal tag or variable this is the tag name. Click to see a list of other signal tags or variables from which to choose. ATTENTION: when you assign a different parameter here, the Data Type does not automatically change, you must manually change to the correct Data Type for the parameter.
7	Description	Read only. Description of signal tag or variable.
8	Data Type	Choices: Unsigned 16 Signed 16 Unsigned 32 (requires 2 registers) Signed 32 (requires 2 registers) Float 32 (requires 2 registers) If 2 registers are required, the higher register is grayed out and not assignable. Note: For signals and variables, when changing data type from float 32 to integer 16, keep in mind the decimal point location. For example, 1000.1 translates to 10001. Note: For function blocks, when changing data type from float 32 to integer 16, the value is rounded. For example, 1000.1 translates to 1000 and 1000.5 translates to 1001.
9	Decimals	Read only. Decimal places of signal tag or variable.
10	R/W	Type of access to the parameter. Read Write Read/Write
11	Configuration Tab	This tab shows all configured items. Click and drag an item from here to an address under the map's Item column. Not all items can be assigned to an address. Dragging a function block will display its checklist of parameters from which to choose. Click here for details.
12	Register	Click on a register(s) then right click for the menu.

	Function	Description
		Clear Contents – deletes the contents of the selected registers without affecting other registers. Insert Registers – Inserts blank registers before the selected registers and shifts registers down by the same amount. Will not work if partition's last registers are occupied. Delete Registers – deletes the contents of the selected registers and shifts subsequent registers up by the same amount. Cut – cuts contents of registers Copy – copies contents of registers Paste – pastes from the last cut or copy
13	Edit Partitions	A register must be in a defined partition in order to be populated with data, you can't assign data to an undefined partition. Default partitions are based on the fixed map. An undefined partition starts where the fixed Modbus map ends. Partitions can be edited in the following ways. To rename a partition, click on the Description and enter a new name. To edit one or more partitions, click on one or more partition # then right-click to access these functions: Clear - deletes the contents of the selected partitions but keeps the partition names and addresses. Delete - deletes the contents of the selected partitions as well as the partition names and addresses, leaving behind an undefined partition which does not appear in any exports or reports. Split - divides the selected partition into two contiguous partitions of any size and names you specify. Does not delete contents of the partition's registers. You can split undefined partitions. Combine - merges selected partitions into one partition of any name. Does not delete the contents of the partition's registers. You can combine undefined partitions. Resize - changes the starting and ending address of the selected partition. New - Creates a new partition within an undefined partition. To erase the entire map and start from scratch, select all partitions and select Delete, then select all undefined partitions and select Combine.
14	Horizontal Scroll	Use to scroll to offscreen areas of the map.
15	Vertical Scroll	Let's you scroll through the partition.
16	Replace map with fixed	Replaces the entire custom map with all your

	Function	Description
	Modbus map data	configuration's loops, programmers, etc. at their preassigned addresses and partitions, up to the fixed map's quantity limits (e.g., 32 Loops, 8 SP Programmers, etc.). Beyond these quantity limits items will not be added to the map unless you add them manually. Since you are still in custom map mode, you can edit the map after doing the replacement. ATTENTION: Do not select Replace unless you are willing to overwrite your entire custom map's registers and partitions. Consider backing up your custom map first, either by saving a backup of your configuration or by Exporting a Modbus report. Or you can click on the Undo button in the main toolbar.
17	Toolbar	Prints a Partition Report. Exports a Partition Report. Lock/unlock Worksheet

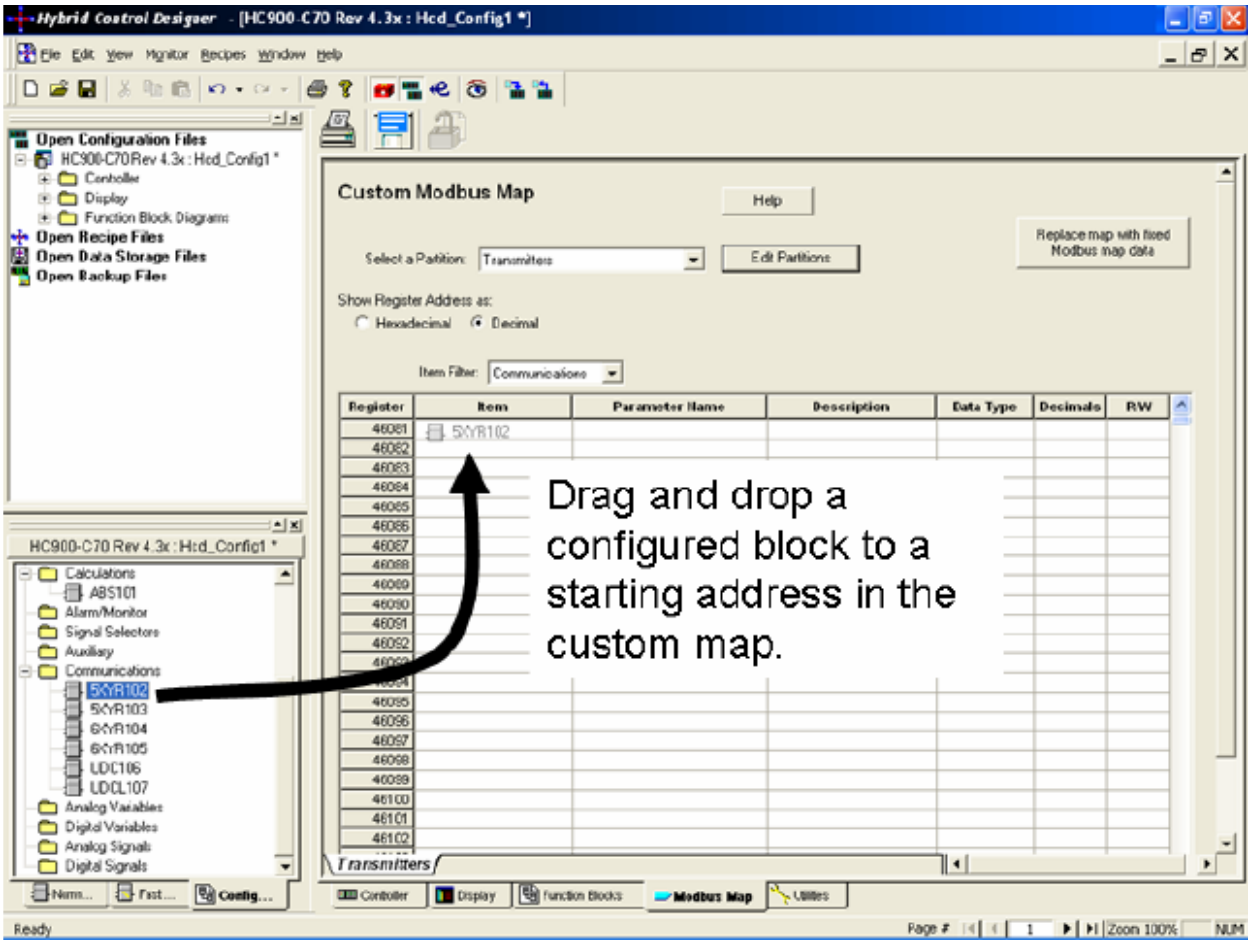
Further information

For details on Modbus parameters, see the ControlEdge HC900 Communications User Guide, document number 51-52-25-111.

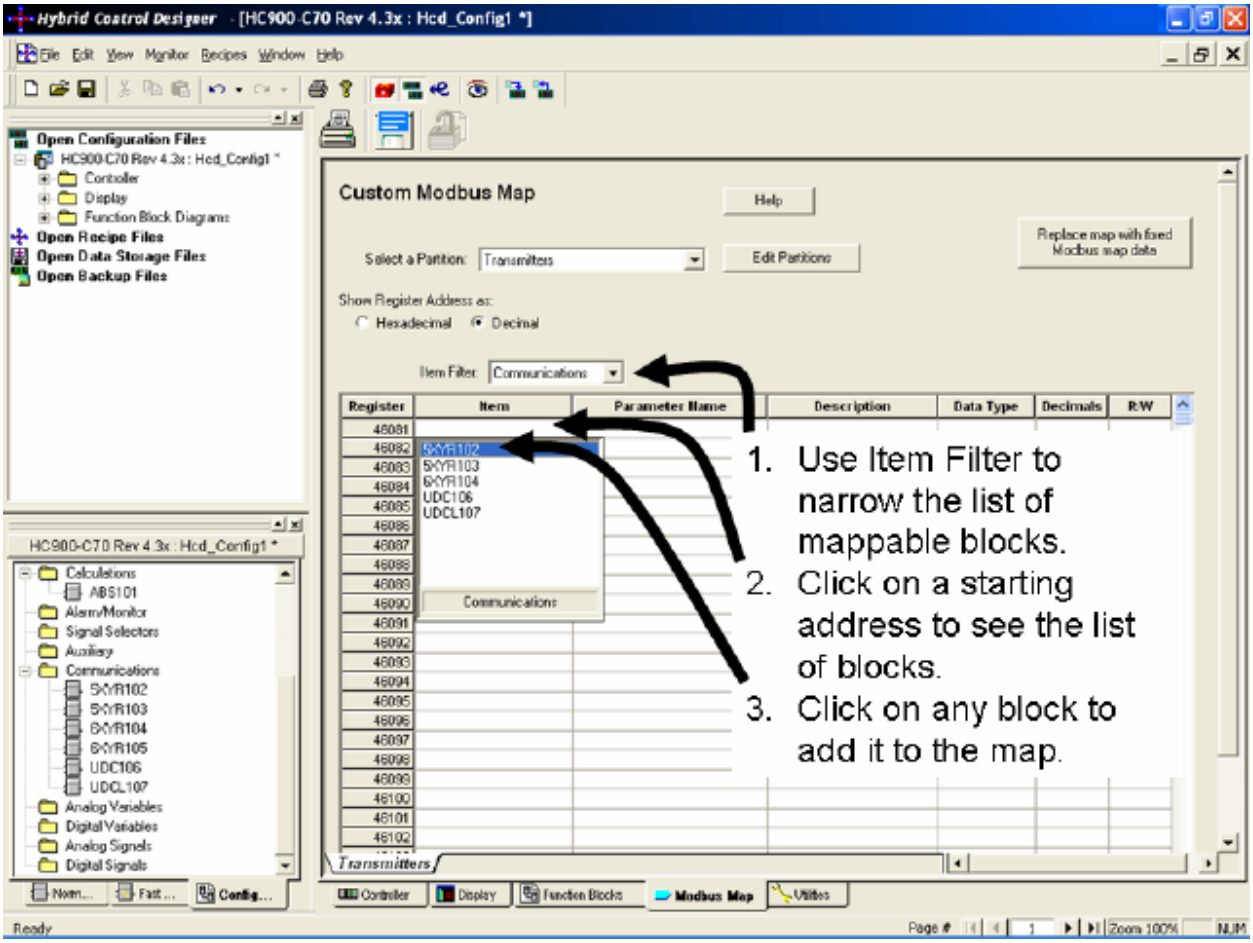
Adding function block parameters to custom map

Two methods to add parameters to the map

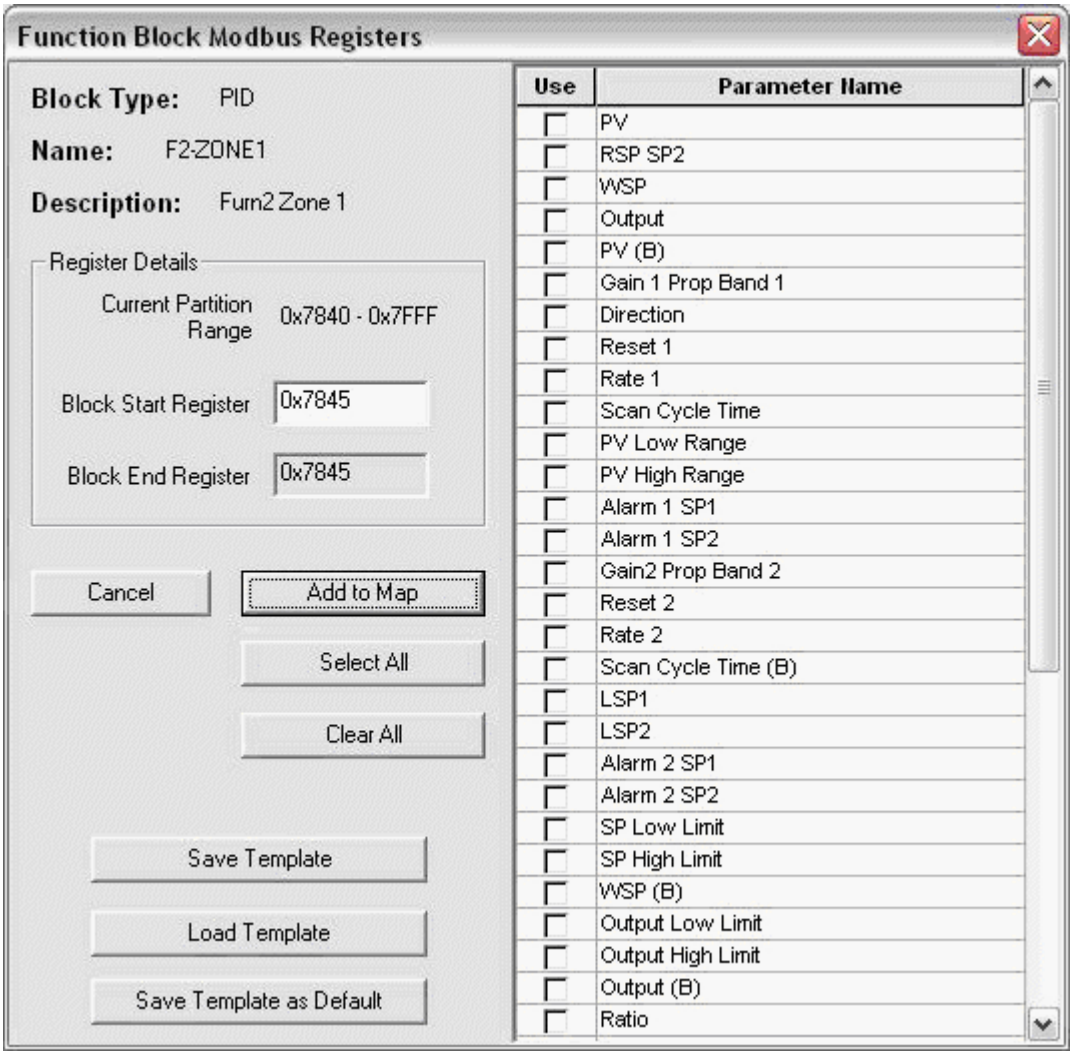
Method 1: In the Configuration tab in the Worksheet Toolbox window, click and drag a function block over to a starting address register in the custom map.



Method 2: In the custom map, select an Item Filter, then click on a starting address in the Item column.
Note: If adding system register parameters you must use this method.



In both methods the following box appears listing all available parameters for the block type selected.



Function blocks that can be added to the custom map.

Functions

Use this window to select block parameters to add to your custom map.

The available block parameters for the selected block will be listed. Select the parameters you'd like to add by using **Select All, Clear All**, or by checking and unchecking individual parameters.

Click **Add to Map** to add the checked parameters to the map. The uppermost checked parameter will be added to the **Block Start Register**, and the remaining checked parameters will contiguously fill in the remaining registers until the **Block End Register** is reached. Unchecked parameters will not leave gaps in registers, in most cases. If the current partition range is not big enough to hold all the parameters you must select fewer parameters or edit the partition to make it larger.

You can use templates to apply the same list of parameters to each function block of that type. This saves you the effort of creating the same checklist for each block and ensures the same parameters are checked. Templates are saved as separate files with **.ptf** extension. Each block type is limited to templates created for that block type only. You can't apply a PID block's template to a Setpoint Programmer block, for example.

Example of how to use templates

1. Add a PID loop to the map. We'll refer to this as PID 1.
2. Check PID 1's desired parameters to be addressed.
3. Click Save Template to save this checked list to a template file (extension .ptf). Use a descriptive filename that describes the type of block, for future reference. For example, PID1.ptf.
4. As you add other PID loops to the map you can Load Template PID1 into them, which applies the same checklist of parameters.
5. You can also Save Template As Default for that block type, which saves you from loading a template into each block. For example, if you want all your PID blocks to have the same parameters checked as the template PID1, save PID1 as the default. When you add subsequent PID blocks to the map they will automatically have those same parameters checked.

Adding system parameters to custom map

Overview

If adding system register parameters to the custom map you must click on an address to add them. They cannot be dragged from the Configuration tab.

Procedure

1. Select Item Filter "System Register."
2. Click on an address under Item.
3. Select a system parameter.
4. If adding time parameters you must add all time parameters to the map, one at a time. Time parameters must be written to as a group, therefore you must add all* of them to the map.

*The Day-of-week parameter is optional and can be left out.

31. Redundancy

C70R/C75 controllers/networks have their own diagnostics that are accessed under

Utilities Worksheet Overview

Monitor Menu

Redundancy diagnostics are grouped as follows.

Redundancy System

Redundancy Link

Lead CPU

Reserve CPU

Scanner 2 Link

Redundancy System Status Indicators

The Redundancy System Diagnostics dialog box will provide status of the parameters shown in the following list.

Parameter	Value	Possible Cause	Controller Action	User Action
Redundancy Status	Available	Normal operation	N/A	N/A
	No RSM module detected	Switch on RSM is set between two positions. RSM Module is not inserted RSM Module has failed	The controller will continue to operate with a missing RSM. Automatic failover is still possible if required.	Make sure switch is in desired position Install RSM module Replace RSM
	RSM switch is bad	RSM Switch is indicating an invalid position	The controller will continue to operate with a bad RSM. Automatic failover is still possible if required.	Replace RSM
	I/O comm error on reserve	Reserve CPU is unable to communicate with one or more of the I/O racks.	The lead controller will continue to control the process. Failover to the reserve is still possible if a subsequent failure renders the current lead less capable than the reserve.	Verify all cabling between the reserve CPU and the scanners. Replace any Ethernet switches between the reserve CPU and the I/O rack(s). Replace the reserve CPU Replace the scanner CPU Contact Honeywell service

	Database Not Synchronized	Hardware failure on the reserve CPU Hardware failure on the lead CPU Hardware failure on the CPU rack backplane	The lead controller will continue to control the process, but failover is not possible.	Replace the reserve CPU Replace the lead CPU Replace the CPU rack backplane Contact Honeywell service
	Invalid Configuration	Neither CPU has a valid configuration database	An empty database is created.	Download the desired configuration file and perform a cold start.
	Firmware Version Mismatch	The reserve controller does not have the same version of controller firmware installed	The lead controller will continue to control the process, but failover is not possible.	Upgrade the CPU firmware so both the lead and reserve have the same version.
Redundancy Diagnostics	Good			
	Database Not Synchronized	Hardware failure on the reserve CPU Hardware failure on the lead CPU Hardware failure on the CPU rack backplane	The lead controller will continue to control the process, but failover is not possible.	Replace the reserve CPU Replace the lead CPU Replace the CPU rack backplane Contact Honeywell service
	Invalid Configuration	Neither CPU has a valid configuration database	An empty database is created.	Download the desired configuration file and perform a cold start.
	Firmware Version Mismatch	The reserve controller does not have the same version of controller firmware installed	The lead controller will continue to control the process, but failover is not possible.	Upgrade the CPU firmware so both the lead and reserve have the same version.

Redundancy Link Status Indicators

The Redundancy Link Diagnostics dialog box will provide status of the parameters shown in the following list.

Parameter	Value	Possible Cause	Controller Action	User Action
Redundancy Link Port Status	Good	Lead and Reserve CPUs working ok	N/A	N/A
	Reserve not present	Reserve CPU module is not plugged in.	N/A	Install Reserve CPU
	Reserve Bad Comm	Reserve CPU module is plugged in but not communicating.	Reserve or Lead CPU module could be bad. Backplane could be bad.	Replace faulty CPU. Replace rack.
	Hardware failure	Bad Lead module Bad backplane	N/A	Replace faulty CPU. Replace rack.

Parameter	Value	Possible Cause	Controller Action	User Action
Redundancy Link Port Diagnostics	Good	N/A	N/A	N/A
	Data Link Failure	Reserve CPU module is not plugged in. Reserve CPU module is plugged in but not communicating.	The lead CPU will continue to control the process but failover is not possible.	Replace faulty CPU Replace rack
	Hardware Failure	Bad Redundancy link hardware detected on the lead CPU	The lead CPU will continue to control the process but failover is not possible.	Replace faulty CPU

Lead CPU Status Indicators

The Lead Diagnostics Overview dialog box will provide status of the parameters shown in the following list. These parameters are also shown for the Reserve Diagnostics Overview.

Parameter	Status	Possible Cause	Controller Action	User Action
CPU Diagnostics	Good	N/A	N/A	N/A
	Watchdog	Watchdog reset resulting from software failure	ASYS block's HW OK pin is turned off.	1. Force a cold start. 2. Upgrade control file software. 3. Replace CPU board. 4. Contact Honeywell Personnel.
	Prefetch Abort	CPU failed when attempting to fetch an instruction from the prefetch register.	1. Controller performs a restart 2. ASYS block's HW OK pin is turned off.	1. Force a cold start. 2. Isolate system from noise and force a cold start. 3. Replace CPU board
	Address Error	The reserved exception occurred for an unknown reason.	Same as above	Same as above
	Undefine Error	Bad Instruction Detected	Same as above	Same as above
	Data Abort	CPU failed when attempting to access data.	Same as above	Same as above

Parameter	Status	Possible Cause	Controller Action	User Action
	Software Interrupt Error	Software Interrupt occurred which is not supported by the software.	Same as above	Same as above
	Good	N/A	N/A	N/A
	Watchdog	Watchdog reset resulting from software failure	ASYS block's HW OK pin is turned off.	1. Force a cold start. 2. Upgrade control file software. 3. Replace CPU board. 4. Contact Honeywell Personnel.
Memory Diagnostics	Good	N/A	N/A	N/A
	5 Day Low Battery Warning	Estimated battery life is less than 5 days.	ASYS block's HW OK pin is turned off.	Replace battery.
	Low Battery	Battery voltage is low.	1. ASYS block's LOW BATTERY pin is turned on. 2. ASYS block's HW OK pin is turned off.	Replace battery.
	Flash Error	Flash failed to burn	ASYS block's HW OK pin is turned off.	1. Force a cold start. 2. Replace CPU board.
Real-time Clock Diagnostics	Good	N/A	N/A	N/A
	Not Programmed	RTC not programmed	1.Time and date is set to 00:00:00, January 1, 1970. 2.ASYS block's HW OK pin is turned off.	Program RTC.
	Bad Data	Bad date and time	Same as above	1. Program RTC. 2. Cycle power. 3. Replace CPU. 4. Replace boards in rack. 5. Replace rack
	Programming Failure	RTC failed to program	Same as above	Same as above
	Read Failure	Unable to read RTC	Same as above	Same as above

Port S1/S2 Diagnostic	Good	N/A	N/A	N/A
	Data Link Error	A large number of messages are resulting in data link errors.	SYSTEM MONITOR block's HW OK pin is turned off.	1. Check baud rate. 2. Check connectors. 3. Check cable polarity. 4. Isolate cable from electrical interference. 5. If RS232-to-RS485 converter used, check its power, switch/jumper settings, and polarity.
	Hardware Failure	The UART is failing to operate properly.		Replace the controller CPU module.
Lead Port E1/E2: Network Port Diagnostics	Good	N/A	N/A	N/A
	Hardware Failure	Ethernet port tests failed during power-up.	Same as above	Replace CPU module
Rack Comm Diagnostic	Good	See Expansion I/O Comm Diagnostics Status Indicators		
	Data Link Failure	See Expansion I/O Comm Diagnostics Status Indicators		
	Hardware Failure	See Expansion I/O Comm Diagnostics Status Indicators		
	Port A/B Cable Mismatch	See Expansion I/O Comm Diagnostics Status Indicators		
	Protocol Mismatch	See Expansion I/O Comm Diagnostics Status Indicators		
Scanner2 Rack n Network Status	No Comm	See Scanner 2 Link Status Indicators .		
	Marginal - Port I/O A	See Scanner 2 Link Status Indicators .		
	Marginal - Port I/O B	See Scanner 2 Link Status Indicators .		
	Good - Port I/O A	See Scanner 2 Link Status Indicators .		

	Good - Port I/O B	See Scanner 2 Link Status Indicators .		
	Not in Configuration	See Scanner 2 Link Status Indicators .		
Scanner2 Rack n Network Diagnostics	Good	See Scanner 2 Link Status Indicators .		
	Data Link Failure	See Scanner 2 Link Status Indicators .		
	Hardware Failure	See Scanner 2 Link Status Indicators .		
	Port A/B Cable Mismatch	See Scanner 2 Link Status Indicators .		
	Protocol Mismatch	See Scanner 2 Link Status Indicators .		
CPU Slot Position	CPU A	CPU A is the Lead/Reserve.	N/A	N/A
	CPU B	CPU B is the Lead/Reserve.	N/A	N/A
	CPU is missing	Reserve CPU is not installed or not powered. CPU rack backplane failure.	The lead CPU will continue to control the process but failover is not possible.	1. Install reserve CPU. 2. Apply power to reserve CPU. 3. Replace CPU rack backplane. 4. Call Honeywell service.
Power Supply Type	Unknown	CPU cannot identify the Power Supply Type	None	None
	24VDC	CPU identified a 24VD DC power supply	None	None
	Low Wattage	CPU identified a Low wattage power supply	None	None

	High Wattage	CPU identified a High wattage power supply	None	None
Controller Rack Type	Redundant Split Rack	NA	NA	NA
	Single Rack	If the Redundant CPU rack is used.	NA	NA
		If the CPU is not correctly inserted into the 1-slot rack and thereby the rear connector of the CPU doesn't engage correctly with the mating connector of the rack backplane.	NA	1. Press the CPU module into the 1-slot rack until the rear connector of the CPU engages the mating connector of the rack backplane. 2. Secure the CPU module top and bottom with the captive mounting screws. Torque settings to be 0,4 to 0,5 Nm (3.5 to 4.4 Lb-In.)

Reserve CPU Status Indicators

Contains same information as for the Lead CPU Status Indicators.

Scanner 2 Link Status Indicators

The Redundancy Scanner 2 Link Diagnostics dialog box will provide status of the parameters shown in the following list.

Parameter	Value	Possible Cause	Controller Action	User Action
Scanner-2 Network Status	No Comm	C70R/C75 is communicating to none of the Scanner 2s that are in the configuration. or C70R/C75 may be communicating to a Scanner 2 that is not in the configuration	If scanners are in the configuration, see Expansion Rack Link Diagnostics below.	See Expansion Rack Link Diagnostic below.
	Marginal - Port I/O A	C70R/C75 is experiencing marginal communications on the respective Scanner 2 link to one or more Scanner 2s in the configuration and/or C70R/C75 is communicating to some of the Scanner 2s in the configuration but not all	If a scanner 2 in the configuration is not communicating, then a communication diagnostic Is posted for that rack. Refer to the Expansion I/O Comm Diagnostic Summary dialog box	Refer to the Expansion I/O Comm Diagnostic Summary dialog box
	Marginal - Port I/O B	C70R/C75 is experiencing marginal communications on the respective Scanner 2 link to one or more Scanner 2s in the configuration and/or C70R/C75 is communicating to some of the Scanner 2s in the configuration but not all	Same as above	Same as above
	Good - Port I/O A	C70R/C75 is experiencing good communications on the respective Scanner 2 link. Scanner 2s not in the configuration have no effect on the status	Lead CPU is operating normally using the I/O Port A to communicate with the Scanner Racks	none
	Good - Port I/O B	C70R/C75 is experiencing good communications on the respective Scanner 2 link.	Lead CPU is operating normally using the I/O Port B to communicate with the Scanner Racks	none

Parameter	Value	Possible Cause	Controller Action	User Action
		Scanner 2s not in the configuration have no effect on the status		
	Not in Configuration	No Scanner 2s in the configuration	N/A	N/A
Expansion Rack Link Diagnostics	Good		N/A	N/A
	Data Link Failure	The ratio of the number of data link errors and the number of good messages exceeds a certain threshold	See the "Rack Comm Diagnostics" parameter in the Expansion I/O Comm Diagnostic Summary dialog box	See the "Rack Comm Diagnostics" parameter in the Expansion I/O Comm Diagnostic Summary dialog box
	Hardware Failure	The expansion I/O port's hardware is indicating a failure	See the "Rack Comm Diagnostics" parameter in the Expansion I/O Comm Diagnostic Summary dialog box	See the "Rack Comm Diagnostics" parameter in the Expansion I/O Comm Diagnostic Summary dialog box
	Port A/B Cable Mismatch	At least one Scanner 2 has its A and B ports swapped with the Lead and Reserve	See the "Rack Comm Diagnostics" parameter in the Expansion I/O Comm Diagnostic Summary dialog box	See the "Rack Comm Diagnostics" parameter in the Expansion I/O Comm Diagnostic Summary dialog box

32. Version Control

Overview

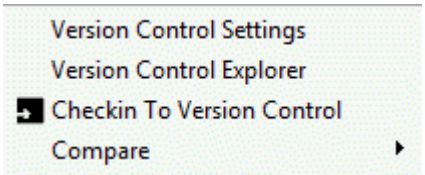
The **Version Control System** also known as Version Control System provides capabilities to save changes made to the cde and non cde files over time and creates repositories to manage different versions. Additionally, the tool enables you to compare the differences between two cde file versions and generate a detailed report.

The following list provides the main purpose of this feature:

- Allows the user to maintain history of every version.
- Repository backups can be shared with other users.
- Changes in the older versions can be recovered and analyzed.
- Tracks the changes made to the files and directories (in certain cases) over a period of time.
- Allows to recover older versions of the data.
- Allows to examine the history of how the data changed.
- Compares two versions belonging to same cde file to determine the differences between them.

Note: Version control is not supported in mandarin HCD and in mandarin OS

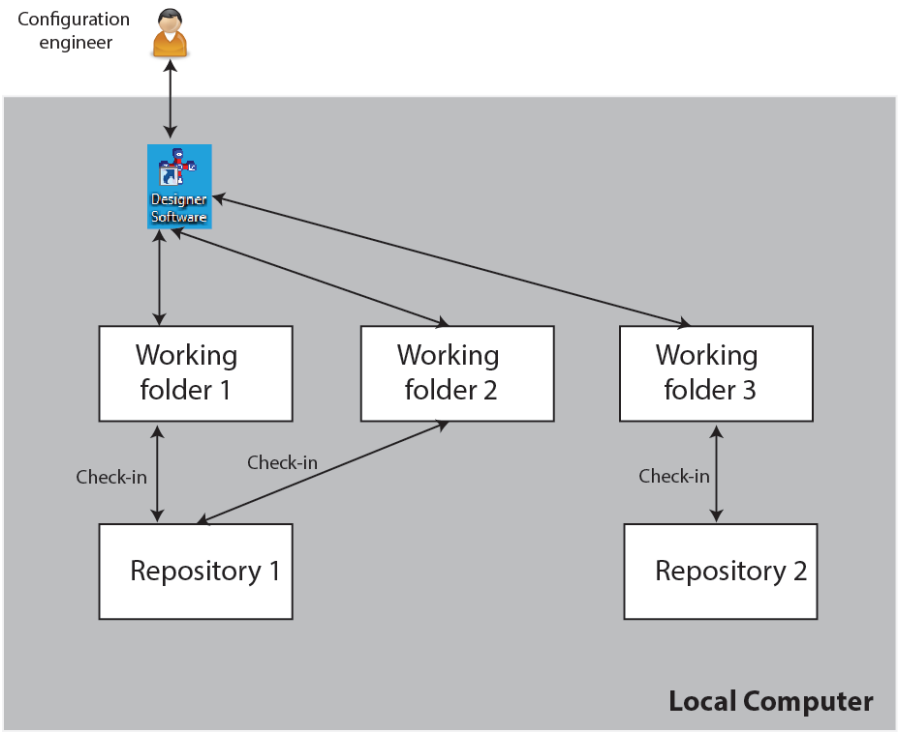
Shortcut: *ALT+C*



Basically, two separate folders, that is **working folder** and **repository folder** must be created to save the working files and check in to the repository folder.

A working folder is the local working copy of a particular version which is present in the repository folder. It is just another local directory which contains files and folders which will be added to the repository as required. The working folder shall contain the configuration files and the same is checked into the repository folder.

A repository is a central storage system that preserves the files and directories in hierarchical representation. The repository folder is a collection of all version controlled files. There can be multiple working folders associated to a repository folder. These folders must be created on the local computer.



General Guidelines

The following guidelines must be followed while working on the Version Control System feature.

- Do not create the repository or the working folder on the desktop.
- Do not create the repository folder within the working folder and vice a versa.
- Do not delete the repository folder or the working folder as they cannot be recovered.
- Do not rename the files present in these folders
- Do not change the extensions of the files present in these folders.
- Do not rename or delete the files from the working folders.
- Do not delete the ".svn" folder from the working folders.
- Multiple users are not allowed to work on the repository at the same time.
- Check-in the working files frequently.
- Before deleting, ensure to check in or modify the modified file as the files will be deleted permanently.

Manage Repository

Repository not only stores configuration files, but also maintains a history of the changes made in the configuration files. Firstly you must create a repository or use an existing repository to perform the check-in operations. This step includes creating a new repository and working folder path or using an existing repository working folder path. Whenever an existing path is used the new configuration files are added to the existing repositories. There is a provision to create new working folders and associate them to the existing repository folder. This means that multiple working folders can be mapped to a repository, however, vice a versa is not possible.

***IMPORTANT**:*

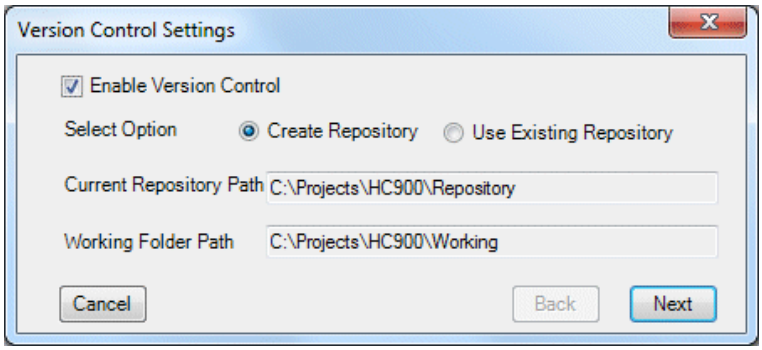
- *Repository and working folder must be created only on the local machine. Do not create any folder in network share/remote machine.*
- *Do not delete the repository folder as they cannot be restored.*

Read the instructions provided in the General Guidelines section before creating the repository.

To create a new repository

The Version Control settings dialog helps to create new repository. In general, most of the times this operation is done only once.

1. On the **Version Control** menu, click **Version Control Settings**.



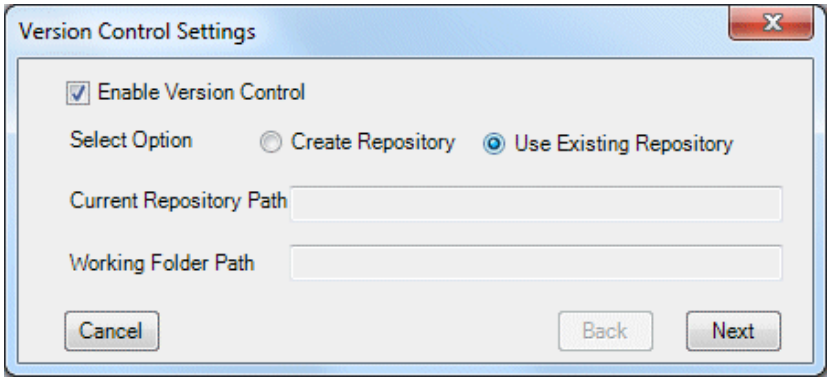
2. Select **Enable Version Control**.

   NOTE:
   > Selecting this check box starts the version control operations immediately.
   *> On clearing the **Enable Version Control** check box stops the version control operations immediately and closes the Version Control Explorer window, if open. However, other open windows are not affected.*

3. Select **Create Repository** and click **Next**.
   NOTE: Click **Back** to go to the previous screen.
4. Click the browse button and select repository location. Click **Next**.
5. Click the browse button and select working folder location.
6. Click **Finish**. The repository and working folders are created.

To backup and restore repository

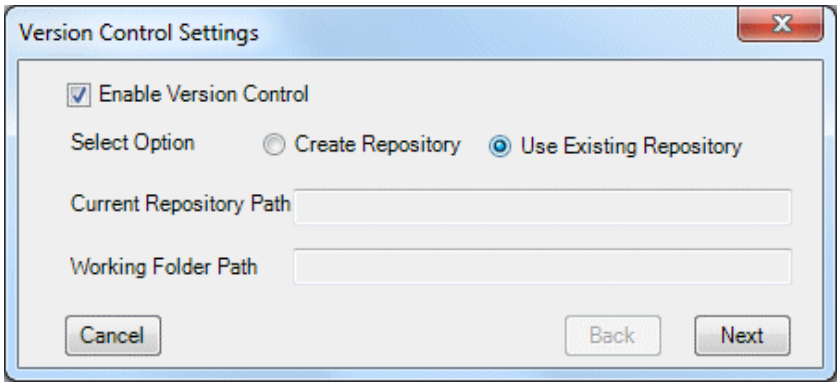
1. Zip the repository folder and share this file on the intended computer.
2. Unzip the file.
3. On the **Version Control** menu, click **Version Control Settings**.



4. Select **Use Existing Repository**.
5. Click **Next**.
6. Click the browse button and select the unzipped file. Click **Next**.
7. Click **Finish**. The files are restored.

To use an existing repository

1. On the **Version Control** menu, click **Version Control Settings.**



2. Select **Use Existing Repository**.
3. Click **Next**.
4. Click the browse button and select the existing repository location. Click **Next**.
5. Click the browse button and select the working folder location.
6. Click **Finish**. The existing repository and working folders are updated.

Checkin operations

Checkin is a process of storing changes from working folder to repository folder. Before performing this operation, the configuration files must be saved to the working folder path and subsequently perform the checkin operation. The checked in files can be verified in the Version Control Explorer.

The new changes done to the files in the working folder are updated in the repository folder only after performing the check-in operation.

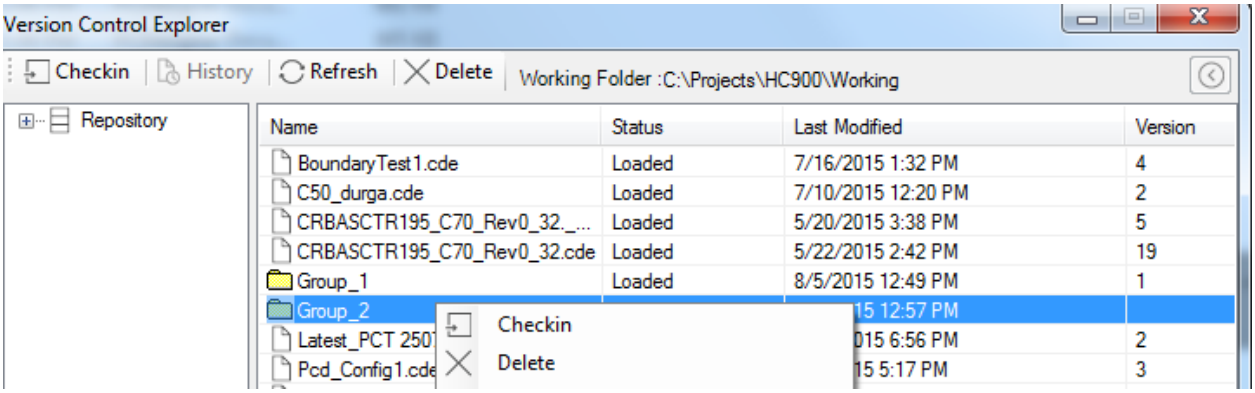
To checkin the configuration files

1. After creating the control logic save the configuration file in the working folder path. See Saving A Configuration File.
2. On the **Version Control** menu, click **Checkin To Version Control**.
3. Type a comment to provide a log message to record the reason for the changes and click **Ok**.
   This log message becomes a part of the history repository.
   The file is checked in to the repository folder.

NOTE: *It is recommended to check-in the working files frequently.*

To checkin a folder

The files present in a folder can be checked in simultaneously. ***NOTE:*** *The CRC value is not generated in this case.*



1. Copy the folders to the working folder path. The folders will appear in the **Version Control Explorer** window.
2. On the **Version Control** menu, click **Version Control Explorer**.
3. Right-click on the folder that contains the files and click **Checkin**.
4. Type a comment to provide a log message to record the reason for the changes and click **Ok**.
   This log message becomes a part of the history repository.
   The file is checked in to the repository folder.

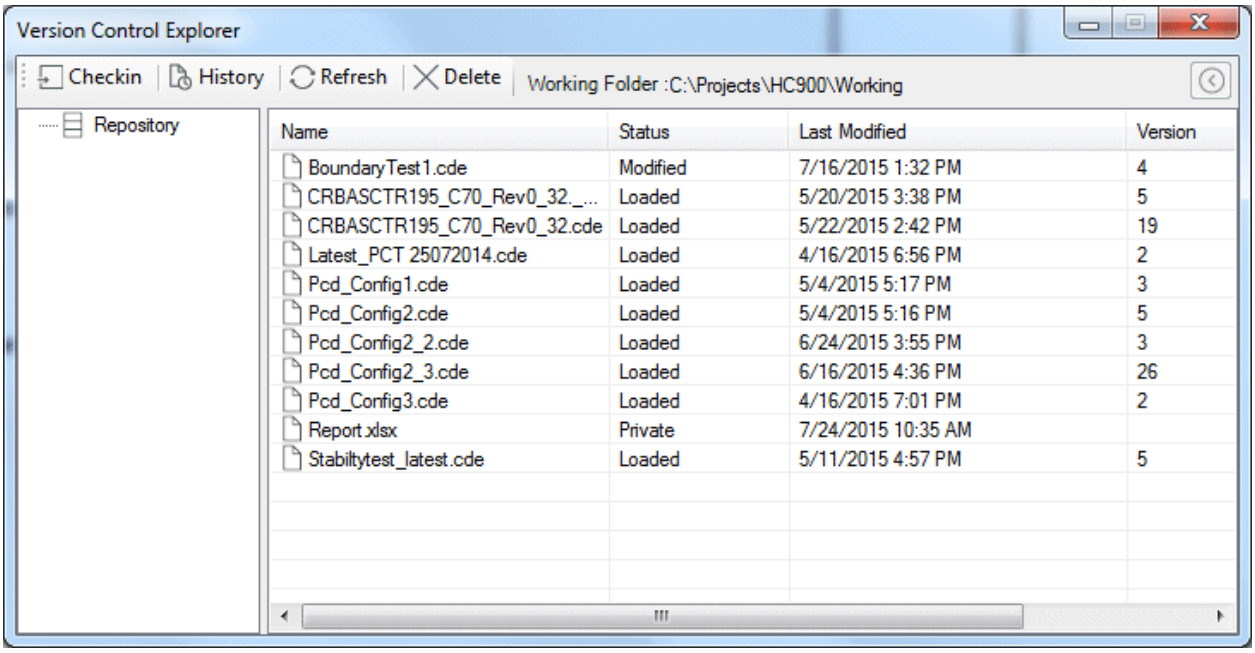
NOTE: *Double-click the folder to view the files present inside the folder. Click* *button located at top right corner to return to the previous folder.*

Version Control Explorer

The **Version Control Explorer** window displays the folder structure and status of the files in the working folder.

To launch version control explorer

1. On the **Version Control** menu, click **Version Control Explorer**.



***NOTE*:**

- *Deleting a particular version is not supported.*
- *Adding folders or non cde files is possible only via the Version Control Explorer after manually copying the file or folder to the working folder.*

Menu options

- **Name**: Displays the name of all files available in the working folder along with their file extensions. Displays the file with latest revision.
  NOTE: To get the latest revision, click **Refresh** or right-click on file and click **Get Latest Version**.
- **Status**: Displays the status of each file:
  - **Loaded**: Indicates that the file present in the working folder and repository are same and is version controlled.
  - **Modified**: Indicates that the file is modified recently.
  - **Private**: Indicates that the working folder contains a file which is not version controlled. This status is applied to all files that are directly saved to the working folder. For example, files with cde, xlsx, txt, doc, and so on
- **Last Modified**: Displays the last modified date.
- **Version**: Displays the latest version number of the file.
- **Checkin**: Allows to check in the files with any format to the repository. For example, files with cde, xlsx, txt, doc, and so on.
  NOTE: You cannot checkin a file whose status is **Loaded**.

- **History**: Displays the history of every version associated with the selected file. See Version History for more information.
  NOTE: You cannot view the history of a file whose status is **Private** as the file is not checked in.
- **Refresh**: Updates the window with the latest documents from the working folder along with its status.
- **Delete**: Deletes the selected file permanently.

  NOTE**:** *Before deleting, ensure to check in or modify the modified file as the files will be deleted permanently.*

Creating a new working folder

To create a new working folder

1. On the **Version Control** menu, click **Version Control Explorer**.
2. Right-click on **Repository** and then click **Set Working Folder**.
3. Click the browse button and select a working folder.
4. Click **OK**. The files present in the working folder will be displayed in the Version Control Explorer window.

Recovering files deleted from the working folder

Whenever the files are deleted from the working folder the same can be retrieved by getting the latest version from the repository.

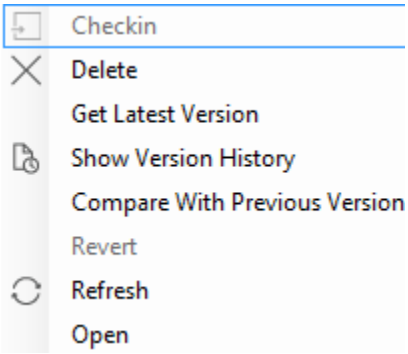
NOTE: *You cannot recover the files deleted from the repository.*

To recover the deleted files

1. On the **Version Control** menu, click **Version Control Explorer**.
2. Right-click **Repository** and then click **Get Latest Version**. The latest files are retrieved from the repository.

Right mouse click options

1. Right-click on the file in the **Version Control** menu to see the additional options.

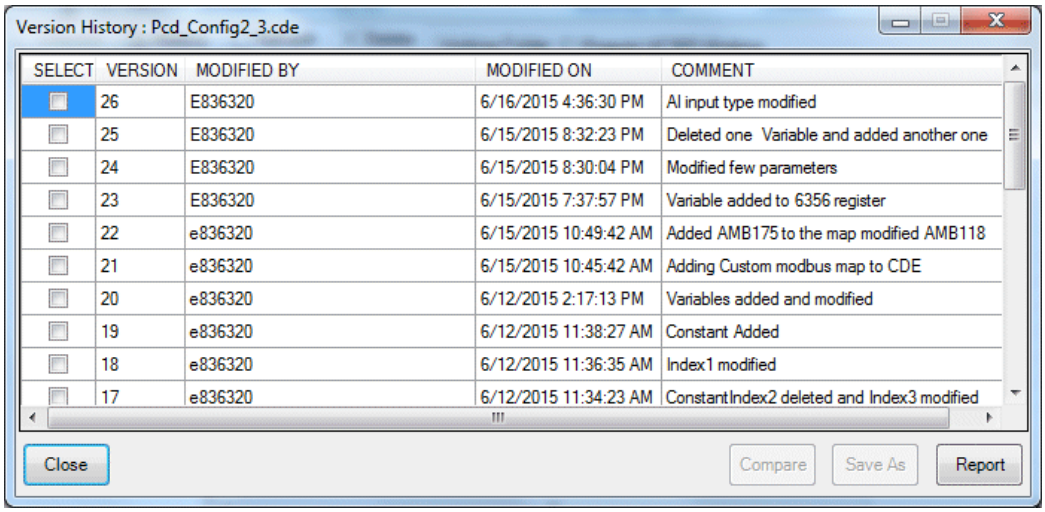


- **Check-in**: Checks in the selected file to the repository.
- **Delete**: Deletes the selected file permanently. ***NOTE*****:** *Before deleting, ensure to check in or modify the modified file as the files will be deleted permanently.*
- **Get Latest Version**: Retrieves the latest files from the repository.
- **Show Version History**: Displays the various versions associated with the selected file.
- **Compare With Previous Version**: Compares the selected file with immediate previous version.

- **Revert**: Reverts the modified file to the immediate previous version. This is enabled only if the selected file is in modified state. ***NOTE:*** *After performing the revert operation on a file in modified state, the latest changes will not be updated if the file is open. User must close and open the file again to see the latest changes.*
- **Refresh**: Updates the window with the latest documents from the working folder along with its status.
- **Open:** Opens the file separately in the respective format.

Version History

Displays the history of every version associated with the selected file.



- **Select**: Check boxes are provided to select the configuration files.
- **Version:** Displays the various versions associated with the file.
- **Modified by**: Displays the identity of the person responsible for the modification. This is the Windows user account.
- **Modified on**: Displays the date when the file was modified.
- **Comment**: Displays the comments provided during each check in. This generates a CRC code which is a unique checksum tagged to a version. This helps to match the configuration file running in the controller with the available version.
  NOTE: *The files saved in a folder does not generate CRC value as they are checked in together.*
- **Compare**: Compares two revisions associated to the same controller. You can compare two files at one time.
- **Save as**: Saves the configuration file to a folder that you want. You can save only one version at a time.
- **Report**: Exports the data from this window to a Microsoft Excel or a text file.
- **Close**: Closes this window.

33. Compare Functionality

The tool provides a powerful compare functionality feature which can perform the following tasks:

- Compares the differences between two revisions of the cde file.
- Compares differences between a configuration file with another configuration file from an online ControlEdge HC900 controller.
- Compares the differences between two separate configuration files saved in a location.

IMPORTANT: *Configuration files must belong to controllers of same type and version.*

The following list provides the items which do not support the comparison functionality:

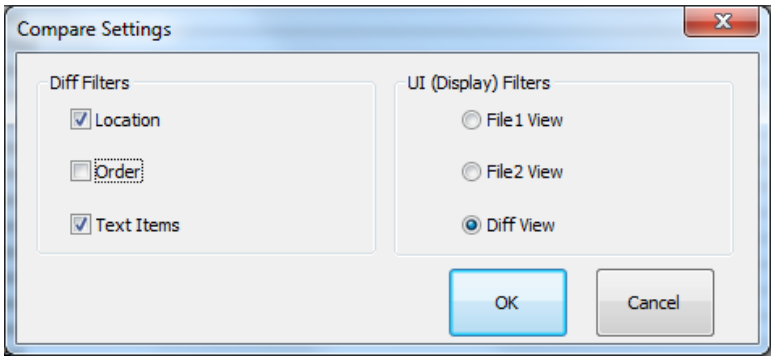
- *Configuration files which are in protected state cannot be compared. To remove the protection, see How to Add Worksheet Protection.*
- *Controller name and the IP information are not compared.*
- *Recipe, Set Point Profile, Set Point Schedule, Sequencer, Data Storage, and backup files are not compared.*
- *Information related to alarm group configuration and event list configuration are not compared.*
- *Parameters present in the following function blocks are not compared:*
  - *Alarm Group - Selected Tag, Group Title Parameters*
  - *XYR 6000 Transmitter - All parameters*
  - *Trend Point - List of Points, Trend Points*
  - *Sequencer - Event Signal*

Compare Settings

The compare functionality provides option for applying filter to the compared reports. The **Diff Filters** helps to exclude location, order, and text information from difference summary report and comparison report. Similarly, the **UI Filters** helps to view the cde files separately or view the compared data.

To use the filters:

1. Open the **Version Control** menu bar, go to **Compare** > **Compare Settings**.
   The **Compare Settings** window appears.



2. Select the check boxes to separate out the items.
   - **Location**: Excludes the position information of the items.
   - **Order**: Excludes the execution order of the logic.
   - **Text information**: Excludes the text items.

3. Click **OK** to apply the filters.

NOTE: *The **Diff Fitters** will take effect only after reopening the files, whereas the **UI Filters** will take effect immediately.*

Compare Two Revisions

This feature allows you to know the difference between two revisions of the same configuration file.

IMPORTANT: *The configuration files must be saved before performing the compare operation.*

To compare two revisions

1. Open the **Version Control Explorer** window. See Version Control Explorer for more information.
2. Click on a cde file which you want to compare with its previous versions.
3. Click **History**. The **Version History** window appears. See Version History for more information.
4. Select any two versions that you want to compare and click **Compare**.

   The tool compares the selected files and provides the differences in graphical and tabular representations. Additionally, you are allowed to generate reports. See Report Summary for more information.

Compare with Controller

This helps to compare the differences between a configuration file with another configuration file from an online ControlEdge HC900 controller.

IMPORTANT: *The configuration files must be saved before performing the compare operation.*

To compare with controller

1. Open a cde file that you want to compare.
2. Click **Version Control Explorer** > **Compare** > **Compare With Controller** window. The **Upload File** window appears.
3. Provide the network details on which the online controller is connected.
4. Click **Start**.

   NOTE: *The controller name and the IP information are not compared.*

The tool compares the selected files and provides the differences in graphical and tabular representations. Additionally, you are allowed to generate reports. See Report Summary for more information.

Compare with File Selection

This helps to compare differences between two separate configuration files saved in a location.

IMPORTANT: *The configuration files must be saved before performing the compare operation.*

To compare with file selection option:

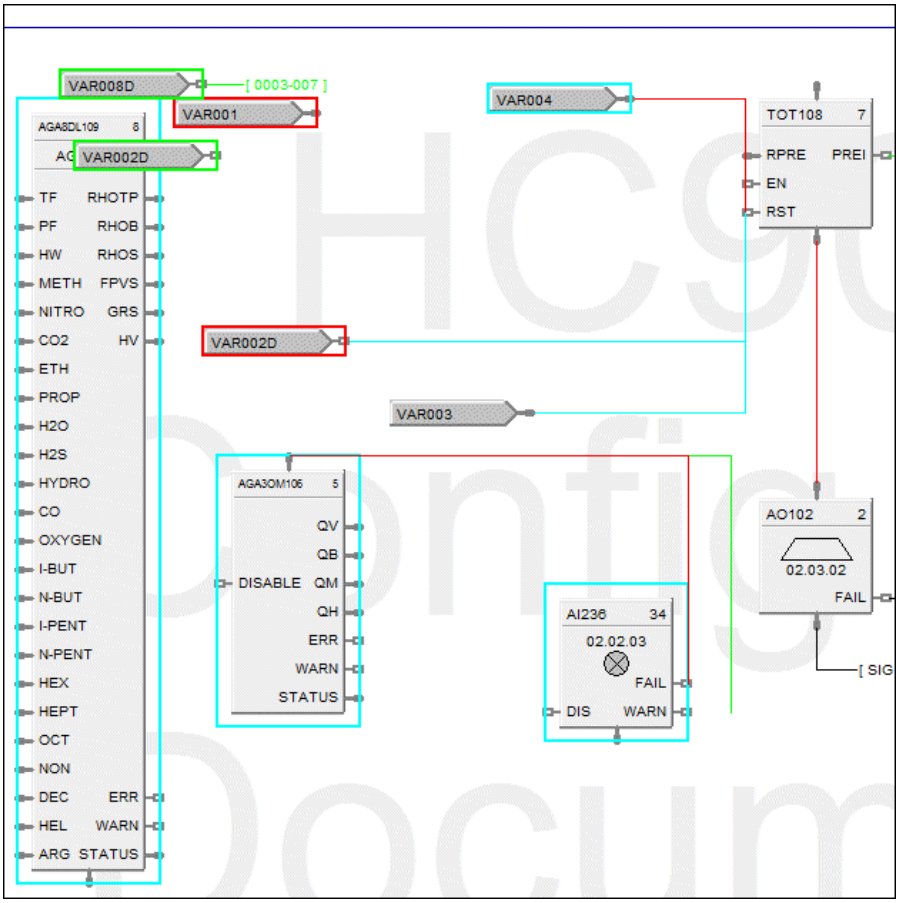
1. Open a cde file that you want to compare.
2. Click **Version Control Explorer** > **Compare** > **Compare With File Selection**. window.
3. Select a file and click **Open**.

The tool compares the selected files and provides the differences in graphical and tabular representations. Additionally, you are allowed to generate reports. See Report Summary for more information.

Report Summary

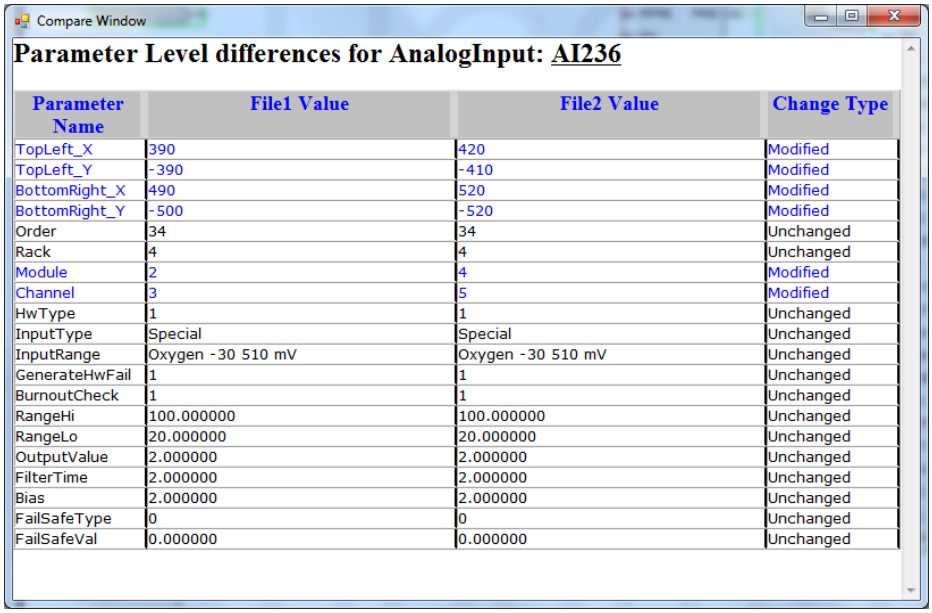
The report provides details of compared data between two files or versions. The data is classified and presented under different categories such as Controller, Process, Safety, and Difference Summary. The compared report can be exported to Microsoft Excel file and used for future references.

- **Controller:** Shows the comparison of controller properties such as controller name, and e-mail notifications, and priorities. It also indicates if the property is modified or unchanged.
- **Process or Safety:** Shows the comparison between control logics present all sheets of the cde files. The changes are highlighted in red, green, or cyan color to represent the following:



- Red: Indicates that the highlighted object is deleted.
- Green: Indicates that the highlighted object is newly added.
- Cyan: Indicates that the highlighted object was modified.

Double-click on the function block to view the parameter level differences of each block. This shows the parameters that are newly added, modified, and unchanged.



Compare Window

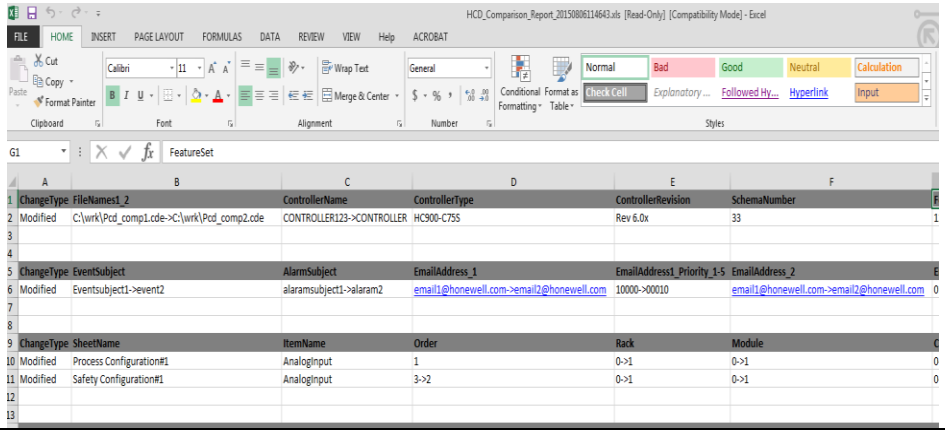
Parameter Level differences for AnalogInput: AI236

Parameter Name	File1 Value	File2 Value	Change Type
TopLeft_X	390	420	Modified
TopLeft_Y	-390	-410	Modified
BottomRight_X	490	520	Modified
BottomRight_Y	-500	-520	Modified
Order	34	34	Unchanged
Rack	4	4	Unchanged
Module	2	4	Modified
Channel	3	5	Modified
HwType	1	1	Unchanged
InputType	Special	Special	Unchanged
InputRange	Oxygen -30 510 mV	Oxygen -30 510 mV	Unchanged
GenerateHwFail	1	1	Unchanged
BurnoutCheck	1	1	Unchanged
RangeHi	100.000000	100.000000	Unchanged
RangeLo	20.000000	20.000000	Unchanged
OutputValue	2.000000	2.000000	Unchanged
FilterTime	2.000000	2.000000	Unchanged
Bias	2.000000	2.000000	Unchanged
FailSafeType	0	0	Unchanged
FailSafeVal	0.000000	0.000000	Unchanged

- **Difference Summary**: Provides a detailed summary of each item in different tabs.
  - **Worksheet Differences**: Provides worksheet level the differences in each sheet. The **Worksheet Index** column provides hot links which directs you to the worksheets and shows the differences graphically.
  - **Function Block Differences**: Provides the list of function blocks that have under gone changes. Indicates if they are newly added or deleted from the worksheets. The **Block Name** column provides hot links which directs you to the worksheet associated to the selected function block and highlights the block.
  - **Other Item Differences**: Provides the list of changes made to other items such as variables, text items, write nodes, connectors, and so on. The **Item Type** column provides hot links which directs you to the other items on the corresponding worksheet and highlights the item.
  - **Modbus Map Differences**: Provides the differences in item type, parameter name, and data type of the Modbus register map association.

Use the buttons on the tool bar to perform the following tasks:

Button	Action
	Click to print the active worksheet. It opens the "Print" dialog box for printing.
	Allows you find an Item on the worksheets. Opens the "Find Item" dialog box. See How to Find an Item on the FBD Worksheet
	You can "zoom in" or "zoom out" to return items to normal size. Zoom levels of 50%, 75%, 100%, 125%, and 150%.
	Let's you place a grid in the Function Block Diagram. This can aid in the placement of items on the diagram.
	You can navigate to the immediate previous or next difference. Also, navigate to the first or last difference item.
	Exports the compared data to Microsoft Excel Sheet. The original value and the modified value is separated by '>' symbol.

Button	Action
	

HCD_Comparison_Report_20150806114643.xls [Read-Only] [Compatibility Mode] - Excel

G1 FeatureSet

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	ChangeType	FileNames1_2	ControllerName	ControllerType	ControllerRevision	SchemaNumber
2	Modified	C:\wrk\Pcd_comp1.cde->C:\wrk\Pcd_comp2.cde	CONTROLLER123->CONTROLLER	HC900-C755	Rev 6.0x	33
3						
4						
5	ChangeType	EventSubject	AlarmSubject	EmailAddress_1	EmailAddress1_Priority_1-5	EmailAddress_2
6	Modified	Eventsubject1->event2	alaramsubject1->alaram2	email1@honewell.com->email2@honewell.com	10000->00010	email1@honewell.com->email2@honewell.com
7						
8						
9	ChangeType	SheetName	ItemName	Order	Rack	Module
10	Modified	Process Configuration#1	AnalogInput	1	0->1	0->1
11	Modified	Safety Configuration#1	AnalogInput	3->2	0->1	0->1
12						
13						

34. Appendix A – Operator Interface

Data Storage

Note: This section applies to models 551, 552 and 1042 operator interfaces with floppy disk storage. It does not apply to the 900 Control Station. Please refer to the Station Designer User Guide, 51-52-25-149 for support of the 900 Control Station.

Data Storage Overview

The Data Storage feature provides background storage of process information on a storage device for analysis by an off-line computer equipped with Honeywell data analysis software.

Data stored files cannot be reviewed from the operator interface. The instrument can support both continuous and discontinuous (batching) modes of the following storage types:

Trends - Two Trend groups of up to 12 points each can be stored. Floppy disk capacity for trends is inversely proportional to the number of trend points and the storage time interval (that is, the time between trend samples). For example, when storing 2 trend groups of 12 points each at a storage interval of 2 seconds, the storage device will be filled in a few hours. Conversely, when storing 1 trend group of 3 points at a storage interval of 30 minutes, the storage device could take several months to be filled.

Point Log (unit data samples) - A point log file to take a "snapshot" of process data for up to 12 points is also provided. Point log samples can be scheduled to occur at a user-specified time synchronized to the controller's Real Time Clock (RTC) or by a digital event in the controller. The maximum sample rate for point log data is 60 seconds per sample. The Point log file has a maximum capacity of between 2000 and 5000 records per file.

Alarms - Alarm recording is available to store on and off alarm actions. Alarm data includes the point tag, a 32-character point description, and the time and date of alarm occurrence. The Alarm file has a capacity of between 150 and 1500 records per file.

Events - Digital event recording is also available to store on and off transitions of digital events in the controller. Event data includes the point tag, a 32-character point description, and the time and date of event occurrence. An Event file has a capacity of between 150 and 1500 records per file.

Setpoint Programs/Schedules, instrument configurations, recipes, variables, diagnostics, and calibrations are not part of the Data Storage feature.

Data Storage Conventions

Storage Modes

Trends, Point Log, and Alarms/Events can be stored in ***Continuous*** or ***Batch*** modes. In addition, Point Log can be stored in ***On Command*** mode.

Mode	Description
Off	No data will be collected
Continuous	Data is sampled at the storage interval
Batch	Data is sampled at the storage interval, but also a Batch Enable Signal separates the sampled data into numbered batches. Batch #1 begins when the Batch Enable Signal turns on, and ends when the signal turns off. Batch #2 begins when the Batch Enable Signal turns on, and ends when the signal turns off, etc. No batch mode data is collected while the Batch Enable Signal is off. The Batch Enable Signal does not affect data being stored as Continuous or On Command.

On Command	Point Log data is sampled on each off-to-on transition of the Point Log Enable Signal.

Storage intervals

When data storage is enabled, samples are taken at regular intervals known as the storage intervals. These intervals can be from a few seconds to 30 minutes. Each data type has its own storage interval. For example:

Trends can be stored using one interval (like 5 seconds),
Point Log using another interval (like 10 per day), and
Alarms/Events (stored as they occur).
Or, they can **all use the same interval**. It depends on how data storage has been configured.

In ***Continuous*** *and* ***Batch*** *modes*, the storage interval determines how often data is sampled and stored:

For **trends**, data is first sampled when storage is enabled and again at equally spaced intervals thereafter. For example, if trend storage is enabled at 2:03 p.m. and the interval is 10 minutes, trend storage occurs at 2:03, 2:13, 2:23, etc. until storage is disabled.

For **Point Log**, data is first sampled after storage is enabled but not until the programmed Start Time. Data is sampled at equally spaced intervals after the Start Time. For example, suppose the Start Time is 3:00 p.m. and the storage interval is 10 minutes. If storage is enabled at 2:03 p.m., the first sample will occur at 3:00 and every 10 minutes thereafter. If storage is disabled at 3:35 and enabled at 3:42, storage will resume at 3:50. Notice that the interval is synchronized to the Start Time.

Alarm/Events are logged on occurrence with time and date (No interval)

In ***On Command*** *mode for Point Log*, there is no storage interval or Start Time. A single sample of Point Log data is taken when the Point Log Enable changes from off (disable) to on (enable).

How Storage is Enabled

Data collection may be started through key actions from the operator interface keyboard or from digital status signals from the controller. An "S" in the status line of the operator interface display indicates active storage*. [For detailed information refer to Data Storage Enable Conditions]*

Disk Capacity

The disk capacity (in time) is calculated and displayed once all storage initialization is complete. This eliminates the need for manual calculations and gives the operator the exact duration of the disk. All file types in the data storage feature may be configured to stop collecting data when the file is full or to continue in a circular storage mode (roll-over) where the oldest data is discarded as new data is collected. When roll-over is **not** selected, a disk full warning indication is provided in the status line of the display. The configurator, as required, may change the percent full limit. A storage buffer in the operator interface allows changing the disk media without the loss of process data.

Calculation for Data Storage Capacity

$$\text{Trend Capacity (In Hours)} = \frac{\text{Disk factor} * (R1)}{F1 + (F2 * (R1/R2)}$$

Where:
R1 and R2 are the storage rates (in seconds) for Trend 1 and Trend 2, respectively.
F1 and F2 are the point factors associated with the number of points per trend file.
Disk Factors:

398	Trends files only active
394	Trends files + Alarms and Events
347	Trend files, + alarms and Events + Point Log Files

Number of points in trend

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
14.00	20.16	26.53	33.60	38.77	45.82	50.40	56.00	63.00	72.00	84.00	84.00

Point Factor (F1 and F2)

File Extensions

The following File Extensions are used for the ControlEdge HC900 Controller's Data Storage output files:

LNT for **Trend** Files

LNP for **Point Log** Files

LNA for **Alarm** Files

LNE for **Event** Files

Data Storage Enable Conditions

How storage is enabled

Data Storage Enable/disable is an Operator Interface function. If a schedule is developed in the software, all storage is automatically enabled.

Enable controls

The figure below shows the controls that must be enabled for each storage mode and data type. The left side shows the three data types and their possible storage modes (only one storage mode is in effect for any data type). The arrows show the conditions required for that storage to take place.

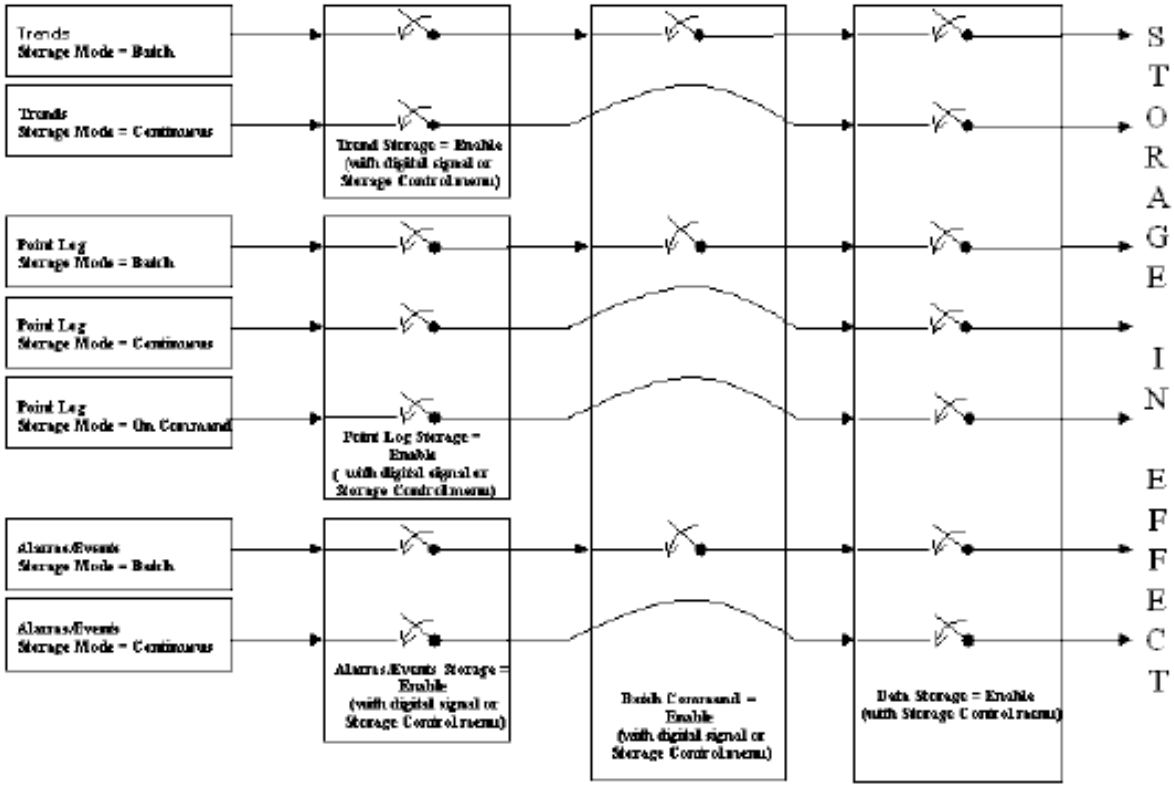
For example, trend batch storage requires:

the Trend Storage Control to be on (enabled at configuration – if any signal is selected for storage i.e. Signal Enable = NONE),

the Batch Command Control to be on (enabled at configuration), and

the Data Storage Control to be enabled (enabled at Operator Interface).

Notice that the Batch Command Control applies only to batch storage mode.



Three Levels of Enabling

There are three levels of Data Storage Enable:

Data Storage Disable Signal (Operator Interface) – See Note 1.

Data Type Enable Signals

Batch Command Enable Signal

Note 1. *Since any storage schedules loaded into the system automatically enables storage, the operator interface can disable storage*.

Data Type Enable Signals

This level of control is the Data Type Enable Signal. Each data type (trends, point log, and alarms/events) has its own Enable Signal that can either be configured as a digital signal on the Designer, or if not configured as a digital signal (NONE selected on Designer Data Storage Configuration), it will appear on the Storage Control menu on the operator interface

For example, if the Trend Enable Signal is *configured as a digital signal in the* Designer Data Storage Configuration, it will **not** appear on the Storage Control menu on the operator interface. This is done to avoid having two conflicting sources for the enable signal.

When a *digital signal is not used*, the Trend enable signal is set to enable when the configuration is loaded. The Trends can then be disabled from the Operator Interface.

The Enable Signal has two functions for Point Log storage.

In Continuous and Batch modes, it enables Point Log storage to begin at the Start Time and at every storage interval thereafter.

In On Command mode, when it changes from off (disable) to on (enable), it causes a single sample of Point Log data to be stored at that moment. (*See Point Log Storage Enable Conditions*)

Batch Command Enable Signal

This level of control is the Batch Command. It is a single control signal that starts and stops storage for all data types configured for batch storage. **It does not affect Continuous or On Command storage**.

If the Batch Signal is *configured as a digital signal* in the Designer Data Storage Configuration, it will **not** appear on the Storage Control menu on the Operator Interface. This is done to avoid having two conflicting sources for the signal.

When a *digital signal is not used* and Batch storage has been selected, the Batch command signal is set to Stop. Batches can be started from the Operator Interface.

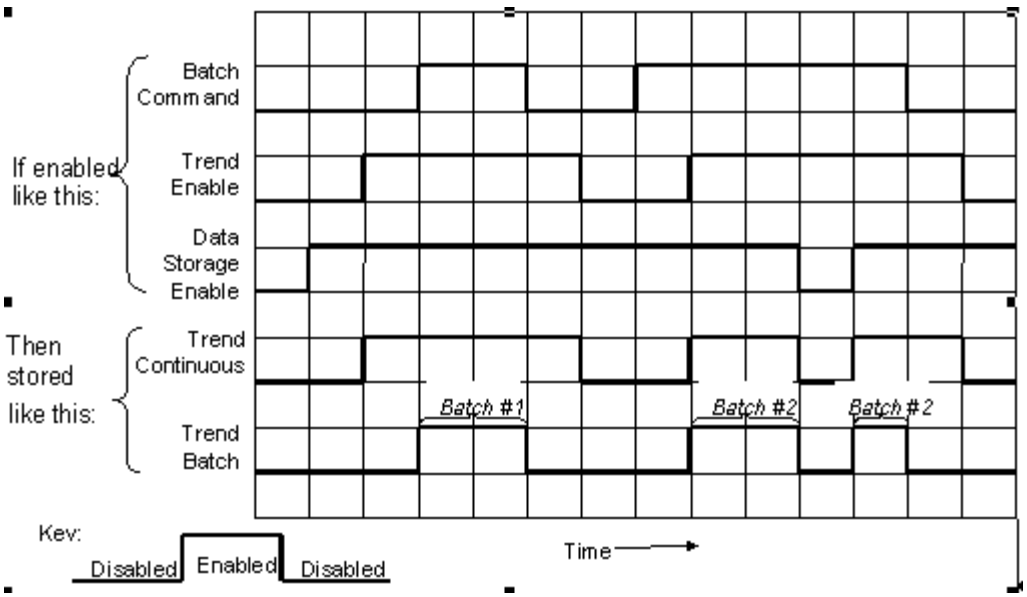
Storage Enable Conditions

Trend Storage Enable Conditions

The figure below shows examples of Trend Storage Enable Conditions.

Notice that **Continuous Trend** storage occurs unless ***Trend Disable*** or ***Data Storage Disable*** is selected.

For **Batch Trend** storage, notice that Trend enable/disable, Data Storage enable/disable must be set to enable and Batch command must be Start.



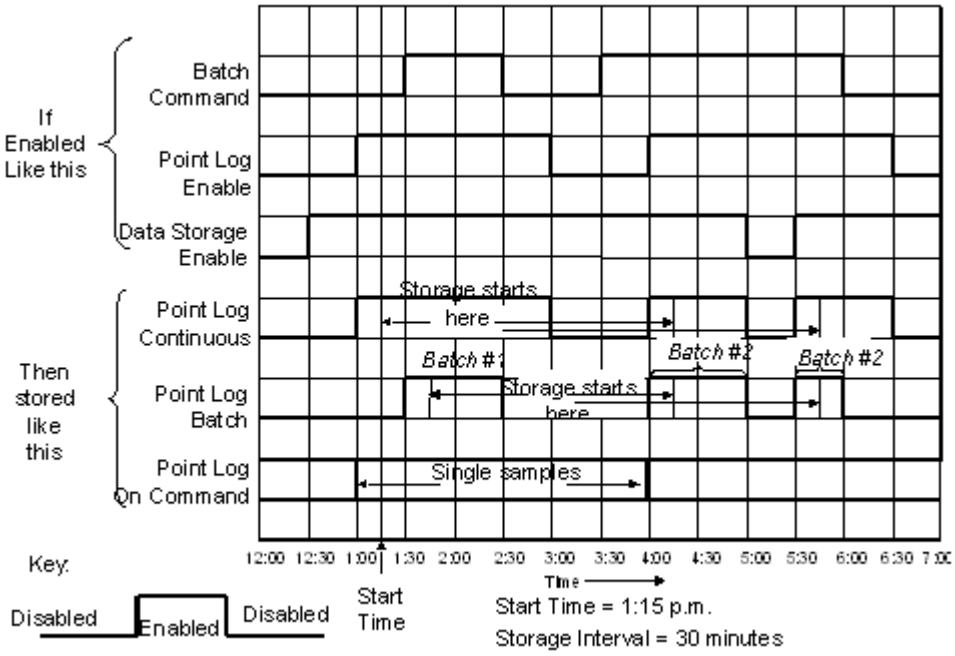
Point Log Storage Enable Conditions

The figure below shows examples of Point Log Storage Enable conditions.

Notice that it occurs unless ***Point Log Disable*** or ***Data Storage Disable*** is selected.

For **Batch Point Log** storage, notice that *all three enables must be on.*
The figure shows that storage does not actually occur until the Start Time occurs, and then at every Storage Interval thereafter.

For **On Command Point Log** storage, notice the samples are taken the instant Point Log Enable is enabled but not at intervals.

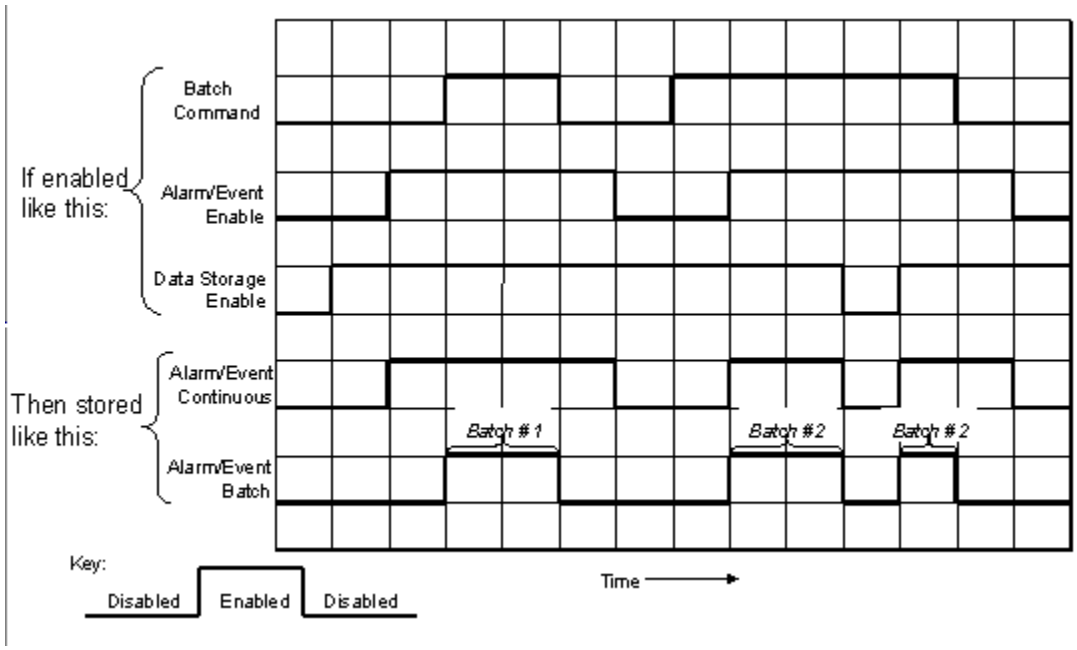


Alarm/Event Storage Enable Conditions

The figure below shows examples of Alarm/Event Enable conditions.

Notice that **Continuous Alarm/Event** storage occurs unless ***Alarm/Event Disable*** and ***Data Storage Disable*** is selected.

For **Batch Alarm/Event** storage, *all three enables must be on.*



1: Although Alarm Storage is active during the specified time periods, Alarm records will only be saved on active transitions of the alarm status. If no alarm occurs during the active period, the data for that period will be blank.

Data Storage Configuration Access

on the Operator Panel Worksheet Toolbar opens the ***Data Storage Configuration*** dialog box.

This facility allows you to configure groups of data that will be stored to the Operator interface's data storage device. This process history can be a valuable source of information to analyze process operations quality and upsets.

The groups are configured in Designer and downloaded as part of the configuration.

You can also create a new data storage file (.dss) separate from the configuration. On the File menu, select New, Data Storage.

Select a tab at the top of the dialog box to access a specific Data Storage Configuration dialog box.

Click on a button below for specific Data Storage Configuration Instructions.

Trend Storage | Point Log Storage

Create/Edit Data Storage File

Creates/edits a data storage file (.DSS). File can be downloaded to the controller.

Step/Item	Action/Description
Select File, Open.	Let's you choose a .DSS file to edit. After selecting file the Data Storage Editor appears.
OR	
Select File, New.	"Choose a new file type" box appears.
Select Data Storage tab.	Data Storage button appears.
Select Data Storage.	The Data Storage Editor appears.
THEN	
Select a Reference Configuration.	A data storage file must have a configuration to give it context. Select an open configuration from the pull-down list. If none available, select Open Configuration to open one. The configuration will open. Click back to Data Storage Editor and select the reference configuration.
Trend	Trend setup.
Point Log	Point Log setup.
Alarm/Event	Alarms/Events setup.
Pre-initialize Disk	Prepares zip disk for data storage. Select this to avoid the long initialization time on the operator interface.
Print	Prints the data storage settings.
Save	Saves the data storage file as .DSS file.
Download	Downloads data storage file to the controller.

Trend Storage Configuration

Trend storage will provide the following:

Number of Files:	2 maximum
Points per Trend:	12 maximum, Analog or Digital
Storage Modes:	Off, Batch, Continuous
Storage Interval:	2, 5, 10, 20,30,40, 50 seconds 1, 2, 5, 10, 20, 30 minutes
External Control:	Digital Tagged Signal – Start/Stop of both Trends

Configuration Procedure

Select the "**TREND**" tab on the "Data Storage Configuration" dialog box.

Active Field	Description
Batch Enable Signal	This signal starts and stops storage for Trends configured for "Batch" storage. It does not affect "Continuous" storage selection. From the pull-down menu, select: ***NONE*** – Batch is started/stopped only through the operator interface's Data Storage Control Menu (defaults to Stop on configuration download)

Active Field	Description
	ANY DIGITAL TAG – Batch is started/stopped only through the on/off state of the selected Digital Signal. It **will not** appear on the operator interface's data Storage Control Menu *For detailed information concerning Data Storage Enable, refer to "Data Storage Enable Conditions"*
Group	Use the pull-down menu and select a Trend Group for configuration.
Title	Enter a Group Title. There is a maximum of 24 characters *(Note: This is not displayed on the Operator Interface. It only serves as a reminder for the user.)*
File name	Enter a File Name. There is a maximum of 8 Alpha Numeric characters. (DOS File Name restrictions)
Tag List	From the Tag List drop-down menu, select the type of signals you want the tag list to display. Click on a Tag Name and click **ADD>>**. The tag name will be added to the "Selected Tags" list.
Selected Tag List	**Scaling Signals** Scale each tag selected for High and Low values for the Trend Display. Click on the "Scale High" and "Scale Low" fields and enter the value. To delete a signal tag, click on a tag and click **Delete**.
Storage Intervals	**Storage Interval** From the Storage Interval drop-down menu, select a storage interval of from 2 seconds to 30 minutes. When Data Storage is enabled, samples will be taken at the interval selected here. *Refer to Storage Intervals in Storage Conventions*
Data Type Enable Signals	This enable signal turns storage on and off for trends. From the pull-down menu, select: ***NONE*** – Trend Storage Enable is started/stopped only through the operator interface's Data Storage Control Menu (defaults to Enable on configuration download), or, ***ANY DIGITAL TAG*** – Trend Storage is started/stopped only through the on/off state of the selected Digital Signal. It **will not** appear on the operator interface's data Storage Control Menu *For detailed information concerning Trend Storage Enable, refer to "Trend Storage Enable Conditions".*
Storage Mode	From the pull-down menu, select a Storage Mode. Refer to "Data Storage Conventions" for mode definitions.
Rollover	**Click** this box to allow data storage to continue collecting data in a circular storage mode where the oldest data is discarded as new data is collected. **Clear** this box to allow data storage to stop collecting data when the file is full. You can configure a Warning Level for Disk Full %.
Warning Level	If you **do not select rollover**, enter a percent in the appropriate box.

Point Log Storage Configuration

Point Log storage will provide the following:

Number of Files:	One
Points per File:	12 maximum, Analog or Digital
Storage Modes:	Off, Batch, Continuous, On Command
Storage Interval: (all relative to start time)	1 to 59 minutes, one minute increments 1 to 23 hours, one hour increments 1 to 30 days, one day increments Once month, same day of each month
External Control:	Digital Tagged signal - start/stop storage to file - On Demand sampling

Configuration Procedure

Select the "**POINT LOG**" tab on the "Data Storage Configuration" dialog box.

Active Field	Description
Batch Enable Signal	This signal starts and stops storage for Point Logs configured for "Batch" storage. It does not affect "Continuous" or "On Command" storage selections. From the pull-down menu, select: ***NONE*** – Batch is started/stopped only through the operator interface's Data Storage Control Menu (defaults to Stop on configuration download) ***ANY DIGITAL TAG*** – Batch is started/stopped only through the on/off state of the selected Digital Signal. It **will not** appear on the operator interface's data Storage Control Menu *For detailed information concerning Data Storage Enable, refer to "Data Storage Enable Conditions"*
File name	Enter a File Name. There is a maximum of 8 Alpha Numeric characters. (DOS File Name restrictions)
File Record Limit	Enter a File Record Limit number of between 2000 and 5000.
Tag List	From the Tag List drop-down menu, select the type of signals you want the tag list to display. Click on a Tag Name and click **ADD>>**. The tag name will be added to the "Selected Tags" list.
Selected Tag List	**Scaling Signals** Scale each tag selected for High and Low values for the Point Log Display. Click on the "Scale High" and "Scale Low" fields and enter the value. To delete a signal tag, click on a tag and click **Delete**.
Data Type Enable Signals	This enable signal turns storage on and off for Point Logs. From the pull-down menu, select: ***NONE*** – Point Log Storage Enable is started/stopped only through the operator interface's Data Storage Control Menu (defaults to Enable on configuration download), or, ***ANY DIGITAL TAG*** – Point Log Storage is started/stopped only through the on/off state

Active Field	Description
	of the selected Digital Signal. It **will not** appear on the operator interface's data Storage Control Menu *For detailed information concerning Trend Storage Enable, refer to "Point Log Storage Enable Conditions".*
Storage Mode	From the pull-down menu, select a Storage Mode. Refer to "Data Storage Conventions" for mode definitions.
Storage Interval	NOTE: *For On Command storage mode, there is no storage interval or start time*. (They are not used.) Click on "Change". The "Storage Interval" dialog box will appear. Click on the radio button for Minutes, Hours, or Days and select a storage interval from the Edit box. Or, click on the radio button for "Once a Month". Click OK *Refer to Storage Intervals in Storage Conventions*
Start Time	NOTE: For On Command storage mode, there is no storage interval or start time. (They are not used.) Click on "Change". The "Change Time" dialog box will appear. In the Edit box in each field, select a start time. Click OK. *Refer to Storage Intervals in Storage Conventions*
Rollover	**Click** this box to allow data storage to continue collecting data in a circular storage mode where the oldest data is discarded as new data is collected. **Clear** this box to allow data storage to stop collecting data when the file is full. You can configure a Warning Level for Disk Full %.
Warning Level	If you **do not select rollover**, enter a percent in the appropriate box.

Alarm/Event Storage Configuration

Alarm/Event storage will provide the following:

Number of Files:	One each
Records per File:	150 to 1500 records per file
Data Types:	All Alarms – Time/Date, On/Off All Events – Time/Date, On/Off
Storage Modes:	Off, Batch, Continuous
External Control:	Digital Tagged Signal – Start/Stop storage to file

Configuration Procedure

Select the "**Alarm/Event**" tab on the "Data Storage Configuration" dialog box.

Active Field	Description
Batch Enable Signal	This signal starts and stops storage for Alarm/Events configured for "Batch" storage. It does not affect "Continuous" storage selections. From the pull-down menu, select: ***NONE*** – Batch is started/stopped only through the operator interface's Data Storage Control Menu (defaults to Stop on configuration download) ***ANY DIGITAL TAG*** – Batch is started/stopped only through the on/off state of the selected Digital Signal. It **will not** appear on the operator interface's data Storage Control Menu *For detailed information concerning Data Storage Enable, refer to "Data Storage Enable Conditions"*
Alarm File Name	Enter a File Name. There is a maximum of 8 Alpha Numeric characters. (DOS File Name restrictions)
Alarm File Record Limit	Enter an Alarm File Record Limit number of from 150 to 1500.
Event File Name	Enter a File Name. There is a maximum of 8 characters
Event File Record Limit	Enter an Event File Record Limit number of from 150 to 1500.
Data Type Enable Signal	This enable signal turns storage on and off for Alarm Events. From the pull-down menu, select: ***NONE*** – Alarm/Event Storage Enable is started/stopped only through the operator interface's Data Storage Control Menu (defaults to Enable on configuration download), or, ***ANY DIGITAL TAG*** – Alarm/Event Storage is started/stopped only through the on/off state of the selected Digital Signal. It **will not** appear on the operator interface's data Storage Control Menu *For detailed information concerning Trend Storage Enable, to "Alarm/Event Storage Enable Conditions"*
Storage Mode	From the pull-down menu, select a Storage Mode. Refer to "Data Storage Conventions" for mode definitions.
Rollover	**Click** this box to allow data storage to continue collecting data in a circular storage mode where the oldest data is discarded as new data is collected. **Clear** this box to allow data storage to stop collecting data when the file is full. You can configure a Warning Level for Disk Full %.
Warning Level	If you **do not select rollover**, enter a percent in the appropriate box.

Index

A

Accessing Port Diagnostics 233
Adding a Numeric Constant 119
Adding a Variable 115
Adding function block parameters to custom map 272
Adding system parameters to custom map 275
Alarm Details 72, 94
Alarm Group Configuration 93
Alarm/Event Storage Configuration 308
Auto Calibration Procedure 160
Auto Save Functionality 129

B

Backup Controller Information 147
Batch File Management 169
Before you Start 111
Boundary Item 127

C

Calibrate AI Channel 157
Calibrate AO Channel 158
Calibrate CJ Temp 158
Calibrate Modules 157
Calibrate Position Proportional Output 159
Changing the Default Annotation Attributes. 130
Closing a Menu 18
Communications Statistics 57
Compare Functionality 292
Configuration File 33, 133
  Saving 33, 133
Configuration Functions 171
Configuration Overview 165
Configuration Port Diagnostics 233
Configuration Port Diagnostics Status Indicators 235
Configure Modbus Map Method 261
Configure Modbus/Peer Write Access 151
Configuring Display Tag Groups 68
Connecting the PC to the Controller 8
Connecting/Disconnecting Blocks 113
Connectors 204
Context Sensitive Help 130
Control strategy 111
Controller Configuration Overview 61
Controller Configuration Toolbar 62
Controller Diagnostics 216
Controller Diagnostics Status Indications 218
Controller Idenfication 142
Controller Port Diagnostics 235
Controller to PC Connection Settings 55
Controller Utility Functions 135
Controller Worksheet Overview 61
Converting a UMC800 Database 36
Create/edit Data Storage File 304
Create/edit Recipe-Variables-File 173
Create/edit Schedule file 180
Create/edit Sequence File 185
Create/edit Setpoint Profile File 176
Custom Modbus Map 267

D

Data Storage Configuration 303
Data Storage Configuration Access 303
Data Storage Conventions 297
Data Storage Enable Conditions 300
Data Storage File 304
Data Storage Overview 297
Data Storage Utility 146
Default Annotation Attributes 130
  Changing 130
Diagnostics 156, 216, 218, 224, 228, 233, 235, 237, 238, 239, 240, 242, 243, 250, 251
  configuration port 233, 235
  controller 216, 218
  expansion I/O comm 240
  host connections 242, 243
  I/O module 228
  Modbus Initiator TCP Port Diagnostics 249
  Modbus Master Serial Port Diagnostics 246
  network port 238, 239
  peer to peer 250, 251
  port 233
  rack 224
  RS485 OI port 237
Display Buttons Configuration 66
Display Tag groups 68
Displaying Function Block Pin Value 204
Download Setpoint Profiles 172
  using recipe to download 172
Downloading a File to the Controller 41
Drag and Drop 130

E

Edit Menu 21
Edit Schedule Segments 185
Edit Setpoint Schedule 185

E-Mail Notification 63, 74, 102
Enter Monitor Mode 192
Event Details 74, 101
Event List Configuration 73, 95
Execution Order 95
Expansion Port Diagnostics 240
Expansion Port Diagnostics Status Indicators 240
Export Delimiter 21
Export Report 259

F

Fast Logic Indicator 110
Fast Scan Indicator 110
FB Worksheet Overview 79
FBD Configuration Toolbar 80
FBD Worksheet Properties 90
  how to change 90
File Browser Window 11
File Menu 19
File Protection 50
File Read Protection 50
Find Feature 209
Finding a Tag Name 209
Finding an Item on the FBD Worksheet 209
Fixed Modbus Map 261, 264
Forced Blocks Window 199
Forcing/Unforcing an Output 197
Function block 107, 109, 131, 204
  accessing details 131
  how to display pin value 204
  inputs and outputs 107
  Types 109
Function Block 112
  adding, moving, deleting 112
Function Block Address 131
Function Block Definition 107
Function Block Diagram Configuration Toolbar 80
Function Block Diagram Rules 133
Function Block Diagrams 133
Function Block Identification 107
Function Block Monitor Window 196
Function Block Parameters 131
Function Block Usage Guidelines 110
Function blocks 113
  connect/disconnect 113

G

General Hybrid Control Designer Window Terminology 10
General Steps to Build a Control Strategy 111
General Terminology 10
General Windows Terminology 10

H

Hand Calibration Procedure 162
Hardware and Software requirements 5
Help Menu 26
Host Connections Diagnostics 242
Host Connections Diagnostics Status Indicators 243
How Do I Start Monitoring 194
How Do I Stop Monitoring 202
How to Add a New FBD Worksheet 81
How to Add a New Worksheet 81
How to Add Worksheet Protection 46, 91
How to Change A FBD Worksheet Properties 90
How to Change the Worksheet Order 90
How to Delete a FBD Worksheet 90
How to Find an Item on the FBD Worksheet 87
How to Manage PC Comm Ports and Connections 51
How to Navigate Between FBD Worksheets 81
Hybrid Control Designer Main Menus 18

I

I/O Module Diagnostics Status Indications 228

K

Keyboard Navigation 31, 83

L

Library Functionality 103
Logic Inversion Color Codes 205

M

Main Menu 18
Main Menus 18
Main Toolbar Functions 27
Manually Write Database to Flash 150
Menu 17, 18
  Closing 18
  Selecting 18
Menu Conventions 17
Message Display Configuration 78
Modbus Address 264
  Adding function block parameters to custom map 272
  Adding system parameters to custom map 275
  choosing fixed or custom map 261
  Custom Modbus Map 267
  Fixed Modbus Map 264
  Modbus Map Overview 261
Modbus Initiator TCP Port Diagnostics 249
Modbus Master Serial Port Diagnostics 246
Monitor menu 24
Monitor Mode 192

indicator 192
Monitor Toolbar 192
Monitor Update Rate 192
Monitoring 189, 194, 202
how to start 194
how to stop 202

N

Navigational Tools 29
Network Port Diagnostic Status Indicators 239
Network Port Diagnostics 238
Numeric Constant 119
Adding 119

O

O/I File Names for Disk Storage 77
Operator Interface Displays 66
Operator Interface Settings 75
Operator Panel Configuration Toolbar Test 65
Operator Panel Worksheet Overview 65
Output 197
Forcing/Unforcing 197
Overview 202
Logic Flow 202
Overview On Line Monitoring 189

P

Page Connectors 125, 204
Password Configuration 154
Paste Special 21, 106
PC Comm ports and connection 51
how to manage 51
PC Network Port Set Up For Controller Access 51
PC Serial Com Port Setup 53
PC to Controller Connection Settings 55
Peer-to-Peer Connections Diagnostics 250, 251
Peer-to-Peer Connections Diagnostics Status Indicators 250, 251
Pin Value 204
PlaceNameModbus,PlaceNameInitiator,PlaceNameTCP,PlaceType,Port,Diagnostics 249
PlaceNameModbus,PlaceNameMaster,PlaceNameSerial,PlaceTypePortDiagnostics 246
Point Log Storage Configuration 306
Position Proportional Output Calibration 159
PPO Block Auto Calibration 160
PPO Block Calibration 159
PPO Block Hand Calibration 162
PPO Block Semi-Auto Calibration 161
Print Report 251
Print Report Preview 258

R

Rack Module and Channel Assignments 5
Rack Diagnostics 224
Rack Diagnostics Power Supply 227
Recipe 175
Setup/Edit 175
Recipe Configuration Overview 171
Recipe Overview 169
Recipe Pool 174
Recipe Properties 175
Recipes Menu 25, 170
Recipe-Variables 171
configuration overview 171
Recipe-Variables- File 173
Recipe-Variables-Overview 171
Remote Loopback Test 56
Report 251, 258, 259
Export 259
Preview 258
Print 251
Resolve Dangling Soft Wires 85
Restore Controller Information 148
Restore Factory Calibration 159
Right Mouse Click 29
RS485 OI Port Diagnostics 237
RS485 OI Port status Indicators 237

S

Saving A Configuration File 33, 133
Saving A Function Block Diagram 33, 133
Select the Number to Call 57
Selecting a Menu 18
Semi-Auto Calibration Procedure 161
Sequence 187
setup/edit 187
Sequence File 185
Sequence Pool 186
Sequence Properties 188
Sequencer Configuration Overview 168
Serial ports 137
set controller serial ports 137
Set Controller IP Address 140
Set Controller Mode 140
Set Controller Network Parameters 140
Set Controller Time 143
Set Instrument Time 143
Set Serial Port 137
Setpoint Profile 176, 178
properties 178
Setpoint Profile Pool 177
Setpoint Profile Properties 178
Setpoint Program 165
configuration 165
What is 165
Setpoint Schedule 185
setup/edit 185
Setpoint Schedule File 180
Setpoint Schedule Overview 167

Setpoint Schedule Pool 185
Setpoint Schedule Properties 185
SETPT 131
Setup/Edit a Recipe 175
Setup/Edit Sequence 187
Signal 122
Signal Tags 122, 204
Software Overview 1
Sort Function 209
Start Up Display Configuration 77
Starting the Application 7
Status Bar 17
system parameters 267, 275

T

Telephone and Email Contacts v
templates 272
Terms and Definitions 163
Traceback Window 15, 84
Trend Storage Configuration 304
Types of Blocks 109

U

UMC800 Database 36
  Converting 36
Unforcing an Output 197
Unlock the Worksheet 64, 78, 102
User Assigned Tag Names 131
User Interface Overview 9
Using Recipes to Download Setpoint Profiles 172
Utilities Worksheet Overview 135

V

Variables 115
  Adding 115
Version Control 284
View Menu 23
Visual Indicators for Monitor Mode 192

W

Watch Summary - Display Groups 215
Watch Summary - Inputs/Outputs 214
Watch Summary - Page Connectors 212
Watch Summary - Signals 211
Watch Summary - User Defined 209
Watch Summary - Variables 213
Watch Summary Window 16
Watch Window 15, 84
What is Sequence Control? 168
Window Menu 26
Wire Nodes 121
Worksheet 46, 59, 64, 78, 81, 91, 102
  How to add protection 46, 91
  how to navigate 81
  unlock 64, 78, 102
  What is 59
Worksheet Category Tabs 60
Worksheet Overview 65, 79, 135
Worksheet Toolbox Window 12
Write Protect a File 50

Sales and Service

For application assistance, current specifications, pricing, or name of the nearest Authorized Distributor, contact one of the offices below.

ASIA PACIFIC

Honeywell Process Solutions,
(TAC) hfs-tac-support@honeywell.com

Australia
Honeywell Limited
Phone: +(61) 7-3846 1255
FAX: +(61) 7-3840 6481
Toll Free 1300-36-39-36
Toll Free Fax:
1300-36-04-70

China – PRC - Shanghai
Honeywell China Inc.
Phone: (86-21) 5257-4568
Fax: (86-21) 6237-2826

Singapore
Honeywell Pte Ltd.
Phone: +(65) 6580 3278
Fax: +(65) 6445-3033

South Korea
Honeywell Korea Co Ltd
Phone: +(822) 799 6114
Fax: +(822) 792 9015

EMEA

Honeywell Process Solutions,
Phone: + 80012026455 or
+44 (0)1344 656000

Email: (Sales)
FP-Sales-Apps@Honeywell.com
or
(TAC)
hfs-tac-support@honeywell.com

AMERICA'S

Honeywell Process Solutions,
Phone: (TAC) 1-800-423-9883 or
215/641-3610
(Sales) 1-800-343-0228

Email: (Sales)
FP-Sales-Apps@Honeywell.com
or
(TAC)
hfs-tac-support@honeywell.com

Specifications are subject to change without notice.

For more information
To learn more about ControlEdge HC900 Controller, visit https://process.honeywell.com/
Or contact your Honeywell Account Manager

Process Solutions
Honeywell
1250 W Sam Houston Pkwy S
Houston, TX 77042

Honeywell Control Systems Ltd
Honeywell House, Skimped Hill Lane
Bracknell, England, RG12 1EB

Shanghai City Centre, 100 Jungi Road
Shanghai, China 20061

Honeywell

51-52-25-110 Rev. 29
July 2022

© 2022 Honeywell International Inc.

https://process.honeywell.com/